MCWP 3-16.6
W/Erratum

Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

U.S. Marine Corps

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release, distribution is unlimited.

PCN 143 000060 00

ERRATUM

In MCWP 3-16.6, *Supporting Arms Observer, Spotted and Controller,* Dated 20 November 1998

Page 8-13, line 17:

portion of the aircraft's approach phase, specifically from two minutes before the CAS TOT\TTT until one minute before the CAS TOT\TTT.

SHOULD READ:

portion of the aircraft's approach phase, specifically from 1 minute before the CAS TOT\TTT until 30 seconds before the CAS TOT\TTT.

PCN 143 000060 80

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
Headquarters United States Marine Corps
Washington, DC 20380-1775

15 October 1998

FOREWORD

1. PURPOSE

Marine Corps Warfighting Publication (MCWP) 3-16.6, *Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller*, provides the techniques and procedures for requesting and adjusting supporting arms.

2. SCOPE

This publication provides techniques and procedures for requesting, adjusting, and controlling mortars, artillery, naval gunfire, and close air support. It is intended as a field reference for supporting arms observers (mortar and artillery forward observers, naval gunfire spotters, and forward air controllers) and as a study guide and field reference for personnel seeking information on supporting arms procedures.

3. SUPERSESSION

Fleet Marine Force Manual (FMFM) 6-8, *Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller*, dated 24 June 1994.

4. CERTIFICATION

Reviewed and approved this date.

BY DIRECTION OF THE COMMANDANT OF THE MARINE CORPS

J.E. RHODES
Lieutenant General, U.S. Marine Corps
Commanding General
Marine Corps Combat Development Command

DISTRIBUTION: 143 000060 00

To Our Readers

Changes: Readers of this publication are encouraged to submit suggestions and changes that will improve it. Recommendations may be sent directly to Commanding General Marine Corps Combat Development Command, Doctrine Division (C42), 3300 Russell Road, Suite 318A, Quantico, VA 22134-5021 or by fax to (703) 784-2917 (DSN 278-2917) or e-mail to **smb@doctrine div@mccdc**. Recommendations should include the following information:

- Location of change
  - Publication number and title
  - Current page number
  - Paragraph number (if applicable)
  - Line number
  - Figure or table number (if applicable)
- Nature of change
  - Add, delete
  - Proposed new text, preferably double spaced and typewritten
- Justification and/or source of change.

Additional copies: A printed copy of this publication may be obtained from Marine Corps Logistics Base, Albany, GA 31704-5001, by following the instructions in MCBul 5600, *Marine Corps Doctrinal Publications Status*. An electronic copy may be obtained from the Doctrine Division, MCCDC, World Wide Web home page, which is found at the following uniform resource locator: **http://138.156.107.3/docdiv**.

Unless otherwise specified, masculine nouns and pronouns used in this publication refer to both men and women.

(reverse blank)

Record of Changes

Change Number	Date of Change	Date of Entry	Organization	Signature

(reverse blank)

Introduction

The technology and organizations for providing supporting arms today are products of our training and operational experience over the past 100 years. Initial techniques for controlling fires of artillery and naval rifles were limited to direct fire, where the crew of the weapon had to see the target. This was primarily because of the lack of a long-range observation and communications capability. These crude measures for controlling fires could prove hazardous to friendly as well as enemy forces, as the Marines found out during operations in Cuba during the Spanish-American War.

> On June 14 [1898] Captain George F. Elliott led two infantry companies and a detachment of fifty Cuban scouts on a circular six-mile march toward Cuzco Well [location of a Spanish camp]. Although the Marines did not surprise the Spanish garrison of battalion strength, they won the foot race to the hill that dominated the Spanish camp and caught the enemy in the valley. At ranges up to 1,000 yards the Marines peppered the Spaniards with rifle and machine gun fire. During the fighting another Marine platoon on outpost duty on its own initiative closed off the head of the valley and caught the enemy in a crossfire, while the dispatch ship Dolphin added its shells to the general firing. The Dolphin's shells, fired without much direction, also drove the Marine platoon from its position until the shelling was stopped by a wigwag message from Sergeant John H. Quick.[1]

Experiences in the first World War exposed Marines to the realities of trench warfare with modern weapons. Potent fire support was crucial to advancing against an enemy who was firmly entrenched in supporting defensive positions. This support was provided by U.S. Army and allied artillery because Marine artillery units did not deploy to France.[2] Although techniques for controlling indirect fire had progressed, their responsiveness and flexibility in changing situations were still hampered by a lack of portable, reliable communications. This deficiency would eventually be overcome by the introduction of tactical radios.

Marine aviation began in 1913 when 1stLt Alfred A. Cunningham was designated as naval aviator number 5. Marine aviation's first involvement in combat occurred in the latter part of World War I during which it conducted aerial observation and bombing missions as part of the Allied air effort. Marine aviation's first independent mission was flown in 1918 against a German-held railyard in Belgium.[3] Marine aircraft were used for a variety of missions from resupplying remote patrols and outposts to providing close air support (CAS) to ground units in the "Banana Wars" during the 1920s. Communications between ground forces and aircraft, although generally effective against the guerrillas, were anything but sophisticated.

> Although Marine aircraft were equipped with radio, the prohibitive weight of early sets, coupled with the poor transmission characteristics amid the terrain of Nicaragua meant that most were removed from planes to permit carrying more fuel and weapons. "Communication with ground troops," then-Captain Mathew B. Ridgeway, an Army observer in Nicaragua, reported, "has been almost entirely by Very Pistol, pick-up and drop messages, and panels."[4]

The lessons learned from using aircraft to attack ground targets and the need for close coordination between the Marine in the air and the Marine on the ground during these actions were reflected in the Marine Corps *Small Wars Manual* of 1940.

> In order to secure the full measure of cooperation between the air and ground forces, it is necessary that each understands the problems of the other. The aviator must know something of the tactics of the ground patrol, and he must be ready and willing to assume any justified risk to assist the ground commander. On the other hand, the ground commander should understand the hazards and limitations imposed on aviation operating over difficult terrain, and should not expect the impossible.[5]

This sense of teamwork and the initial procedures for controlling CAS developed between the World Wars would be put to the test during operations in the Pacific during World War II.

World War II provided Marines with the opportunity to make major developments in the techniques for controlling supporting arms. It was an evolutionary process. Marine artillery expanded from the organic regiments of each division to include heavy artillery assigned to the amphibious corps. Marine artillery was used to provide direct fire on enemy bunkers throughout the war, and forward observers (FOs) called for and adjusted indirect fire in support of maneuver units.

Recognizing the need to improve the employment of naval gunfire (NGF) in support of Marine ground forces, LtGen Holland Smith organized an NGF section at V Amphibious Corps in late 1943.

> ...the Naval Gunfire Section turned Kahoolawe Island, Hawaii, into a ship gunnery school and eventually supervised the qualification firing for 532 Pacific Fleet warships. The training exercises dramatized the need for intelligent gunfire spotting. The NGF Section first stressed putting trained Marine ground officers into spotting aircraft but then shifted to training Navy and Marine officer spotting teams for ground employment.[6]

In October of 1944, LtGen Smith formed the Marine Air Support Control Unit, which was commanded by Col Vernon Megee. The unit provided CAS training and expanded the ability of landing force commanders to plan and direct airstrikes.

> The final step in improving close air support—actually directing the strikes from the front lines against targets close to friendly troops—also originated with Megee's command. Equipped with improved jeep-mounted radios, Marine air controllers argued, they could direct strikes against ground targets within hundreds (rather than thousands) of yards of American troops by communicating directly with the aircraft. This technique, which ran counter to Navy and Army doctrine, required air strike controllers well versed in ground tactics and aircraft capabilities. At first the forward air controllers were air-indoctrinated ground officers, but the Air Liaison Parties (ALPs) soon became the instrument of pilots-turned-infantrymen. This reform proved successful for the Army in the Philippines and the Marine Corps on Okinawa.[7]

These techniques for effectively coordinating and controlling the fires from various fire support agencies (mortars, artillery, NGF, and CAS) reflected the lessons learned from three years of intense combat across the Pacific and formed the basis for the Marine

Corps' current procedures for controlling supporting arms. Although they would continue to be refined, the basic concepts have remained valid to this day. Although the use of semaphore has given way to data burst transmissions, the requirement for a Marine who is capable of controlling the fires of supporting arms remains crucial to success in combined-arms operations.

This publication contains the techniques and procedures used by artillery and mortar FOs, NGF spotters, and forward air controllers (FACs) to request, adjust, and control supporting arms. It is no accident that the techniques for these three supporting arms are covered in the same publication. The doctrine of combined arms requires the full integration of arms. We take advantage of the complementary capabilities of different types of supporting arms to enhance mobility and firepower. To avoid the effects of one arm, the enemy makes himself vulnerable to another. Achieving proficiency in combined arms requires a building-block approach to training that progresses from individual skills to unit skills and culminates at the Marine air-ground task force (MAGTF) level. Supporting arms observers, spotters, and controllers should be cross-trained in the techniques contained in this publication (i.e., the FOs should be trained to control CAS just as FACs should be capable of calling for and adjusting artillery and NGF). The techniques explained in this publication are fundamental for employing Marine Corps fire support. The most detailed and thorough fire support plans are useless without Marines who are skilled in the techniques and procedures for bringing the effects of firepower down on the enemy.

Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter, and Controller

Table of Contents

Chapter 3. Requesting and Adjusting Artillery, Mortars, and Naval Gunfire

Section I. Artillery and Mortar Call for Fire

Section II. Naval Gunfire Call for Fire

Chapter 9. Laser Designators and Laser-Guided Weapons Systems

Appendixes:

Chapter 1

Supporting Arms Observers, Spotters, and Controllers

The Marine Corps has four organizations that provide a maneuver company with observers, spotters, and controllers who are specifically trained to plan, call for, adjust, and control supporting arms. They are the artillery FO team, 81-mm mortar FO, NGF spot team, and forward air control party (FACP). Whether a company has one organization or all four attached for an operation (or phase of an operation) depends on the situation and mission.

Section I. Artillery Forward Observer Team

Each firing battery of the artillery battalion has three FO teams. One of these teams is provided to each company-sized unit/element of the supported force. The number of FO teams may vary with the composition of the force and structure limitations. The FO team is led by a Marine lieutenant who is trained in fire support coordination and advises the company commander on the employment of fire support assets. The FO team plans and coordinates artillery fires with the fires of other supporting arms at the company level. It is trained to adjust artillery, rockets, mortars, and NGF, as well as report battlespace information. The FO team can operate within a maneuver element or from an artillery observation post (OP).

An FO team's composition may vary with the mode of operation, availability of personnel, and type of force supported, for example, a mechanized unit with limited vehicle space or with a footmobile unit. (See table 1-1 below and table 1-2 on page 1-3 for the personnel and notional equipment of an FO team.)

Table 1-1. Artillery Forward Observer Team Personnel.

Position/Rank/Military Occupational Specialty (MOS)	Number
FO/lieutenant/0802	1
Fire support man/lance corporal/0861	1
Radio operator/corporal/2531	1
Radio operator/private/2531	1

1101. Responsibilities. The primary responsibility of the FO is to plan and coordinate supporting fires at the company level. The FO team locates targets, calls for and adjusts fire, and reports the results of fire. In combat or emergency situations when there is no FAC present, the FO may function as the terminal controller for CAS strikes. The FO team must perform the following tasks:

- Assist the commander in overall fire support planning and coordination matters.

- Advise the commander on the employment of artillery. The FO must know how much and what type of artillery and/or ammunition is available. He should be prepared to advise on all types of indirect fire support.

Table 1-2. Notional Artillery Forward Observer Team Equipment.

Notional Equipment	Number
High mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle (HMMWV)[1]	1
AN/PRC-119A Single-channel Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) radio	2
AN/GRA-39 set[1]	1
OH-254 antenna[1]	1
Digital message system/data automated communications terminal (DACT)	2
Precise lightweight Global Positioning System (GPS) receiver (PLGR)	1
AN-PAQ 3 modular universal laser equipment (MULE)[1]	1
AN/GVS-5 laser rangefinder	1
Battery commander (BC) scope	1
Binoculars	2
Compass	2
Night vision goggles (NVGs) AN/PVS-7B[2]	1
Legend: [1] Optional. [2] Other night vision devices may be available.	

- Plan artillery fires for the company. This includes normal and quick fire planning. The plan is approved by the company commander.

- Be familiar with standing operating procedures (SOPs) of the supported and supporting unit, including fire support SOPs and the company's combat SOP.

- Know the tactical situation, including the scheme of maneuver or plan of defense, and the enemy situation.

- Maintain continuous observation of the zone. The zone of observation is the zone of action of the supported unit or the zone of fire of the parent battalion. The FO team must occupy the best OP or position permitted by the tactical situation.

- Determine and refine target locations, engagement criteria, and trigger points as required.

- Make a terrain sketch of the area, whenever possible, to improve accuracy and speed in locating targets. When setting into a defensive position, the FO should construct a visibility diagram to pinpoint those areas where targets could remain unseen from his vantage point. See appendix E for construction of a visibility diagram.

- Report all target and intelligence information by using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format and report actions of enemy aircraft and conduct crater analysis.

- Ensure constant communications with the battery or battalion fire direction center (FDC) and the liaison officer (LNO) in the battalion fire support coordination center (FSCC).

- Keep the FDC and artillery LNO at the battalion FSCC informed of the tactical situation, the plans, and the location of the supported unit.

- Maintain the FO team location to within 100 meters (six-place grid) at all times. Periodic position reports (POSREPs), coordinated with the reporting of the company commander, should be made to the LNO. In the absence of a unit SOP or special instructions, a rule of thumb for reporting position changes is every 500 meters on foot or every 2 to 5,000 meters in a fast-moving operation.

- Provide security for the team through the proper use of cover, concealment, observation, and fire.

- Conduct regular preventive maintenance of all equipment belonging to the FO team.

- Observe and direct other types of fire support when necessary, for example, mortars, NGF, and CAS.

- Assist in training Marines with nonsupporting arms MOSs to request fire support, if required.

1102. Communications. The artillery FO must maintain effective communications to perform his mission. He has several means available.

a. Radio. The FO team uses radio traffic as its primary means of communication. All members of the team must be communications experts; they must maintain the gear to the highest degree of performance, troubleshoot, and enhance performance when possible through the use of directional antennas and so on. The following nets are employed by the FO team.

(1) Artillery Conduct of Fire Net (Very High Frequency). This net provides a means for observers to request and adjust artillery fire. The artillery LNOs at battalion FSCCs monitor/receive traffic on the net for fire support coordination purposes. FOs and LNOs may use the net to plan and coordinate fires. If conducting *battalion-directed* operations, the battalion establishes as many as three conduct of fire (COF) nets and acts as net control on each. The artillery battalion may identify a COF net for each maneuver battalion to facilitate continuity of fire support during battery displacements. The maneuver battalion (LNOs, FOs) remains on the assigned COF net, and the artillery battalion FDC receives all calls for fire. It then designates which firing battery, or batteries, will provide fire support to the maneuver battalion. This allows the artillery battalion to quickly mass on larger targets, as well as manage the assets of the battalion as a whole. If conducting *autonomous operations*, each battery FDC maintains a COF net and acts as net control; each net is monitored by the battalion FDC when present. Autonomous operations are also conducted by batteries attached to a battalion landing team (BLT). The artillery LNO at the battalion FSCC monitors all traffic on this net for coordination purposes. The artillery LNO at the infantry regiment may enter the net, as required. The stations on this net include the following:

- Direct support artillery battalion headquarters

- Firing battery
- Artillery LNO at battalion FSCC
- FOs
- Artillery LNO at regimental FSCC, as required
- Reinforcing artillery units, as required.

(2) Division/Ground Combat Element Artillery Air Spot Net (Very High Frequency). The artillery regiment (battalion when operating independently) establishes this net for aerial observers to adjust artillery fire. The artillery regiment is net control; however, for a specific mission, control may be passed to the battalion or battery FDC conducting the mission. When this net is in use, the LNO monitors for targets in his unit's zone. The FO may use this net to coordinate with an aerial observer for the attack of targets in his company's zone of action. The stations on this net include the following:

- Artillery regiment (net control) (For specific missions, control may be passed to the FDC conducting the mission (battalion or battery).)
- Aerial observer
- Artillery battalion, as required
- Firing battery, as required

- FOs, as required
- FSCCs, as required.

(3) Maneuver Tactical (Company Tactical) Net (Very High Frequency). Monitoring maneuver tactical nets is not a requirement for the FO team. However, the ability to monitor multiple channels with the PRC-119 enables the FO team to use company nets to increase situational awareness without requiring additional radios.

b. Automated Systems. Handheld devices, such as the digital message system or DACT, enable users to rapidly prepare, transmit, and receive both text and graphic messages over radios or field wire. Automated systems use a burst transmission capability, which minimizes vulnerability to enemy radio direction finding. It is used by the FO to transmit calls for fire, fire plans, and battlespace information. The DACT is currently being fielded, and fire support software is under development. When using automated systems, the FSCC establishes a mode of operation, which determines the routing of calls for fire through the FSCC. In FSCC-approval mode, the call for fire is sent to the FSCC for clearance then forwarded to the supporting arm. In centralized mode, the request goes to the appropriate artillery FDC first. One or more COF nets should be dedicated to data communications. Note that the artillery battalion still organizes itself to receive missions by using battalion-directed and autonomous operations.

c. Wire. The FO uses wire communications to the extent permitted by the tactical situation, time, and personnel available. In a static defensive posture, a land line may be used between the company commander and a remote OP. Wire may be used between the FO and his fire support man when operating separately.

d. Messenger. The FO uses this method of communication frequently when tactical situations permit. This method is a more secure method of sending fire plans than other means. It reduces radio traffic, thereby hampering enemy direction finding.

Section II. 81-mm Mortar Forward Observer

Two FOs are included in each of the two sections of the 81-mm mortar platoon that is organic to the weapons company of the infantry battalion. The infantry battalion commander may employ the mortar platoon by section or as a platoon. The mortar FOs are normally employed with the rifle companies. The mortar FO carries his own radio.

1201. Responsibilities. The primary responsibility of the mortar FO is to locate targets and call for and adjust mortar fire. He performs basically the same duties as the artillery FO. The mortar FO coordinates and plans the use of the mortars for the supported company. The operations of the mortar FOs are coordinated by the mortar platoon commander. A mortar representative is normally positioned in the battalion FSCC to coordinate and advise on matters concerning mortars.

1202. Communications. The infantry battalion mortar net (very high frequency (VHF)) provides the means for requesting, adjusting, controlling, and coordinating the fires of the 81-mm mortar platoon. Stations on this net include the FO(s), the 81-mm mortar section FDC (platoon FDC when employed as a platoon), the 81-mm mortar representative in the battalion FSCC, and the mortar platoon commander (net control).

Section III. Naval Gunfire Spot Team

The NGF spot team is one element of the shore fire control party (SFCP); the other is a liaison team. The artillery battalion employs its two organic SFCPs in support of the assault battalions in an amphibious assault. The NGF spot team is normally provided to a maneuver company; however, it may operate from a battalion OP. The NGF spotter, a Marine lieutenant, is the company's expert on all matters concerning NGF support. Like the artillery FO team, its composition may be tailored to the needs of the supported unit. (See table 1-3 and table 1-4 on page 1-11 for the organization of the spot team and a list of notional equipment.)

Table 1-3. Naval Gunfire Spot Team Personnel.

Position/Rank/MOS	Number
NGF spotter/lieutenant/0845	1
SFCP man/corporal/0861	1
SFCP man/private - lance corporal/0861	1
Radio operator/private - corporal/2531	2

Table 1-4. Naval Gunfire Spot Team Notional Equipment.

Notional Equipment	Number
AN/PRC-104 radio [1]	1

AN/PRC-119 radio [1]	1
MULE [2]	1
Laser AN/GVS-5	1
NVGs AN/PVS-7B[3]	2
Binoculars	3
Compass	3
Legend: [1] Includes KY-99 when NGF spot net is covered. [2] Optional. [3] Other night vision devices may be used.	

1301. Responsibilities. The primary responsibility of the NGF spotter is to locate targets and call for and adjust NGF. The operation of the spot team is coordinated by the naval gunfire liaison officer (NGLO) in the battalion FSCC, assisted by the artillery S-3, as required. The NGF spotter performs other duties and operations similar to those of the artillery FO. The NGF spotter also performs the following tasks:

- Plans NGF to assist the company in accomplishing its mission
- Keeps the NGLO in the battalion FSCC informed of the company's tactical situation and the spot team disposition (Periodic POSREPs are provided to the NGLO and the ship.)
- Establishes and makes frequent contact with the other observers (artillery and mortar FOs) and the FAC supporting the company
- Remains abreast of what types of ship(s) and ammunition are available.

1302. Communications. The NGF spotter must have effective communications to accomplish his mission. He must understand the functioning of high frequency (HF) radio communications. The NGF spot team communicates by the following means.

a. Radio. The following nets are established.

(1) Naval Gunfire Ground Spot Net (Primary High Frequency/Secondary Very High Frequency). This net provides a means for requesting and adjusting NGF and for passing vital information between stations. Stations on this net include the NGLO in the battalion FSCC, the spotter, and the direct support ship. The NGLO, normally net control, monitors all traffic for purposes of coordination. One frequency is normally allocated to each battalion assigned a direct support ship. A general support ship assigned to support the battalion will enter the NGF ground spot net for the duration of the mission(s). The NGLO at the infantry regiment may monitor the net, as required.

(2) Shore Fire Control Party Local Net (Very High Frequency). This net provides direct communications between the NGF spot team and the NGLO in the battalion FSCC. It provides a means for coordinating the employment of the spot team and for coordinating NGF matters. The net is also used for communication between the NGF spotter and his spot team when separated. The NGLO exercises net control.

(3) Naval Gunfire Air Spot Net (Ultra High Frequency/Very High Frequency (Depends on Aircraft)). This net is used by an aerial observer to request and adjust NGF. Stations on this net include any aerial observers and the supporting ship. The NGLO at the infantry battalion, regiment, and division enters this net. When an aerial observer is working in conjunction with ground units, the appropriate fire coordination agency will exercise net control. The supporting arms coordination center (SACC) is net control before transfer of control and coordination responsibilities ashore.

b. Wire. The spotter, like the artillery FO, has limited opportunities to use wire communications. When permitted by the situation, a land line is established between the NGF spotter and his SFCP men when operating separately and/or between the spotter's OP and the NGLO.

Section IV. Forward Air Control Party

The FACP is a terminal control agency subordinate to the tactical air control party (TACP). The TACP is the "subordinate operational component of a tactical air control system designed to provide air liaison to land forces and for the control of aircraft." (Joint Pub 1-02, *DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms*) TACPs are integral elements of the Marine Air Command and Control System (MACCS) and are organic to infantry regiments and infantry, light armored reconnaissance (LAR), and tank battalions. Infantry and LAR battalion TACPs consist of an air party (air officer and communicators) and two FACPs that are typically attached to companies consistent with the commander's planned employment of aviation. The FACP is led by a FAC, who is "an officer (aviator/pilot) member of the tactical air control party who, from a forward ground or airborne position, controls aircraft in close air support of ground troops." (Joint Pub 1-02) Naval aviators or naval flight officers serving as FACs are formally trained to provide terminal control and are officially designated as FACs by MOS. (See Marine Corps Warfighting Publication (MCWP) 3-23.1, *Close Air Support*). In addition to the FAC, each FACP has four enlisted radio operators. Regimental TACPs do not have FACPs. The tank battalion TACP includes two FACs but not the radio operators of the FACP.

1401. Responsibilities. Although not part of the aviation combat element (ACE), the FAC is an essential MACCS element. FACs are the primary terminal controllers of aircraft providing direct air support to task-organized maneuver elements. The FAC maintains radio communications with assigned support aircraft from a forward ground position. From this position, the FAC directs each CAS aircraft in its run on the target. This control aids target identification and enhances troop safety. The FAC may employ a laser system for designating targets. The primary duties of the FAC are as follows:

- Control aircraft during the terminal phase of CAS missions to assist in target identification and minimize the danger to friendly troops.
- Operate with the assault units of the battalion.
- Observe and locate targets of opportunity.
- Direct airstrikes against targets.

- Advise the supported company commander on the proper employment of aircraft assets.

- Gather and report all information of an intelligence nature, including target damage assessments.

- Stay abreast of the supported unit’s plans, position, and needs.

- Stay abreast of the enemy situation, location of friendly units, and current target list.

- Request and control aircraft in accordance with the MAGTF air employment plan.

1402. Communications. The FAC maintains communications with the air officer located in the battalion FSCC and with the air control agency. He establishes and maintains positive communications with assigned support aircraft from his forward position. The FACP communicates by the following means.

a. Radio. The following nets are used.

(1) Tactical Air Request Net (High Frequency). This net provides a means for units to request immediate air support from an air control agency. The FSCC at each echelon monitors this net and coordinates with the air control agency to approve, deny, or modify the requests. Target damage assessments and emergency helicopter requests may also be passed over this net. Preplanned air support requests may, if necessary, be passed over the tactical air request

(TAR) net if other means are not available. The stations on this net include FACPs; the direct air support center (DASC); FSCCs; the Navy tactical air control center (TACC); tactical air coordinators (airborne) (TAC(A)s), FACs (airborne) (FAC(A)s), or other terminal controllers; assault support coordinators (airborne) (ASC(A)s); and other MAGTF agencies, as required.

(2) Tactical Air Direction Net (Primary Ultrahigh Frequency/Secondary Very High Frequency (Depends on Aircraft)). This net provides a means for directing aircraft in CAS missions by the terminal controller (e.g., FAC) and for the air control agency to brief support aircraft on target information and handoff to the terminal controller or TAC(A).

(3) Tactical Air Control Party Local Net (Very High Frequency). This net provides a means for coordination between the air officer in the battalion FSCC and the FACPs.

b. Related Aviation Nets. The FAC may function on the following nets, when required.

(1) Helicopter Request Net (High Frequency/Very High Frequency). This net provides a means for TACPs of helicopterborne forces to request immediate helicopter support from the DASC or the helicopter direction center (HDC).

(2) Helicopter Direction Net (Ultrahigh Frequency/Very High Frequency/High Frequency). This net provides positive control of inbound and outbound helicopters in the amphibious objective area (AOA).

c. Other Means. The FAC may require other means of communications. Other radio nets, existing land lines, or other means may be used.

Section V. Employing Supporting Arms Observers, Spotters, and Controllers

The employment of observers, spotters, and controllers is coordinated by the artillery LNO, NGLO, air officer, and 81-mm mortar representative at the supported-battalion FSCC. The artillery battalion S-3 may assist in this coordination, as required. During operations, supporting arms personnel should remain close to the company commander to provide assistance as needed, mainly because the commander receives reports from all elements of his unit and must decide where fire support is most urgently needed. If they must be separated from the commander, communications must be established between them. The FO and NGF spotter are assisted in their duties by fire support men. The fire support men can locate targets and call for and adjust fire. They also assist in fire planning. The fire support men can be collocated with the FO/NGF spotter during operations or located with a forward element or OP.

1501. Offensive Operations. In offensive operations, supporting arms personnel should be in position to maintain contact with the company commander and to see the battlespace. Depending on the nature of the mission and the situation, specific supporting arms personnel (i.e., FO, FAC, or NGF spotter) may need to be collocated with the commander to maintain voice contact; because not all companies will have a FAC or NGF spotter, this may often be the FO. Fire support men from the FO team and/or NGF spot team may be located with the company's lead elements. In a mechanized unit, a designated individual (such as the FO) may be assigned a position on the commander's vehicle (tank or assault amphibious vehicle (personnel variant) (AAV(P))) from which he can operate (e.g., the loader's position on a tank). Fire support men may be similarly positioned with the lead platoon. Supporting arms personnel assist the supported unit commander in the offense by doing the following:

- Planning fires to support the company's attack and its reorganization following seizure of the objective (Fires are planned on confirmed and suspected enemy positions and key terrain. See MCWP 3-16, *Fire Support Coordination*, for detailed discussion on planning fires.)
- Executing the fire support plan
- Calling fire on targets of opportunity designated by the commander
- Providing battlespace information regarding the enemy situation
- Providing additional channels of communication
- Aiding in land navigation.

a. Movement to Contact. During these operations, supporting arms personnel perform the following tasks:

- Plan fires on critical points along the route of march
- Maintain their orientation by using land navigation skills and terrain features for reference points identifiable on the ground and on the map
- Conduct immediate action drills on contact
- Maintain continuous communications and provide periodic POSREPs to the FDC, LNOs, air officers, and other observers, as required, during movement.

b. Attack, Exploitation, and Pursuit. When enemy contact has been made, supporting arms personnel position themselves where they can best observe the actions of the supported unit, conduct fire missions, and coordinate fires for the company commander. The fire support men may be positioned on a terrain feature that offers good observation of the company's advance. The company commander is responsible for the fires of his company, including fire support. He either directs which targets to attack with fire support or approves missions. Supporting arms personnel must meet the following requirements:

- Be familiar with immediate action drills on contact (via SOP, operation order (OPORD), or situational reporting)
- Ensure that fires support maneuvering elements, that is, enable elements to close with and destroy or bypass the enemy

- Assess the benefit of fires versus their risk to friendly forces, for example, suppression versus minimum safe distance

- Consider the effects of shell/fuze combinations, for example, improved conventional munitions (ICM)

- Incorporate movement of elements into the delivery time of fires.

c. Consolidation. During consolidation on the objective, supporting arms personnel perform the following tasks:

- Send reports to the FDC, air officer, and LNOs, for example, situation reports (SITREPs) and new POSREPs

- Establish defensive fires and fires to disrupt an enemy counterattack in the fire plan

- Continue fire planning and make revisions/changes as necessary for the tactical situation

- Maintain continuous observation and fire support.

1502. Defensive Operations. Supporting arms personnel plan their fires to support the company’s plan of defense. Artillery, mortar, NGF, and air fires are planned to break up the attack, repel the assault, limit or destroy penetrations, and support counterattacks. In the defense, supporting arms personnel perform the following tasks:

- Plan fires forward of, on, and behind the supported unit's defensive positions, including fires on obstacles and avenues of approach

- Plan final protective fires (FPFs) (artillery and mortars) and make adjustments if the situation permits

- Select an OP that provides good visibility of the company's area of responsibility (Fire support men may be positioned with the FO or NGF spotter, a platoon, or forward element.)

- Execute the fire plan, including battalion targets in the area of responsibility

- Construct a visibility diagram of the company's area of responsibility (artillery FO). (The diagram is prepared in duplicate; one copy is retained by the FO, and the other is forwarded through the artillery LNO to the battalion S-2. At the battalion level, coverage is planned for those areas not under ground observation. See appendix E.)

1503. Patrols. Providing fire support for friendly patrols is an important function for supporting arms personnel, particularly the artillery and mortar FOs. The FOs, FACs, and NGF spotters keep LNOs, air officers, and the FDC informed of friendly patrol plans. The FOs, FACs, and spotters may accompany the company commander on a patrol when the patrol consists of the major portion of the unit. Fire support men are normally positioned with the remainder of the company during their principal's absence. Fire support men may accompany a platoon or smaller sized patrol.

Supporting arms for the patrol are coordinated before the patrol begins. The planning by fire support personnel should include the following actions:

- Obtain from the company commander, along with the patrol leader, the size of the patrol, times of departure and return, mission, routes and checkpoints, and any special instructions.

- Assist the patrol leader in fire planning, following the guidance provided by the company commander. Fires are planned along the route on critical areas or key terrain by using priority targets when available.

- Process the fire plan. Provide a copy to the patrol leader. Obtain from the patrol leader any special communications instructions or signals to be used.

- Make arrangements to maintain communications, as required.

1504. Retrograde Operations. Selected supporting arms personnel (FO, FAC, or NGF spotter, depending on the situation) remain with the company commander throughout retrograde operations. The remainder of the teams displace with the withdrawing forces to maintain continuity of observation and fire. Fire support men may be employed in an overwatch position. Supporting arms personnel must perform the following tasks:

- Plan fires for the period during which the company has control of fires.

- Acquire and pass control of fires through the LNOs and air officer.
- Maintain observation of the area of responsibility during control of fires.
- Maintain orientation during movement.

(reverse blank)

Chapter 2

Target Location

Section I. Elements and Tools of Target Location

The observer's capability to provide the company with effective fire support depends largely on his ability to locate targets quickly and accurately. The elements of target location consist of direction, distance, and altitude. Terrain/map analysis is key to accurate target location. Because terrain/map analysis is applicable to the artillery/mortar FO, the NGF spotter, the FAC, and other terminal controllers, the use of the word *observer* in this chapter will apply to all of them.

2101. Map Reading. Understanding and applying the skills of map reading are essential to an observer's success. The observer will need these skills to perform terrain/map analysis. The observer's map is second in importance only to his radio. He uses his map to determine what terrain he expects to see in the battlespace. The observer continually scans the map and terrain and attempts to associate features that he sees on the ground with those on the map. The observer uses the map to determine the location of targets, friendly positions, and his own position and to keep oriented during movement. By using his map and other tools, he determines direction, distance, and altitude for target location. For a good terrain/map analysis, the observer performs the following tasks:

- Locates himself within 100 meters of his actual location on the ground each time he moves
- Uses prominent terrain features to relate potential target areas to grid locations on the map
- Makes a thorough study of terrain by drawing a terrain sketch
- Associates the direction in which he is looking with a direction on the map and incorporates the map's marginal information in orienting direction-determining tools.

2102. Direction. Direction is the most important element of target location and an integral part of terrain/map association and adjustment of fire. Direction is a term used by an observer to indicate the bearing of the spotting line.

a. Units of Measurement. Direction can be measured in mils or degrees. Degrees can be converted to mils when required.

(1) Mils. A mil is a unit of horizontal clockwise angular measurement that is equal to 1/6,400 of a circle. The mil is normally used because of its accuracy and the mil relation formula's ability to easily convert angular deviation into distance. Mils may be measured from the map (grid north) or by using a compass (magnetic north). The standard unit of measurement is mils grid and need not be specified in the call for fire. Other units of measurement must be specified.

Example "Direction 1600." (Understood to be mils grid.) "Direction 1600 mils magnetic." (Unit of measurement must be specified if different from the standard.)

(2) Degree(s). A degree is a unit of horizontal clockwise angular measurement that is equal to 1/360 of a circle. Degrees can be measured from grid, magnetic, or true north. When the observer uses degrees in the call for fire, he must specify the type.

Example "Direction 090 degrees magnetic."

(3) Conversion of Degrees to Mils. Degrees may be converted to mils by multiplying the number of degrees by 17.8.

Example 90 degrees x 17.8 = 1,602 mils

b. Types of Direction. There are several types of direction that can be used by the observer—an observer-target line (OTL), a gun-target line (GTL), cardinal or intercardinal directions, and an arbitrary reference feature.

(1) Observer-Target Line. The OTL is "an imaginary straight line from the observer/spotter to the target." (Joint Pub 1-02) It is the most commonly used direction for locating targets and conducting adjustments. The standard unit of measurement is mils grid. Observer-target (OT) direction is determined as accurately as possible and transmitted to the nearest 10 mils (or nearest degree).

Example
A direction of 0642 mils would be transmitted as "direction 0640" (mils grid understood).

(2) Gun-Target Line. The GTL is "an imaginary straight line from the gun(s) to the target." (Joint Pub 1-02) GTL is frequently used by aerial observers as a spotting line for adjustments of fire. It can also be used by ground observers, particularly when positioned on or near the GTL. When the GTL is used as a direction, the standard unit of measurement is mils grid. If the observer desires to use the GTL as a spotting line, he transmits "direction gun-target line" in the call for fire.

(3) Cardinal or Intercardinal Directions. This involves the use of one of the eight cardinal/intercardinal directions (north, northeast, east, southeast, south, southwest, west, northwest). It is often used by aerial observers. It can also be used by ground observers, but the accuracy in adjustment is reduced. (See figure 2-1 on page 2-5.)

Example
"Direction northeast."

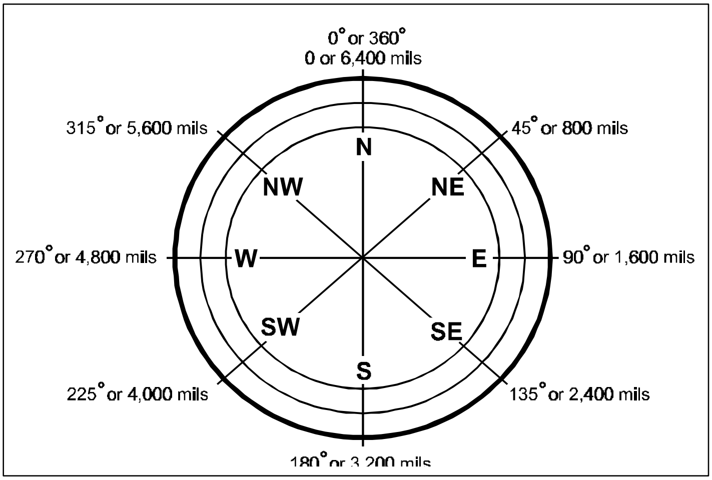


Figure 2-1. Cardinal Direction.

(4) Arbitrary Reference Feature. The observer may use a natural or manmade feature (such as north-south river or road) from which reference is made in target location and/or adjustment of fire. This type of direction may be used by aerial observers. It may also be used in situations in which the transmission of the OTL may compromise the ground observer's location. The observer may use an arbitrary feature to adjust fire.

Example
"Direction north-south road."

c. Determining Direction. There are four methods for determining direction.

(1) Using a Measuring Device. An observer can measure direction by using a compass or an instrument that has been oriented for direction, such as a MULE, BC scope, or aiming circle. (See paragraph 2106.)

(a) Lensatic or M2 Compass. The lensatic compass has an accuracy of only +/- 50 mils. The M2 compass must be declinated but provides readings to an accuracy of +/- 10 mils.

(b) Modular Universal Laser Equipment. The MULE has a north-finding module to determine direction to an accuracy of +/- 2 mils. Direction can then be read to the nearest mil. Advanced procedures can be used to orient the MULE for direction when the north-finding module is nonfunctional. A detailed discussion on the use of the MULE is contained in chapter 9.

(c) Battery Commander Scope. A BC scope, or aiming circle that has been oriented for direction, provides readings to one mil. The accuracy depends on the means of orientation.

(2) Measuring From a Reference Point. Direction can be determined by using a reference point with a known direction. By determining the angular deviation in mils between the reference point and the target, a direction can be computed by applying the deviation to the known direction. (See figure 2-2 on page 2-9.) Add the mils to the known direction if the target is to the right of the reference point; subtract if the target is to the left (right add, left subtract (RALS)). Angular deviation can be determined by using any instrument with a reticle pattern or by hand measurement. (See paragraph 2103.) It is measured to an accuracy of one mil when using a reticle pattern (MULE/BC scope/aiming circle), five mils for handheld binoculars or AN/GVS-5, or 10 mils by hand.

(3) Scaling From a Map. The observer may scale direction from a map to an accuracy of 10 mils by using a protractor.

(4) Estimating. Estimating on the ground is the least accurate method, but it can be used when the observer requires speed or is separated from his map and compass. The observer should be able to visualize a cardinal/intercardinal direction, as depicted in figure 2-1, remembering that the sun and moon rise in the east and set in the west.

2103. Determining Angular Deviation. The observer must be able to determine angular deviation or measurement. In addition to using angular deviation or measurement to determine direction, he uses it for determining horizontal and vertical distances to target location and in determining corrections in adjustment. The observer can determine angular deviation or measurement by use of the following.

a. Reticle Patterns. Reticle patterns are found on optical instruments and are the primary means of measuring angular deviation. Binoculars and AN/GVS-5s can measure angular deviation to an accuracy of +/- 5 mils. MULEs, BC scopes, and aiming circles can all measure angular deviation to an accuracy of +/- 1 mil. Any object within the field of view with a known direction can serve as a reference point. Binoculars are the most common tool for measuring horizontal and vertical angles. (See figure 2-2 and paragraph 2106.) When operating in a static situation, the observer can more accurately determine angular deviation by using the reticle pattern on a MULE, BC scope, or aiming circle. These instruments provide a stable platform and are extremely useful when accurate measurements are paramount, for example, for precision missions, for measuring vertical angles, and for night observation. When oriented, they provide accurate *direction*. When not oriented, the reticle pattern can still be used to measure angular deviation to an accuracy of +/- 1 mil.

b. Hand Measurement of Angles. The observer may use his hand and fingers for angular deviation or measurement in situations where speed is essential or when he has no other means. The observer fully extends his arm with the palm of his hand pointed toward the target area or reference point. By using the values contained in figure 2-3 on page 2-10, the observer can determine an approximate angular deviation or measurement. To increase his accuracy, the observer should determine the actual values of his hand and finger measurements. He does this by comparing a known deviation between two objects with that derived from his hand/fingers.

c. Measurement of Angles With Objects. The observer may also use common objects to measure angles as shown in figure 2-4 on page 2-10. Without more accurate means available and knowing the actual size of potential targets and the measurements shown in figure 2-4, the observer can quickly determine range with reasonable accuracy. (See figure 2-5 on page 2-11.)

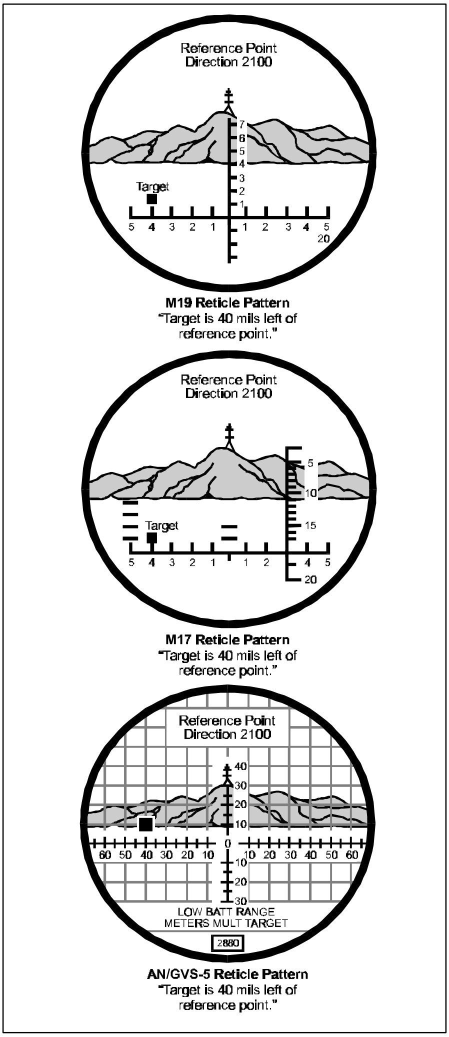


Figure 2-2. Measuring Angular Deviation.

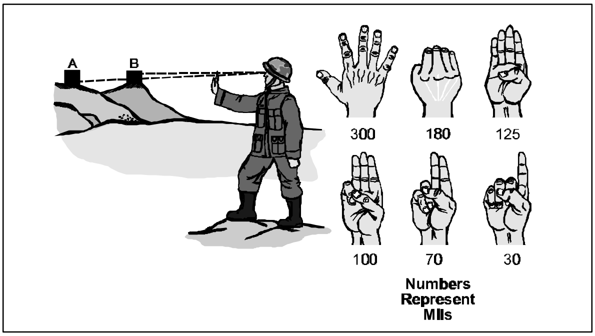


Figure 2-3. Hand Measurement of Angular Deviation.

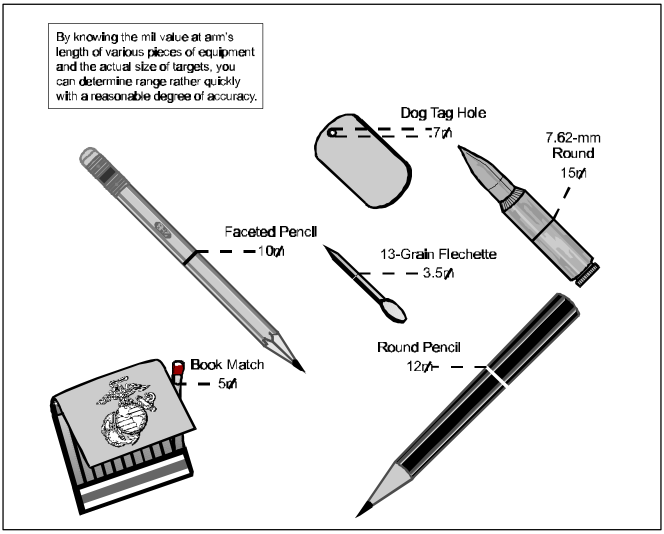


Figure 2-4. Angular Measurement of Common Objects.

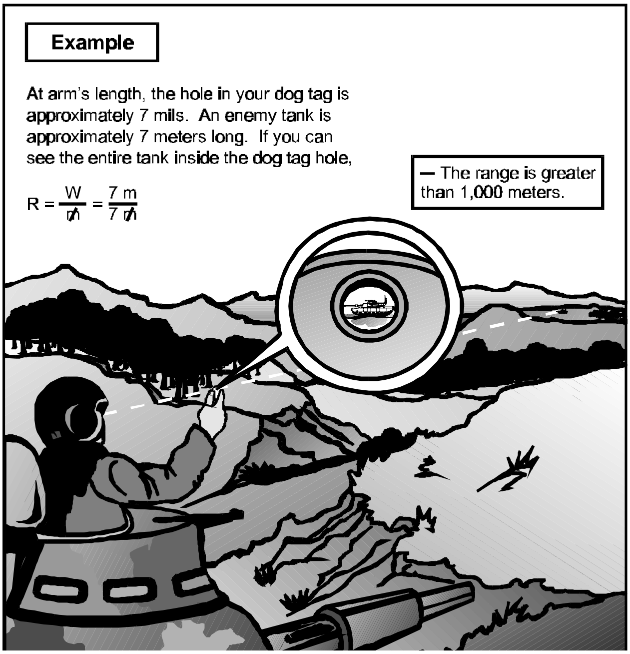


Figure 2-5. Determining Range With Common Objects.

2104. Distance. Distance is the second element of target location. Once the direction has been determined, the observer must determine distance to the target. Distance is the horizontal space between a reference point or a ground observer and a target. Distance is normally the most difficult variable to determine in target location. It is also used in adjustment of fire, for example, OT factor. (See chapter 3, section III.) The meter is the standard unit of measurement for distance. Other units of measurement may be used if specified in the call for fire. Distance can be determined by one of the following methods.

a. By Measuring Distance (Laser Rangefinder). The MULE or the AN/GVS-5 provides the quickest, most accurate means of determining distance. When battery operated, its usage should be conserved. (See paragraph 9003.) The MULE and AN/GVS-5 measure distances to an accuracy of +/- 10 meters.

b. By Sound

(1) Sound Ranging: Flash-to-Bang Method. To determine distance by using the flash-to-bang method, count the number of seconds between a round detonation (flash) and the sound of the impact (bang), and multiply this time by the speed of sound (350 meters/second).

Formula
Flash to bang (sec) x 350 = distance (m)

This method has several uses to the observer; for example, it allows the observer to confirm distances. By using the flash-to-bang distance to a round impacting in the battlespace, the observer can associate this distance on the ground with a future target. For example, if the flash-to-bang distance is 4,000 meters and the observer sees a target between himself and the previous point of impact used in the flash-to-bang method, he knows that the target must be closer than 4,000 meters. Similarly, the flash-to-bang method can be used to verify the OT factor during adjustment. The method can also be used to determine the distance to the muzzle flash of an enemy weapon. When combined with a good direction, the observer can achieve accurate target location data.

(2) Audible Sounds. There will be occasions when the observer will not be able to see the flash of a weapon or a round detonation. To estimate distance in these situations, the observer can use common sounds. Table 2-1 provides frequently heard noises with estimated distances.

Table 2-1. Audibility of Various Actions.

Maximum Distance (m)	Sound
100 - 200	Human speech
300	Stakes being pounded into the ground by hand
500	Stakes being pounded into the ground mechanically
500 - 1,000	Trenches being dug (shovel striking rocks or iron)
800	Tree cutting, tree falling
1,000 - 2,000	Automatic fire
3,000	Single rifle shot

c. By Estimating Distance. The observer must estimate the distance if a more accurate method is not available. The degree of accuracy depends on several factors, such as terrain relief, time available, and experience of the observer. Generally, the longer the observer remains stationary, the better he can use this method.

(1) Mental Estimation. A mental distance estimate is made by use of a known unit of measurement. Distance is estimated to the nearest 100 meters by determining the number of known units of measurement between the observer's position and a target. For example, a football field, which is 100 yards long, can be used as a known unit of measurement for determining the distance between an observer's position and a target. For longer distances, it may be required to progressively estimate distance. To do this, the observer determines the number of units of measurement to an intermediate point and doubles the value. The observer should consider the effects in table 2-2 to estimate distances.

Table 2-2. Considerations in Mental Estimation of Distances.

Conditions in Which Objects Appear Nearer	Conditions in Which Objects Appear More Distant
In bright light	In poor light or in fog
In clear air at high altitude	When only a small part of the object can be seen
When the background is in contrast with the color of the object	When the background is similar in color to that of the object
When the observer is looking down from a height	When the observer is looking over a depression, most of which is visible
When the observer is looking over a depression, most of which is hidden	When the observer is kneeling or sitting, especially on a hot day, when the ground is moist
When the observer is looking down a straight feature such as a road	
When the observer is looking over water, snow, or a uniform surface such as a cultivated field or desert	

(2) Estimating When Visibility Is Good. When visibility is good, distances can be estimated by using the appearance of tree trunks, their branches, and foliage (as seen by the naked eye) in comparison with map data. Table 2-3 can be used as a guide for wooded terrain. Numerous other objects may be used to estimate distances as well. Table 2-4 on page 2-16 can be used as a guide for urban environments.

Table 2-3. Use of Trees and Foliage for Estimating Distance.

Distance (m)	Tree Description
1,000	Trunk and main branches are visible. Foliage appears in cluster-like shape. Daylight may be seen through the foliage.
2,000	Trunk is visible, main branches are distinguishable, foliage appears as smooth surface. Outlines of foliage of separate trees are distinguishable.
3,000	Lower half of trunk is visible. Branches blend with foliage. Foliage blends with adjoining trees.
4,000	Trunk and branches blend with foliage and appear as a continuous cluster, smooth in appearance. Movement of foliage caused by wind cannot be detected.
5,000 and beyond	The whole area covered by trees appears smooth and dark.

(3) Estimating by Using Known Dimensions. Distance can be estimated by using known dimensions of vehicles and the mil-relation formula ($W = R \times \not{m}$). By using the width of a vehicle appearing perpendicular to an observer as the lateral distance (W) and measuring the width in mils (m̸), the distance can be determined by solving the formula for range in thousands (R), or R = W ÷ m̸. This data, when compared with map data, will help an observer to estimate distances. Dimensions of equipment can be obtained from armored vehicle recognition cards (Graphic Training Aid (GTA) 17-2-13), which can be obtained from the battalion S-2 or supply officer. The dimensions of selected equipment are provided in table 2-5 on page 2-17.

Table 2-4. Use of Various Objects for Estimating Distance.

Distance (m)	Object Identified by the Unaided Eye
1,000	Lone tree trunk
1,500	Individuals and horsemen
3,000	Chimneys on rooftops
4,000	Windows in houses
4,000 - 5,000	Individual houses in a populated area
8,000 - 9,000	Villages and individual houses
15,000 - 18,000	Large houses, towers, and steeples

(4) Estimating From a Terrain Study. The observer should always use terrain/map analysis to assist in estimating distances. When the observer is looking in a specific direction, the estimation of distance can be enhanced by studying the terrain to associate what he is actually seeing on the ground with what he is seeing on the map. The use of an observed fire (OF) fan helps the observer to associate map and compass direction, maintain orientation for direction, and refine distances. Particular emphasis should be given to color contrasts of terrain features seen along the OTL. For example, the distance across successive ridge lines or depressions in the distance may be identifiable by only slight changes of color to the eye. Different colors of grass might reveal a hidden terrain feature such as a stream.

Table 2-5. Example of Estimating Distance by Using Known Dimensions.

Equipment	Dimensions (m)	
	Side View	Front View
Tank (T-80) (chassis)	7.4	3.4
Tank (T-62) (chassis)	6.5	3.4
Reconnaissance vehicle (BRDM-2)	5.7	2.4
Reconnaissance vehicle (BTR-60)	7.5	2.8
Armored personnel carrier (BMP)	6.8	2.9
Air defense weapon (ZSU-23-4)	6.3	2.9

Example

An observer sees an armored personnel carrier (BMP). He measures its width as seen from a side view as two mils.

Formula

By using the formula, he determines the distance:

R = W ÷ m̸ where:

m̸ = 2 mils (measured by binoculars)

W = 6.8 m (known dimension of side view)

R = 3,400 m (6.8 ÷ 2 = 3.4)

2105. Altitude. The third element of target location is altitude. Altitude is “the vertical distance of a level, a point or an object considered as a point, measured from mean sea level.” (Joint Pub 1-02) The meter is the standard unit of measurement for altitude. There are three methods of measuring altitude:

- Map spot—if measured from a map spot, the altitude of a target is determined by use of contour lines and the contour interval of the map.

- Vertical shift—altitude may also be determined as a vertical shift from the altitude of the observer’s position or from a known point to the target. (The vertical shift, given as an up or down, uses the same principles of angular deviation and the mil relation formula discussed in paragraph 2103. The M2 compass clinometer can be used and is discussed in paragraph 2106.)

- Vertical angle—laser polar missions specify the vertical angle in mils. This allows the FDC to incorporate the vertical shift with the associated distance for accurate target location.

Example
"Altitude 480," "up 50," and "vertical angle three."

2106. Tools To Assist the Observer. The following tools are used by the observer in target location and terrain and map analysis. These tools include the M2 compass, binoculars, BC scope, GPS, OF fan, terrain sketch, and visibility diagram. Chapter 9 discusses AN/GVS-5 and MULE employment. The tools are most effective when used together.

a. M2 Compass. The M2 compass is the most accurate compass for determining direction (+/- 10 mils). It is a multipurpose instrument used to obtain azimuth readings and vertical angles. The magnetic needle (the white end of the needle) shows a magnetic north. The magnetic needle reading is taken from the black end when the bubble is centered in the circular level. The azimuth scale adjuster assembly rotates the azimuth scale to introduce the declination constant.

(1) Declinating the M2 Compass. The procedure for declinating the M2 compass from a surveyed declination station free from magnetic attractions is as follows:

- Set the M2 compass on a tripod over the orienting station, and center the circular level.

- Sight on the known, surveyed azimuth marker.
- By using the azimuth adjuster scale, rotate the azimuth scale until it indicates the same as the known surveyed azimuth.
- Recheck sight picture and azimuth to the known point. Once the sight picture is correct and the azimuth reading is the same as the surveyed data, the M2 is declinated.

The procedure for field-expedient declination of the M2 compass is as follows:

- By using the azimuth adjuster scale, set off the grid-magnetic angle (shown on the bottom of all military maps).
- Once the grid-magnetic angle has been set off on the azimuth scale, the M2 compass is declinated.

> **Note**
> Once declinated, the M2 compass measures *grid azimuths*.

(2) Measuring Azimuths With the M2 Compass. The procedure for measuring an azimuth follows:

- To read the azimuth scale by reflection, hold the compass in both hands at eye level with arms braced against the body and with the rear sight nearest your eyes. Place the cover at an angle of approximately 45 degrees to the face of the compass so that the scale reflection can be viewed in the mirror. (See figure 2-6.)

- Level the instrument by viewing the circular level in the mirror.
- Sight on the desired object, and read the azimuth indicated on the reflected azimuth scale by the south-seeking (black) end of the compass needle.

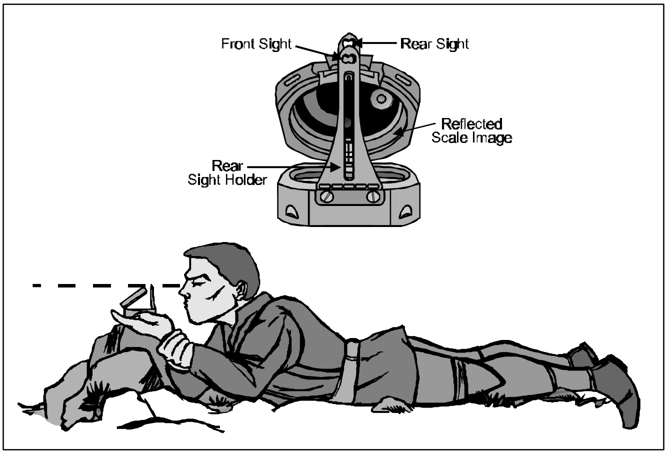


Figure 2-6. Measuring an Azimuth With the M2 Compass.

(3) Measuring Vertical Angles With the M2 Compass. The procedure to measure a vertical angle with the M2 compass is as follows:

- Hold the compass on edge with both hands at eye level with arms braced against the body and with the rear sight nearest your eyes.

- Place the cover at approximately 45 degrees to the face of the compass so that the elevation scale reflection can be seen in the mirror. (See figure 2-7 on page 2-23.)

- Sight on the target or crest, and center the elevation scale tubular level with the lever on the back of the compass and by viewing the elevation scale in the mirror.

  Read the elevation in mils on the elevation scale. Measure again, and record the average.

Warning

The M2 compass must be employed free of magnetic attractions. Below are the minimum distances that should be kept when using the compass to measure a direction.

High-tension power lines: 55 m
Artillery, trucks, or tanks: 10 m
Telegraph, telephone, or barbed wire: 10 m
Crew-served weapons: 2 m
Rifle or radio: 0.5 m

b. Binoculars. In addition to measuring angular deviation, binoculars enable observers to focus on distant objects. When using binoculars, the following considerations apply:

- The binoculars must be held parallel to the deck and steadied against the body or a prop.

- The observer should determine, memorize, and record his interpupillary and depth settings to allow for quick adjustment.

- The protective plastic lens cap on the binoculars can be removed to increase the field of vision for observers who wear glasses.

- Masking tape can be used on the metal retaining ring to prevent scratching the glasses.

  The diopter adjustment ring can be taped in the correct position so that the observer does not have to adjust the diopter setting every time he uses his binoculars.

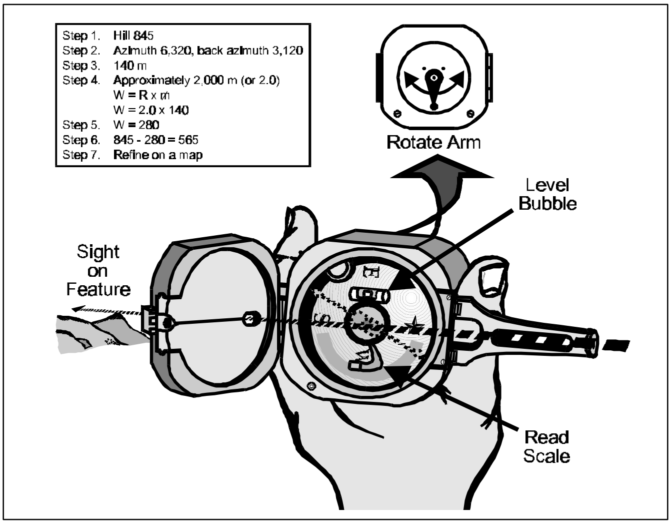


Figure 2-7. Measuring the Vertical Angle.

c. Battery Commander Scope and Aiming Circle. Both the BC scope and aiming circle provide a stable platform for observation. When oriented for direction, they can measure direction to an accuracy of +/- 1 mil (depending on the source of orientation). The aiming circle can provide its own source of orientation with its magnetic needle. Emplacement of the BC scope is the same as for the aiming circle, which is referenced in MCWP 3-16.3/U.S. Army Field Manual (FM) 6-50, *Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Field Artillery Cannon Battery*. The procedures for orienting for direction follow:

- Ensure that the instrument is leveled.
- Place the known azimuth on the upper (or recording) motion. (The scale should show the known azimuth.)
- With the lower (nonrecording) motion, sight on the known azimuth marker. (The scale should still show the known azimuth.)
- Use only the upper motion to measure direction.
- Do not move the lower motion unless reorienting.

d. Global Positioning System. The GPS is a space-based navigation system that provides worldwide, continuous, all-weather, three-dimensional position information. The GPS includes satellites and receivers. The current receiver is the AN/PSN-11 PLGR. The PLGR can provide the observer with grid location and navigational information. To use the PLGR, verify the following.

(1) Cryptographic Keys. The proper cryptographic keys must be loaded into the PLGR to enable it to use the precise positioning system (PPS). The PPS must be used to achieve the necessary accuracy and to avoid enemy electronic warfare measures. If the cryptographic variable is not loaded, PLGR accuracy is lessened.

(2) Datum. The map datum should be the same as the operational datum being used by all other maneuver, fire support, and target acquisition units. If the same datum is not used, significant position errors are possible.

(3) Coordinates. The universal transverse mercator (UTM) coordinate format is preferred because it is the standard used by survey and most fire control systems.

(4) Elevation. Mean sea level is the preferred selection because most military maps use it as the basis for the elevation scale.

(5) Units of Measurement. Meters is the preferred selection because most military maps refer to distance and elevation in meters.

(6) Almanac Data. Almanac data must be one day old. If almanac data are not one day old, satellite vehicle or timing errors not noted by the PLGR are possible.

(7) Figure of Merit. Figure of merit (FOM) is an accuracy estimation of the data displayed by the PLGR; it ranges from one through nine. FOM 1 is the best accuracy estimation displayed by the system, and FOM 9 is the worst. For observer positioning, only coordinates determined with FOM 1 will be considered to be accurate.

(8) Mode of Operation. The PLGR offers three choices—fix, continuous, and averaging—as modes of operation. The averaging mode yields the most accurate data and is preferred when determining a position for indirect-fire weapon employment.

(9) Position. Position verification by a separate means to check for gross errors should always be performed.

Warning

Azimuth determined with the PLGR is for navigation only. The PLGR azimuth is not accurate enough for use in establishing directional control and should never be used for orienting observation devices. Tests show that PLGR-determined azimuth may be in error by as much as 200 mils. Refer to Technical Manual (TM) 11-5825-291-13, *Operations and Maintenance Manual for Satellite Signals Navigation Sets AN/PSN-11*, for further information.

The PLGR does not relieve the observer of his land navigation responsibilities. He must be able to locate both himself and targets without the aid of GPS for the following reasons:

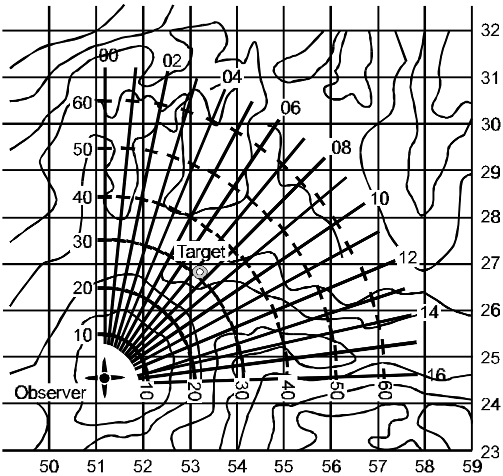
- GPS receivers rely on electronic line of sight with the satellites. The PLGR must be able to acquire at least four satellites so that a three-dimensional position can be determined. Dense foliage, buildings, mountains, and canyons will mask the GPS signal and cause the receiver to fail.
- Multipath distortion (reflected signals) may occur if the receiver's antenna is tilted away from a satellite. This causes a

reflected signal to be received that has more power than the direct signal. Coordinates determined under these conditions can be off by as much as several hundred meters.

- Electronic warfare can jam GPS signals for periods of time.

e. Observed Fire Fan. The OF fan is a transparent protractor that can be used to refine distance on the map. (See figure 2-8 on page 2-28.) It is not used to determine direction. It helps the observer to identify on the map what he sees on the ground. The OF fan has 17 radial lines that are 100 mils apart and cover a total area of 1,600 mils. The radial lines represent OT direction. The OT distance is represented by arcs marked on the fan every 500 meters and labeled every 1,000 meters, beginning at 1,000 meters and extending to 6,500 meters.

Note
The OF fan is available in the supply system as GTA 6-7-3.



Note

The target is approximately 3,200 meters from the observer in a direction of 0650 mils. The grid location is approximately 531 269.

Figure 2-8. Target Location Using the Observed Fire Fan.

(1) Orienting the Observed Fire Fan on the Map. To prepare the OF fan, perform the following steps:

- Place the vertex of the OF fan over the observer's location.
- Place the center radial in the direction of the center of the observer's sector of observation.

- Move the fan slightly until one of the radial lines is parallel to a grid line. The direction of that radial line is the same as that of the grid line. For example, a radial line parallel to a north-south grid line, with the OF fan oriented generally north, would be direction 6400 or 0.

- Attach the OF fan in position on the map by using a piece of tape along one edge of the fan. The OF fan can then be lifted, when required, without disturbing its orientation.

- With a marker pen or grease pencil, number the radial of known direction, dropping the last two zeros (6400 would be 64). Then label every second radial with the appropriate direction. Remember that the radial lines are 100 mils apart. (Direction increases to the right and decreases to the left.)

(2) Using the Observed Fire Fan. To determine target location, the observer must first determine direction and distance by using a method discussed previously. Then he plots the data on the OF fan by finding a radial line corresponding to the OT direction. Visual interpolation is required if the direction plots between two radials. The observer follows the radial or interpolated radial until he has scaled off the estimated distance. He compares the terrain near the target with the terrain of his estimated point on the map. If they agree, his target location is accurate. If they do not agree, he searches along the radial line until he finds terrain that matches. The target *must* be along the radial or interpolated radial line representing the direction to the target. (See figure 2-8 for target location using the OF fan.) When the observer is rapidly changing positions, he can orient his fan over the next prominent terrain or manmade feature that he will cross. He notes the direction to a known point or feature in the target area. In this manner, he can maintain the relative orientation of his OF fan to aid in determining direction and target location.

f. Terrain Sketch. The terrain sketch is a rough panoramic drawing by the observer of his area of observation. (See figure 2-9 on page 2-31.) The sketch is primarily used as a rapid means of recording/identifying predetermined directions to reference points. A properly constructed terrain sketch aids the observer in an organized study of the terrain. A terrain sketch also provides a rapid means of orienting relief personnel. The terrain sketch should include the following:

- The skyline (horizon)
- Prominent objects or features such as draws, hill masses, streams, wood lines, ridge line, roads, buildings, battlespace debris, and so on
- Directions and distances to prominent objects or features, with labeling of reference and known points.

g. Visibility Diagram. To locate targets and report battlespace information effectively, the observer must be able to see within his area of observation. However, as a result of terrain features, certain areas will not be visible from the observer's location. A visibility diagram will pinpoint those areas that cannot be seen by the observer. The visibility diagram is a sketch that is drawn to scale by the observer of the area of observation. (See figure 2-10 on page

2-32.) It shows those portions of the terrain that cannot be observed from a given OP.

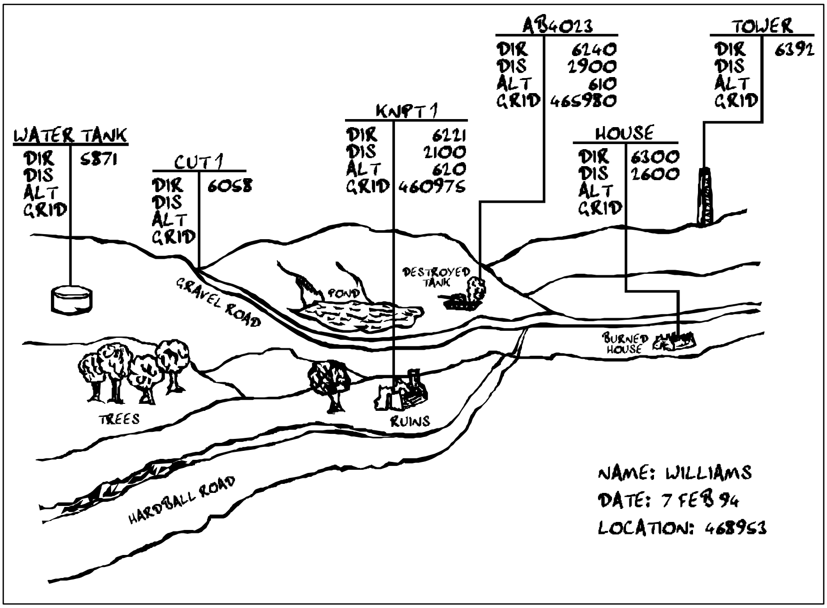


Figure 2-9. Terrain Sketch.

(1) Construction of the Visibility Diagram. The construction of the visibility diagram requires a detailed study of the terrain. (For steps in constructing the visibility diagram, see appendix E.) In fast-moving operations, there may not be time to construct a visibility diagram. In these cases, observers still need to locate areas that they cannot observe. A possible alternative would be a verbal report giving azimuths and distances to screening obstacles.

Another alternative would be to give a grid location and radius of an area that cannot be observed. However, at the first opportunity, the observer must construct a visibility diagram.

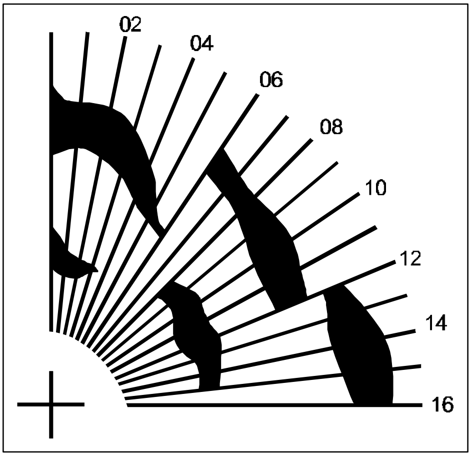


Figure 2-10. Visibility Diagram.

(2) Using the Visibility Diagram. The most important use of the visibility diagram is to help coordinate the complete visual coverage of the battlespace. Ideally, the visibility diagrams are reviewed by the company commander and dispatched to the infantry and artillery S-2 officers. The diagrams are used to evaluate target area coverage so that gaps can be covered. They also determine the best locations and orientations for other target acquisition resources. Visibility diagrams are used to reduce errors in reporting target locations. If a target plots in an area that is not visible, the target location is obviously in error.

h. Radar Beacon. The radar beacon is “a receiver-transmitter combination which sends out a coded signal when triggered by the proper type of pulse, enabling determination of range and bearing information by the interrogating station or aircraft.” (Joint Pub 1-02) The radar beacon is a lightweight portable radar transponder used to aid in the delivery of accurate NGF under all conditions of visibility. The beacon provides an electronic reference point ashore from which beacon-capable ships can fix their actual or relative location. Use of the beacon can practically eliminate the navigation error element from the initial salvo error. The types of beacons that are currently in inventory are the AN/UPN-32 and the AN/PPN-19. The AN/PPN-19 can also be used by aircraft. Currently, all U.S. Navy ships with five-inch guns are capable of acquiring a beacon. The beacon is normally emplaced by a small radar beacon team (usually two or three men), which may be attached to the battalion SFCP or to a reconnaissance unit. The beacon transmits 1 of 10 different electronic signals or codes; this signal or code is set in the field by the beacon team for acquisition by the ship. If the radar beacon is used, beacon data will be sent to ships via an operational message, general (maritime tactical message), amphibious (OPGEN MIKE) or via an operational tasking (maritime tactical message), amphibious (OPTASK AMPHIB) message. When notified by an SFCP that the radar beacon will be used for a mission, ship personnel will select the method to be used. After acquiring the correct signal transmitted by the beacon, ship personnel report to the SFCP “locked on and tracking beacon” and await the call for fire. Ship personnel may use the beacon in one of three methods.

(1) Method ALFA. This method may be used when the exact location of the beacon is known (OPORD or beacon team information). In this method, the beacon is used simply as a navigation aid to determine the ship's position. Fire missions are conducted in the normal manner discussed in subsequent chapters.

(2) Method ALFA Modified. This method may be used when the exact location of the beacon is not accurately known and when combat grid charts are not available. The observer gives target location in polar coordinates or as a shift from the beacon position. (See section II of this chapter for procedures for polar plot and shift from a known point.) Ship personnel plot the beacon location, the ship's relative position, and the target's position relative to the beacon. The target is the point of aim and is engaged as a simple indirect-fire mission.

(3) Method BRAVO. This method may be used whether or not beacon location is accurately known. The observer locates the target by using polar coordinates from the beacon position. The beacon location is the point of aim, and offsets are introduced into the computer to lay the gun on target. This method is normally the fastest but does present a potentially unsafe condition. In the event that the offsets do not register in the ship's gunfire control system, the beacon team position will become the point of aim.

Section II. Methods of Target Location

Terrain/map analysis is essential in target location. The results of this analysis (i.e., direction, distance, and altitude) provide the basic data for determining a target's location. Knowledge of information in section I of this chapter is essential to accomplishing the various methods of target location. Because the methods of target location apply to the artillery/mortar FO and the NGF spotter, the word *observer* is applicable to both except where separately addressed. The observer selects a method of target location based on whether his position is known by the firing unit, the availability of known/reference points in the battlespace, and tools available for target location. Three methods of target location exist: polar plot, grid coordinates, and shift from a known point.

> **Note**
> Regardless of the method of target location, map datum information is a prerequisite to accuracy. The firing unit must know the spheroid or datum (e.g., World Geodetic System 1984) and grid zone from the marginal information on the observer's map before conducting missions.

2201. Polar Plot. In the polar plot method, the observer describes the target location in relation to his position. The primary advantage of the polar plot method is that it is fast and can be done without a map. Laser rangefinders and oriented BC scopes greatly enhance the accuracy of the polar plot. The primary disadvantage of this method is the chance that the enemy may determine the observer's position by intercepting the call for fire and computing a back azimuth from the target. Another disadvantage is that the observer's position must be known by the firing unit (battery, mortar platoon, or ship). This may require the observer to transmit his location and altitude before sending the call for fire. Figure 2-11 shows target location by the polar plot method.

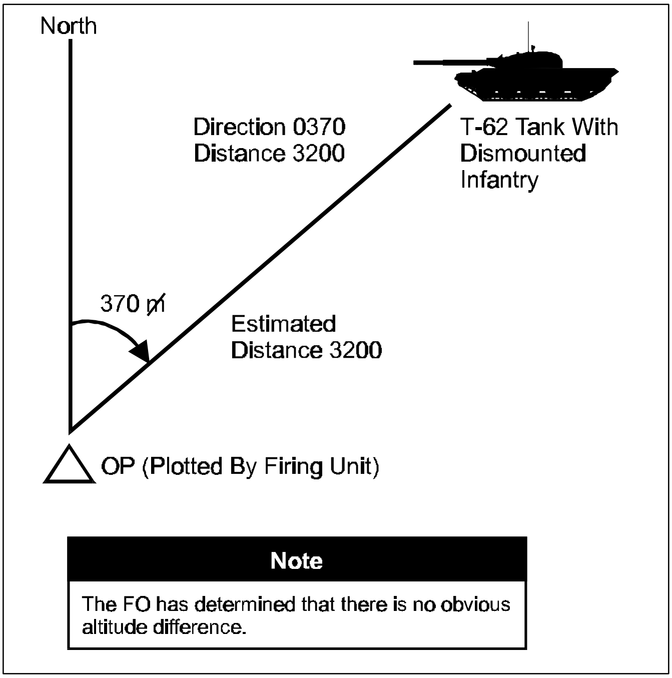


Figure 2-11. Polar Plot Method of Target Location.

a. Steps for Determining Data. The steps to determine polar plot data are listed below.

(1) Determine the OT direction to the nearest 10 mils. An oriented BC scope will determine direction to the nearest mil.

(2) Determine or estimate the distance to the target to the nearest 100 meters. Laser data will be determined to the nearest 10 meters. Distance will be transmitted in the call for fire as "distance" followed by the distance to the target (meters understood).

(3) Determine the vertical difference between the observer and the target. The vertical difference will be transmitted in the call for fire as an "up" or "down" shift from the altitude of the observer to the altitude of the target if the shift is 35 meters or more. Any vertical shift that is determined will be transmitted to the nearest 5 meters (or 20 feet). The vertical shift increases the accuracy of the target location and should always be given if possible.

Note

When employing an instrument that provides greater accuracy than the minimum requirements, it is acceptable to determine and transmit the more accurate data.

b. Laser Polar. A MULE that has been oriented for direction provides the quickest, most accurate means of target location. If the firing unit has met its requirements for accurate fire, the mission type for laser polar missions should be fire for effect. If not, one round in adjustment is adequate. Not only do laser polar missions provide a more accurate target location; the subsequent corrections are processed differently from regular missions as well. Target location is determined by the FDC by using vertical angle to the nearest mil and incorporating distance as the slant range. An oriented BC scope or aiming circle used with a laser rangefinder can also be used to provide accurate laser polar data. Laser polar data determines direction to the nearest mil, distance to the nearest 10 meters, and vertical angle (versus shift) to the nearest +/- 1 mil.

2202. Grid Coordinates. The observer can locate a target by using the grid system of the military map. If the observer has conducted a thorough terrain/map study, the grid coordinate method of target location is recommended. There is no requirement for the observer's position to be known by the firing unit. The observer normally locates targets to an accuracy of 100 meters (six-place coordinates). When additional accuracy is required (e.g., known points), the observer should locate targets to the nearest 10 meters (eight-place coordinates).

a. Artillery and Mortars. The grid method of target location is transmitted in the call for fire as "grid" followed by the coordinates. OT direction can be transmitted after the call for fire has been sent (ideally when reading back the message to observer (MTO)), but it must be transmitted before or with the first adjustment.

Example
"Grid 452 677."

b. Naval Gunfire. The grid method of target location is transmitted in the call for fire as "grid" followed by the coordinates and "altitude" followed by the altitude of the target measured from sea level to the nearest 5 meters (or 20 feet). Direction is also transmitted in the target location element if the method of control is spotter adjust.

Example
"Grid 452 677, altitude 65, direction 0830."
or
"Grid 452 677, altitude 65, direction GTL."

2203. Shift From a Known Point. In shift from a known point, the observer locates the target in relation to a known point. Target location by shifting from a known point offers several advantages—it is accurate, it does not require the use of a map, and the observer's location is not required to be known by the firing unit. However, the firing unit must know the location and altitude of the known point. The known point may be a terrain reference point that was previously reported or a target that was previously fired on and recorded. For NGF, it may also be a radar beacon position. The steps in locating a target by a shift from a known point are as follows.

a. Step One. Identify the known point to be used.

(1) Artillery and Mortars. The known point is transmitted in the *warning order* element of the call for fire by using the words "shift known point (or target number) ______."

(2) Naval Gunfire. The known point is transmitted in the *target location* element of the call for fire by using the words "from reference point (or target number) ______."

b. Step Two. Determine the OT direction to the nearest 10 mils.

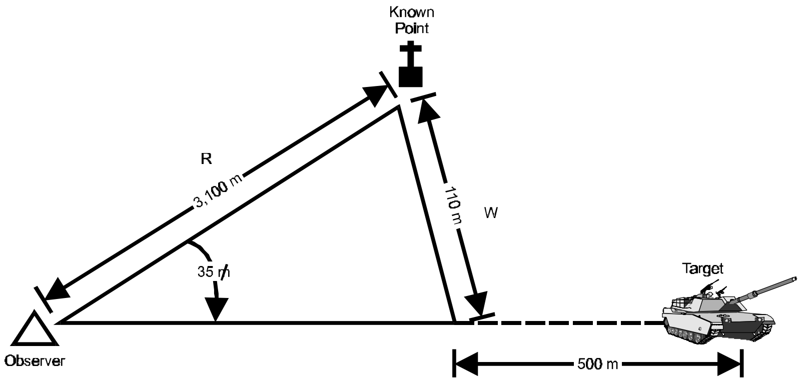
c. Step Three. Determine the lateral distance between the known point and the target to the nearest 10 meters. This is a two-step process. First, the observer determines the angular deviation in mils between the two. Then, by using the mil-relation formula, the observer multiplies the angular deviation (*m̸*) by the range to the known point (R) to the nearest 100 meters expressed in thousands (called the shift factor) to determine the lateral shift (W) in meters. (See figure 2-12 on page 2-41.) The lateral shift will be transmitted in the call for fire as a "left" or "right" (meters are understood). The shift factor is used to determine only the initial lateral shift. The OT factor is used for all subsequent corrections. (See paragraph 3302.)

Example

"Right 110."

Note

If the angular deviation is greater that 600 mils, use of the shift from a known point should be avoided because the mil-relation formula becomes



Formula

W = **R** x ₥

Where	Example
R = Observer-known point distance (expressed in thousands to the nearest hundred meters)	3,100 = 3.1
₥ = Angular deviation in mils (to the nearest mil)	35
W = Lateral shift (to nearest 10 meters)	3.1 x 35 = 108.5 (Right 110)

Figure 2-12. Mil-Relation Formula in Shift From a Known Point.

d. Step Four. Determine the range shift in meters between the known point and the target to the nearest 100 meters. The range shift will be transmitted in the call for fire as an “add” if the target is farther away from the observer than the known point or as a “drop” if the target is closer. Meters are understood and need not be specified.

Example
"Add 500."

e. Step Five. Determine the vertical difference between the known point and the target. The vertical difference will be transmitted in the call for fire as an up or down shift from the altitude of the known point to the altitude of the target. Only vertical shifts of 35 meters or greater will be transmitted. In addition, any vertical shift that is transmitted will be expressed to the nearest 5 meters (or 20 feet), if possible.

Example
"Up 35."

2204. Locating Targets in Mobile Operations. An observer with a motorized or mechanized unit (e.g., mounted in trucks, assault amphibian vehicles, or tanks) must be extremely proficient in his duties, particularly map reading and terrain association.

a. Preparations. The success of the observer depends largely on his preparations before the operation begins. These preparations include the following:

- Become acquainted with the vehicle. The observer should learn his position on the vehicle and the position of other team members. He should ensure that the position assigned will allow him to accomplish his mission; for example, it should allow him to observe, communicate, and coordinate with other supporting arms representatives.

- Ensure that required equipment/information is placed in an accessible location for quick reference, for example, maps, targets, radio, and frequencies.

- Study the map. The observer should study the map to the extent that he can mentally picture what he expects to see, for example, prominent landmarks. He should identify points or features along the planned route from which he can readily determine his orientation.

b. Considerations. The observer has to consider certain factors when conducting target location in mobile operations. The most important factors are direction, selection of method of target location, and actions should the observer become disoriented.

(1) Direction. As a result of the observer's movement, it will be necessary to change OT direction frequently. Another factor to consider is the magnetic effect of the vehicle on the compass. The observer will have to move 10 meters away from the vehicle to avoid interference or use another method of determining direction, for example, scaling from a map, estimating, or using the GTL. (See paragraph 2102.)

(2) Selection of Target Location Method. The grid method is the fastest and most accurate method for mobile operations if the observer has made a detailed map/terrain analysis. The observer can call for fire on planned targets or use these targets to shift to a target of opportunity. The accuracy of the shift will largely depend on the accuracy of the OT direction. The polar plot method is of limited use in mobile operations unless the observer has short static periods and constantly updates his position. Using GPS in these situations makes polar plotting feasible.

(3) Actions Should the Observer Become Disoriented. As a result of the tactical situation, the observer may have difficulty maintaining adequate observation and orientation. This may make it difficult to locate his own position and the target's location. In these situations, the observer can call for fire on a planned target and shift from the burst location. If the observer is completely disoriented, he can call for "mark center of sector." (See paragraph 3104.) If there is doubt about the safety of the firing, a high air burst (e.g., 200 meters) with shell high explosives (HE) or white phosphorus (WP) can be used. The tactical soundness of the high air burst must be considered. Knowledge of the tactical situation and disposition of friendly forces by the firing unit will prevent a friendly unit from being fired on.

Chapter 3

Requesting and Adjusting Artillery, Mortars, and Naval Gunfire

Section I. Artillery and Mortar Call for Fire

3101. Elements of the Call for Fire. The call for fire is "a request for fire containing data necessary for obtaining the required fire on a target." (Joint Pub 1-02) It is a concise message prepared by the observer and transmitted as a request, not an order. It contains the information needed by the FDC to determine the method of target attack. The call for fire is sent quickly but clearly enough to be understood, recorded, and read back without error by the FDC recorder. In the FO team, the initial elements of the call for fire should be sent by the radio operator while the FO determines the remaining data, for example, target location. The radio operator completes the call for fire as data becomes available. Regardless of the method of target location used, the normal call for fire is transmitted in three parts consisting of six elements with a break and readback after each part. The parts and elements are as follows:

- Observer identification and warning order
- Target location
- Target description, method of engagement, and method of fire and control.

3102. Observer Identification and Warning Order

a. Observer Identification. The first element of the call for fire, observer identification, lets the FDC know who is calling for fire and clears the net for the fire mission. The observer uses a call sign and a suffix. Once given, call signs are omitted from subsequent transmissions during the mission unless there is a chance of confusion, for example, when missions are being conducted simultaneously by other observers. (See figure 3-1 on page 3-3.)

b. Warning Order. The second element, warning order, is "a preliminary notice of an order or action which is to follow." (Joint Pub 1-02) The warning order consists of the type of mission, the size of the element to fire for effect, and the identification of the method of target location. (See figure 3-1.)

(1) Type of Mission. The observer selects a type of mission. The type of mission can be adjust fire, fire for effect, suppression, immediate suppression/smoke, or suppression of enemy air defenses (SEAD). The suppression and immediate suppression missions are discussed in paragraph 3105. Immediate smoke is discussed in paragraph 5705. SEAD is discussed in chapter 8. The *adjust-fire mission* is requested when the observer decides that an adjustment is needed because of questionable target location or lack of registration corrections. For this mission, the observer announces "adjust fire" in the warning order. The *fire-for-effect mission* is used when the observer has an accurate target location and is certain that the first volley will have an effect on the target. For this mission, the observer announces "fire for effect" in the warning order. The accuracy required to fire for effect depends on the target and the ammunition being used. The observer should strive for first-round fire for effect.

Situation 1
(Grid Method of Target Location)

Observer:	"R2S this is W2P31, adjust fire, over."
FDC:	"P31 this is R2S, adjust fire, out."

Situation 2
(Polar Plot Method of Target Location)

Observer:	"R2S this is W2P31, adjust fire, polar, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)

Situation 3
(Shift From a Known Point Method of Target Location)

Observer:	"R2S this is W2P31, fire for effect, shift AB 1037, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)

Note: The observer used the fire-for-effect type of mission in situation 3 because he had a good target location.

Figure 3-1. Examples of Observer Identification and Warning Order.

(2) Size of Element To Fire for Effect. The observer may request the size of the unit to fire for effect, for example, a battalion. This is usually done by announcing the last letter in the battalion FDC's call sign. For example, T6H24 will be announced "H." The observer should never refer to a unit in the clear. If the observer does not specify a size of element to fire for effect, the FDC will make the decision based on the attack guidance received and the *Joint Munitions Effectiveness Manual (JMEM)* solution. Mortars may be employed by platoon or section, which must be specified.

(3) Method of Target Location. The observer identifies in the warning order the method that he will use to locate the target. The method of target location may be polar, grid, or shift from a known point. (See chapter 2.) If the observer is using either the polar or shift method, he announces the method, for example, "polar" or "shift (identify known point)." If the observer is conducting a laser polar plot, he should announce "laser polar." This will facilitate fire direction. There is no requirement to announce "grid" in the warning order for the grid method of target location.

3103. Target Location. The third element of the call for fire is target location. The observer provides the FDC with the target location data that he determined by using either the grid, polar, or shift method. The firing unit uses the data to determine firing data. (See figure 3-2 on page 3-5.) The observer transmits the target location data as described below.

a. Grid. The observer announces the word "grid" followed by the coordinates of the target.

b. Polar. The observer announces the word "direction" followed by the spotting line (e.g., 1680), "distance" followed by the distance from the observer to the target (meters understood), and, if possible, an "up" or "down" vertical shift.

Situation 1	
(Continued from Figure 3-1)	
(Grid Method of Target Location)	
Observer:	"Grid 347 689, over."
FDC:	"Grid 347 689, out."
Situation 2	
(Continued from Figure 3-1)	
(Polar Plot Method of Target Location)	
Observer:	"Direction 1680, distance 3500, down 35, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)
Situation 3	
(Continued from Figure 3-1)	
(Shift From a Known Point Method of Target Location)	
Observer:	"Direction 0680, right 250, add 200, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)

Figure 3-2. Examples of Target Location.

c. Shift From a Known Point. The observer announces the word "direction" followed by the spotting line, the lateral shift (if any) transmitted as "left" or "right," the range shift (if any) transmitted as "add" or "drop," and, if applicable, an "up" or "down" vertical shift. Laser polar missions always announce vertical angle.

3104. Target Description, Method of Engagement, and Method of Fire and Control

a. Target Description. The fourth element of the call for fire, target description, is the element in which the observer describes the target in enough detail to enable the FDC to determine the amount and type of ammunition to be used. The observer's description should be brief but accurate and contain the following:

- What the target is (troops, supply dump, trucks)
- What the target is doing (digging in, in assembly area)
- The number of elements in the target (squad, three trucks)
- The degree of protection (in the open, in fighting holes, in bunkers with overhead protection)
- Target size and shape, if these are significant.

(1) Rectangular Targets. Rectangular targets are greater than 200 meters in length and width. They are described by the length and width of the target and the attitude (the azimuth of the long axis (0000-3200) in relation to grid north) to the nearest 100 mils.

Example
"400 by 200, attitude 2800."

(2) Circular Targets. Circular targets are for irregular-shaped targets with a radius greater than 100 meters. They are described by using the radius of the target area.

Example
"Radius 200."

(3) Linear Targets. Linear targets are targets greater than 200 meters long but less than or equal to 200 meters wide. They are described by an attitude and a length.

Example
"Length 400, attitude 1300."

(4) Irregular-Shaped Targets. Irregular-shaped targets are described by using the location of the target center, the length and depth (in meters), and, if required, the attitude. Sufficient detail should be provided to enable the FDC to determine the method of attack.

b. Method of Engagement. The fifth element of the call for fire, method of engagement, is the element that the observer uses to describe the attack of the target. The subelements of the method of engagement include the type of adjustment, mark, danger close, trajectory, ammunition, and distribution. Some of the subelements are standard and will be provided automatically unless the observer specifies otherwise. The standard type of adjustment is area fire; the standard trajectory is low angle for artillery (high angle for mortars); the standard ammunition is shell HE/fuze quick (HE/Q); the standard distribution is a circular sheaf for artillery (parallel sheaf for mortars). Nonstandard subelements must be addressed in the call for fire when required, for example, danger close if the target is near a friendly position. The subelements of the method of engagement are transmitted (as required) in the following sequence.

(1) Type of Adjustment. Two types of adjustment may be employed—precision or area fire. Unless precision fire is specified, area fire will be used. *Precision fire* is conducted with one weapon on a point target. It is used either to obtain registration corrections or to destroy a target. When the mission is a registration, it is initiated by the FDC with an MTO. (See chapter 5, sections II and III). If the target is to be destroyed, the observer announces "destruction." *Area fire* is used to attack an area target. Because many area targets can move, the adjustment should be made as rapidly and as accurately as possible to keep the target from escaping. A well-defined point should be selected at or near the center of the area to be attacked and used as an adjusting point. To achieve surprise, fire should be adjusted on an auxiliary adjusting point. After adjustment is completed, the fire for effect is shifted to the target. Normally, adjustment on an area target is conducted with one adjusting weapon.

(2) Danger Close. "Danger close" is included in the method of engagement when the predicted impact of a round or shell is within 600 meters of friendly troops for mortars and artillery. When alerted that the target is danger close, the FDC will take added precaution in the delivery of fires. The observer will use the creeping method of adjustment. (See paragraph 3302.e.) Omission of this subelement indicates that the target is away from a friendly position by at least the distances stated above. Minimum safe distances provide a 99-percent assurance that a casualty-producing hit on friendly troops will not occur. (See appendix A.)

(3) Mark. The term "mark" is included in the method of engagement to indicate that the observer is going to call for rounds either to orient himself in his zone of observation or to indicate targets to ground troops, aircraft, or other observers. This term is included in the method of engagement only when needed.

Example
"Mark center of sector."

(4) Trajectory. There are two types of trajectory—low-angle fire and high-angle fire. For *artillery*, low-angle fire is standard and need not be specified. If high-angle fire is desired, it must be specified. For more information on high-angle fire, see chapter 5, section I.

Example
"High angle."

For *mortars*, high-angle fire is standard and need not be specified.

(5) Ammunition. Several types of ammunition are available to the observer. The standard type of ammunition is HE/Q. If HE ammunition is specified in the call for fire, HE/Q will be fired in the adjustment and fire-for-effect phases. The term "in effect" indicates that the projectile/fuze specified is desired during fire for effect.

Nonstandard types of ammunition are specified in the call for fire. The observer must state either a projectile or a fuze, for example, "shell ICM" (projectile) and "VT in effect" (fuze). Illumination, ICM, and smoke can only be fuzed with fuze time. Therefore, when firing these projectiles, fuze time is understood and need not be specified. See appendix A for a discussion of projectiles and fuzes.

(6) Volume of Fire. The observer may request the number of rounds to be fired in effect. For example, "three rounds" indicates that the firing unit fires three volleys during the fire for effect. This equates to 18 rounds fired by a six-howitzer battery. If not requested, the volume of fire is determined by the fire direction officer (FDO) and announced in the MTO.

(7) Distribution. In *artillery*, the observer may control the pattern of bursts in the target area. The pattern of bursts is called a sheaf. The sheaf denotes the lateral distribution of bursts of two or more pieces fired together. Special sheafs of any length and width may be requested. When target length and width are given, attitude must also be given. When target length is equal to or greater than five times the target width, the battery computer system (BCS) assumes a linear target. Figure 3-3 on page 3-11 depicts the various sheafs. In *mortars*, the mortar ballistic computer (MBC) assumes that the target is linear and fires a parallel sheaf unless a special sheaf is requested.

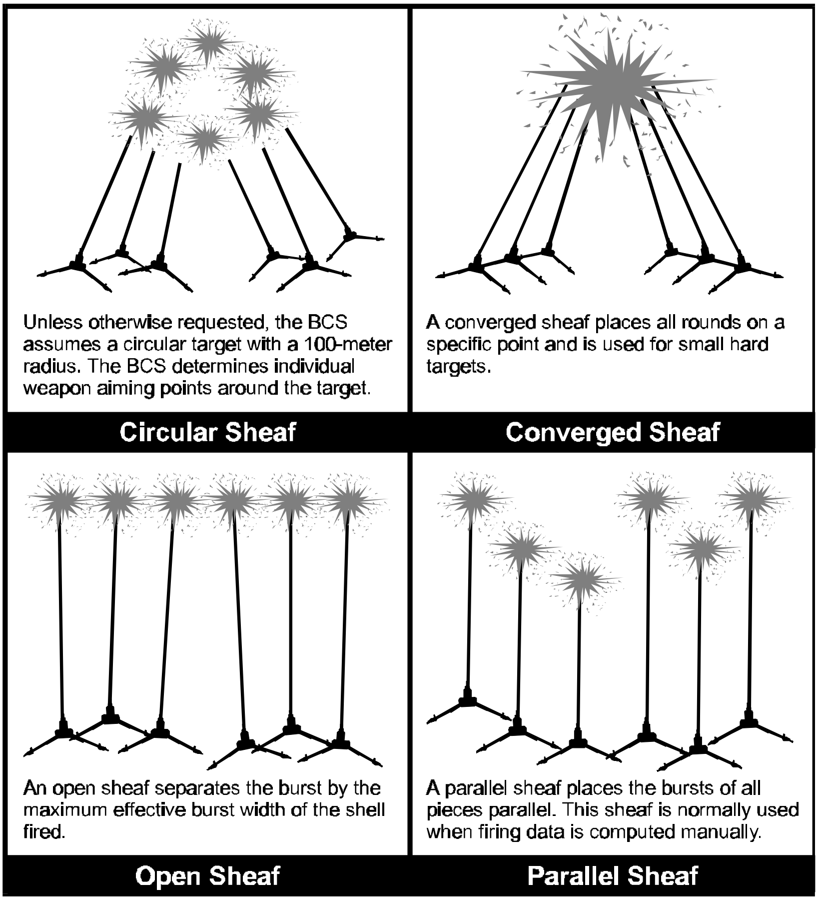


Figure 3-3. Sheafs.

c. Method of Fire and Control. The sixth element of the call for fire, method of fire and control, indicates the desired manner of attacking the target, whether or not the observer wants to control the time of delivery of fire, and whether or not he can observe the target. (See figure 3-4 on page 3-13.) Methods of fire and control are announced by the observer as discussed below.

(1) Method of Fire. In area fire, adjustment is normally conducted with one howitzer or with the center gun of a mortar platoon or section. Adjusting at long ranges, however, may sometimes be easier with two howitzers or guns firing. If the observer determines that a two-howitzer/gun adjustment is more appropriate for the mission, he may specify "two guns adjust" for artillery or "section adjust" for mortars. If, either for adjustment or effect, the observer wants the firing unit to fire by pieces from right to left or left to right, he specifies the unit and indicates right by piece (for left to right) or left by piece (for right to left), for example, "battery right by piece." The normal time interval between rounds fired in a platoon or battery right (left) is five seconds. The observer may specify a different time interval if desired.

(2) Method of Control. In the absence of a specified method of control, fire missions are executed by the firing unit when ready.

(a) At My Command. If the observer wants to control the time of delivery of fire, he announces "at my command" in the method of control. When the pieces are ready to fire, the FDC announces "section/platoon/battery/battalion is ready, over" (call signs are used). The observer announces "fire" when he is ready for the pieces to fire. This only applies to adjusting rounds and the first volley of a fire for effect. At my command remains in effect during the mission until the observer announces "cancel at my command, over."

Situation 1 **(Continued from Figure 3-1)** **(Grid Method of Target Location)**
(Observer desires to adjust with HE/Q then fire for effect with WP.)
Observer: "Five trucks refueling in the open, WP in effect, over."
FDC: (FDC reads back.)
Situation 2 **(Continued from Figure 3-1)** **(Polar Plot Method of Target Location)**
(The target is danger close. Observer desires HE/Q or to let the FDC select the projectile/fuze.)
Observer: "Infantry platoon in the open, danger close, over."
FDC: (FDC reads back.)
Situation 3 **(Continued from Figure 3-1)** **(Shift From a Known Point Method of Target Location)**
(The observer selects a sheaf to concentrate the fires on a specific point and desires to control the timing of the fires.)
Observer: "Machine gun position, converged sheaf, at my command, over."
FDC: (FDC reads back.)

Figure 3-4. Examples of Target Description, Method of Engagement, and Method of Fire and Control.

(b) By Round At My Command. At my command can be further specified. By round at my command controls every round in adjustment and every volley in the fire-for-effect phase. By piece, by round, at my command, further combines method of fire with method of control and can include right or left or a duration.

(c) Do Not Load. Do not load allows the howitzer/gun section to prepare ammunition and lay on the target without loading the howitzer. When the command "cancel do not load" is transmitted, the section automatically loads and fires the weapon (except for an at my command mission). Do not load is the recommended method of control for long wait or uncertain missions.

(d) Cannot Observe. Cannot observe indicates that the observer cannot see the target. This may be because of vegetation, terrain, weather, or smoke. Cannot observe is used when there is a reason to believe that a target exists at a given location and the target is important enough to justify firing without adjustment.

(e) Time on Target. Time on target (TOT) is a method of firing on a target in which a unit times its fire so that the initial round strikes the target at the time specified. The observer indicates TOT by using one of the techniques discussed in appendix D.

(f) Continuous Illumination. Continuous illumination is a type of fire in which illumination projectiles are fired at specified time intervals to provide uninterrupted lighting on the target or specified area. The interval may be specified by the observer (in seconds) or determined by the FDC. If no interval is given by the observer, the FDC determines the interval by the burning time of the illumination ammunition in use. Continuous illumination must be used with discretion to avoid excessive ammunition expenditure.

(g) Coordinated Illumination. Coordinated illumination is a type of fire in which the firing of illuminating and HE projectiles is coordinated to provide illumination of the target and surrounding area only at the time required for spotting and adjusting fire. The observer may allow the FDC to control the firing of the illumination and HE rounds by marking the illumination round when it provides optimal illumination on the target, or he may control the firing of each round by using procedures of by round at my command. (See paragraph 5604.)

(h) Cease Loading. The command "cease loading" is used during the firing of two or more rounds to stop the loading of rounds into the gun(s). The gun section may fire any rounds that have already been loaded.

(i) Check Firing. The command "check firing" is used to cause an immediate halt in firing. Once check firing has been announced, the command "cancel check firing" must be given to resume firing.

(j) Continuous Fire. Continuous fire means loading and firing as rapidly and as accurately as possible within the prescribed rate of fire for the equipment. Firing will continue until suspended by the command "cease loading" or "check firing."

(k) Repeat. During adjustment, "repeat" means to fire another round by using the same firing data used to fire the previous round and adjust for any change in ammunition. Repeat is not sent in the initial call for fire.

Example
"Time, repeat, over."

During fire for effect, "repeat" means to fire the same number of rounds using the same method of fire for effect. Changes in the number of guns, previous corrections, interval, or ammunition may be requested.

3105. Call for Fire for Suppressive Fire. Suppressive fires are "fires on or about a weapons system to degrade its performance below the level needed to fulfill its mission objectives, during the conduct of the fire mission." (Joint Pub 1-02) *Suppressive fires are delivered as a suppression mission or as an immediate suppression mission.* A suppression mission is used to fire on a planned target that is *not currently active*. *An immediate suppression mission is used to fire on a planned target or target of opportunity that has taken friendly maneuver or aerial units under fire.* Both the suppression and immediate suppression missions yield suppressive results only during the time when the fire is being delivered. Firing on a planned target is more responsive than firing on a target of opportunity. It is important that the maneuver unit *does something* while the suppressive fires are making impact, for example, maneuver against the target, position the observer to adjust fire to neutralize the target, or bypass the target.

a. Suppression Mission. The call for fire consists of the observer identification, the warning order "suppress," the target number of the planned target, and the duration and rate of fire. This call for fire is sent in one transmission.

Example Observer: "R2S this is W2P31, suppress AB 3104, four minutes, four shells per minute, over." FDC: "P31 this is R2S, suppress AB 3104, four minutes, four shells per minute, authenticate DELTA JULIETT, over." Observer: "I authenticate DELTA, out."

b. Immediate Suppression Mission. An immediate suppression mission normally requires a minimum volume of fire. The type of ammunition, units to fire, and volume are established by unit SOP, for example, two sections, one round of HE/point detonating (PD), one round of HE/fuze variable time (VT). The call for fire is sent in one transmission. The call for fire consists of the observer identification, the warning order "immediate suppression," the target location, and transmission authentication. (See paragraph 3108.)

Example Observer: "This is W2P31, immediate suppression, grid 221 432, authentication is TANGO UNIFORM, over." FDC: "This is R2S, immediate suppression, grid 221 432, out."

3106. Direction. In *artillery* and *mortars*, direction is not included in the initial call for fire when the grid method of target location is used. When conducting a grid mission, the observer transmits the direction when reading back the MTO or with the first subsequent correction in adjustment.

3107. Message to Observer. After receiving the call for fire, the FDO determines how the target will be attacked. That decision is announced to the observer in the form of an MTO, which the observer reads back. The MTO should be sent to the observer before the first subsequent correction. At a minimum, the MTO will consist of unit(s) to fire, any changes to the call for fire, number of rounds, and target number. The FDC will provide other information, as required.

Note
An MTO is not transmitted for an immediate suppression mission.

a. Units to Fire. Units to fire refers to the batteries or battalion that will fire the mission. If the battalion is firing for effect with one battery adjusting, the FDC designates the fire-for-effect unit (battalion) and then the adjusting unit (ALFA battery) by using the last letter of the call sign.

Example
ALFA battery (R6G) will adjust, and the battalion (A8T) will fire for effect. The MTO would begin “T, G . . . ”

b. Changes to the Call for Fire. Any changes to the observer's request in the call for fire are announced.

Example
The observer requested ICM in effect, and the FDO decides to fire VT in effect. The MTO would be "T, G, VT in effect . . . "

c. Number of Rounds. This is the number of rounds per tube in fire for effect.

d. Target Number. A target number is assigned at the FDC to each mission to facilitate processing of subsequent corrections.

Example
"T, G, VT in effect, four rounds, target AA 7732, over."

e. Other Information as Required

(1) Probable Error in Range. Probable error in range (PE_R) is the distance in meters over and short of a given point of aim within which 50 percent of all rounds fired are likely to fall. (See figure 3-5 on page 3-21.) For example, for an M198 howitzer firing HE at a range of 6,000 meters (charge 5-GB), one PE_R is nine meters. There is a 50-percent chance that any given round will impact nine meters over or short of the point of aim when fired at this range. The remaining rounds will impact within four PE_R or 36 meters over or short of the target (as depicted by the box in figure 3-5). By contrast, one PE_R for the same weapon firing at a range of 14,000 meters is 20 meters. PE_R varies with several factors, for example, range, propelling charge, ammunition, and weapon. The FDC normally selects the optimal firing data to minimize PE_R. However, circumstances (e.g., intervening crests, counterfire threat) may require the selection of a less than optimal gunnery solution. The FDC reports the PE_R when it is excessive to prevent the observer from attempting to correct the impact of a round caused by natural dispersion, for example, when the PE_R is equal to or greater than 38 meters during an area fire mission and 25 meters or greater in a precision fire mission such as registrations or destruction.

(2) Angle T. Angle T is the angle formed by the intersection of the OTL and the GTL with the vertex of the angle at the target location. Angle T is sent to the observer when it is greater than or equal to 500 mils, or when requested. See figure 3-10 on page 3-53 for the effect of angle T on the adjustment of fire.

(3) Time of Flight. Time of flight (TOF) is the time in seconds from the instant when a weapon is fired to the instant when the round strikes or detonates. TOF is sent to an observer when adjusting high-angle fire, during a moving-target mission, for Copperhead missions, when firing for an aerial observer, for shell HE in a coordinated illumination mission, when using “by shell at my command,” or when requested.

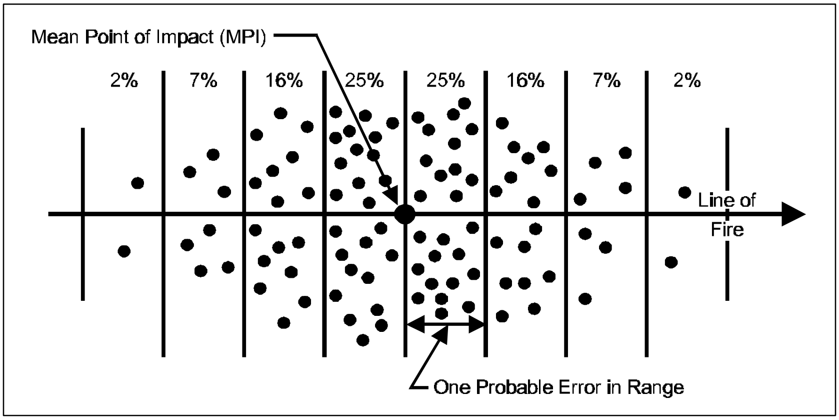


Figure 3-5. Probable Error in Range.

> **Note**
> The MTO for registrations is discussed in chapter 5.

3108. Authentication. The two methods of authentication that are authorized for use are challenge-and-reply and transmission authentication. For instructions on authentication procedures, refer to the automated communications-electronics operating instructions (CEOI).

a. Challenge-and-Reply Authentication. Challenge-and-reply authentication is considered to be a normal element of initial requests for fire. The FDC inserts the challenge in the last readback of the fire request. The FO transmits the correct authentication reply to the FDC immediately following the challenge.

Authentication replies exceeding 20 seconds are automatically suspect and a basis for rechallenge. Subsequent adjustment of fire or immediate engagement of additional targets by the observer originating the initial fire request normally will not require continued challenge by the FDC.

b. Transmission Authentication. Transmission authentication will be used only if authentication is required and it is not possible or desirable for the receiving station to reply, for example, message instruction, imposed radio silence, FPF, and immediate suppression.

Example
(Challenge and Reply)
FDC: "Authenticate ALFA, BRAVO, over."
Observer: "I authenticate CHARLIE, out."

Example
(Transmission Authentication)
Observer: "Authentication is TANGO UNIFORM, out."

3109. Report Upon Firing

a. Shot. The firing unit will transmit "shot" after each round fired in adjustment and after the initial round in the fire-for-effect phase. The observer acknowledges each.

Example
FDC: “Shot, over.”
FO: “Shot, out.”

b. Splash. When requested, the transmission of “splash” by the FDC informs the observer when his round is five seconds from detonation. Firing units should automatically report “splash” during high-angle firing, when the observer is airborne, and for other missions when requested by the observer. When reported, “splash” should be transmitted for each round in adjustment and for the initial round in each volley of fire for effect. In coordinated illumination missions, “splash” is reported for illumination rounds fired before the beginning of the HE adjustment phase of the mission and only for HE rounds thereafter. When in the assault, “splash” allows the supported unit to close with their fires. It allows the observer to remain under cover and concealment while awaiting the fires, thus enhancing his survivability. This transmission also helps the observer to identify or observe his rounds if other fire missions are being conducted in the area. The observer is not required to acknowledge the transmission.

Example
FDC: “Splash, out.”

3110. Correction of Errors. Errors are sometimes made by the observer in transmitting data or by the FDC personnel in reading back the data. If the observer realizes that an error has been made, he announces “correction” and transmits the entire corrected transmission.

Example
The observer transmitted, “A1B this is C2D, adjust fire, shift known point two, over, direction 4680 . . . ” The observer realizes before proceeding that the direction should have been 5680. To correct the error, he transmits, “Correction, direction 5680.”

When an error has been made in a subelement and the correction of that subelement will affect other transmitted data, the word “correction” is announced. Then the correct subelement and all affected data are transmitted in the proper sequence.

Example
The observer transmitted, “Left 200, add 400, up 40, over.” (The correction should have been “Left 200, drop 400, up 40.”) To correct the error, he transmits, “Correction, left 200, drop 400, up 40, over.”

3111. Call for Fire From Headquarters Higher Than Battalion. Calls for fire from higher headquarters are similar in format to those transmitted by observers. The call for fire from higher headquarters may specify the unit to fire for effect. However, the observer’s call for fire can only request a firing unit. A call for fire from a higher headquarters is shown in the following example.

Example
Warning order: “Fire for effect, A8B (battalion), over.”
Target location: “Grid 432 789, altitude 520, over.”
Method of engagement: “VT, three rounds.”
Method of control: “TOT 1600, over.”

Section II. Naval Gunfire Call for Fire

3201. Fire Unit Status. A ship is assigned a fire support area (FSA) or a fire support station (FSS) from which to fire. When a ship arrives in its assigned firing position and has completed its prefiring tasks, it will report “on station and ready to fire” as a part of the guns up ready to fire (GURF) report. The GURF report may include other pertinent information, for example, types and quantities of ammunition available for NGF support. The GURF report may be requested at other times by the NGLO or the spotter.

3202. Elements of the Call for Fire. The spotter must communicate effectively with the ship to perform his primary duty of providing NGF. The spotter achieves this by employing a standard call for fire. The call for fire is transmitted to the ship in two transmissions consisting of six elements, with a readback after each transmission. The sequence of these two transmissions is as follows: spotter identification, warning order and target number, target location, target description, method of engagement, and method of control.

3203. Spotter Identification, Warning Order, and Target Number

a. Spotter Identification. The spotter identification tells the ship who is calling for fire. The spotter and the ship will use call signs. Once given, call signs will normally be omitted from subsequent transmissions in the course of the mission. (See figure 3-6 on page 3-27.)

b. Warning Order. The warning order informs the ship that a call for fire is being transmitted. It clears the net and warns the ship that firing on a target is desired. The warning order consists of the words "fire mission." (See figure 3-6.)

c. Target Number. The spotter assigns a target number to each target on which he calls for fire. By use of a target number, the ship and the NGLO monitoring the mission are able to keep track of each location being fired on. The target number consists of two letters followed by four numbers. For targets of opportunity, the spotter assigns each fire mission a number in numerical sequence from the block of target numbers allocated by the FSCC, or the FSCC may assign the target number. In the case of planned targets, the spotter uses the previously assigned target number. The assignment of target numbers to fire missions in the call for fire does not cause the targets to be recorded as targets. (See paragraph 3303.)

Situation 1

Spotter:	"A1B, this is C2D, fire mission, target number AB 2135, over."
Ship:	"C2D, this is A1B, fire mission, target number AB 2135, out."

Figure 3-6. Example of Spotter Identification, Warning Order, and Target Number.

3204. Target Location, Target Description, Method of Engagement, and Method of Control

a. Target Location. Target location provides the ship with the information needed to plot the target and determine firing data. (See chapter 2, section II.) The observer transmits target location data as described below.

(1) Grid. The spotter announces "grid" followed by the coordinates of the target; "altitude" followed by the altitude of the target, which is measured from mean sea level (meters understood); and "direction" followed by the spotting line if the method of control is spotter adjust.

(2) Polar. The spotter announces "direction" followed by the spotting line (e.g., 1680), "distance" followed by the distance from the spotter to the target (meters understood), and an up or down vertical shift.

(3) Shift From a Known Point. The spotter announces "from reference point" (or target number), "direction" followed by the spotting line, the lateral shift (if any) transmitted as a left or right, the range shift (if any) transmitted as an add or drop, and an up or down vertical shift.

b. Target Description. Target description gives a brief description of the target. The spotter considers the type of target, size, and degree of protection when formulating target description.

(1) Type of Target. Type of target includes what the target is and what the target is doing, for example, troops digging in or trucks in convoy.

(2) Size. Size includes the number of elements in the target or physical dimensions (meters understood). For target attitude, mils grid is understood.

Example
"Five trucks, 100 troops, 400 x 400 attitude 1600."

(3) Degree of Protection. Degree of protection indicates whether the target has protection, for example, in the open or in bunkers with overhead cover.

c. Method of Engagement. Method of engagement is the element that the spotter uses to describe the attack of the target. The subelements of the method of engagement include danger close, trajectory, ammunition, armament, number of guns, number of salvos, and special instructions. Some of the subelements are standard and will be provided automatically unless the spotter specifies otherwise. The standard method of engagement for trajectory uses a full charge, which produces a high muzzle velocity and a normal trajectory. The standard method of engagement for ammunition is HE/Q; for armament, it is main; for number of guns, it is one gun; and for number of salvos, it is one salvo. Nonstandard subelements must be addressed in the call for fire when required. An example is when the observer specifies danger close when the target is (and, therefore, the round will impact) near a friendly position. The subelements of the method of engagement are transmitted (as required) in the following sequence.

(1) Danger Close. The term “danger close” is included in the method of engagement when there are friendly troops or positions within a prescribed distance of the target. Danger close for unobserved or initial salvos of NGF projectiles that are smaller than 6 inches is 750 meters.

(a) The spotter reports “danger close” followed by a cardinal or intercardinal direction (based on grid north) and distance (in meters) from the *target* to the nearest friendly position. The spotter also designates the place where the first salvo (round) is to impact. The first salvo can be either *offset* or *directed at target*.

(b) The first salvo may be offset to impact on the side of the target opposite the location of the friendly forces or a restricted target, for example, class E. See MCWP 3-31.1/NWP 3-09.11, *Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations*. This is done by a normal correction (left/right, add/drop) made in relation to the spotting direction or as a cardinal/intercardinal direction and distance (in meters). The offset between the nearest friendly position and the first salvo can be any distance specified by the spotter but is normally at least 750 meters for five-inch NGF.

Example

"Danger close south 350." (South 350 indicates friendly position in relation to target.) "First salvo at north 400." (The correction north 400 positions the offset at least 750 meters from the friendly position (350 meters + 400 meters = 750 meters).) The first salvo may be *directed at the target* when the tactical situation does not permit an offset. An example is "first salvo at

(2) Trajectory. This subelement applies to ships that are capable of reduced-charge or high-angle firing. The normal trajectory is flat and fired at full-charge propellant. The normal trajectory is standard; if this subelement is omitted in the call for fire, the ship will fire full charge. The spotter or ship may specify a nonstandard trajectory when required. The nonstandard trajectories are reduced charge and high angle.

(a) Reduced Charge. This is required when intervening terrain prevents engagement of targets in defilade. The spotter or ship raises the trajectory to increase the angle of fall by announcing "reduced charge." In addition, reduced charge lowers the initial velocity of the projectile. This prevents the ripping of illumination parachutes and increases the accuracy at short ranges. Once reduced charge has been initiated, it can be terminated by the command "cancel reduced charge."

(b) High Angle. High angle is fired with a full charge. It is used to engage targets in defilade when extended range or other considerations prevent the use of reduced charge. The spotter or the ship announces “high angle.” Once initiated, it can be terminated by the command “cancel high angle.”

(3) Ammunition. Several types of ammunition are available to the spotter. The standard type of ammunition is HE/Q (PD).

(a) If no ammunition is specified in the call for fire, HE/Q will be fired in the adjustment and fire-for-effect phases. The term “in effect” indicates that the projectile/fuze specified is desired during the fire for effect.

(b) Nonstandard types of ammunition are specified in the call for fire. The spotter must state either a projectile or a fuze, for example, “shell WP” (projectile) or “fuze CVT” (fuze). When firing illumination, the fuze is understood to be fuze time and need not be specified.

(c) As much warning as possible should be provided to the ship when a mission requires a nonstandard projectile. This allows time to ready the ammunition in the gun mount. The quantities of nonstandard ammunition carried in the ship’s magazine are limited. See appendix A for a discussion of projectiles and fuzes.

(4) Number of Guns. The spotter may specify the number of guns to be used in adjustment and fire for effect. If the number of guns for effect is not specified, it is understood to be the same number as used in adjustment. One gun is considered to be the standard and need not be specified. If more than one gun is desired, the number of guns must be specified, for example, “two guns.”

(5) Number of Salvos. The term "salvo" refers to the method of fire in which a weapon, or number of weapons, is fired at a target. It indicates the number of projectiles to be fired from each gun.

Example
Five salvos equals five projectiles to be fired, while two guns five salvos would be 10 projectiles fired.

Number of salvos is sent when entering fire for effect or when the spotter desires to adjust with multiple salvos. If the method of control is spotter adjust, the number of salvos is omitted until the spotter is ready to enter fire for effect. If omitted, the ship will fire one salvo.

Example
"Two salvos in adjustment."

(6) Special Instructions. The spotter uses special instructions in the call for fire when he desires the use of specific, nonstandard techniques to attack the target.

(a) Interval. Interval is a special instruction that is used to cause fire-for-effect rounds to be fired with a specific time interval between each salvo. The spotter announces "interval" followed by a desired time interval (seconds understood).

Example
"10 salvos, interval 30, fire for effect."

(b) Sustained Fire. The sustained fire command is given if there is a requirement for fire for effect to be spread over a specific period of time. The spotter specifies "sustained fire." The command includes the number of salvos and the period of time in which they are required to be fired.

Example
"20 salvos, sustained fire, five minutes, fire for effect."

(c) Time on Target. TOT is used by the spotter when he wants the initial salvos in fire for effect to impact the target at a specified time. He may use any of the techniques described in appendix D.

(d) Coordinated Illumination. The coordinated illumination command is used by the spotter to inform the ship that, subsequent to adjusting illumination, the spotter will request simultaneous HE fire. He does this by announcing "coordinated illumination."

(e) Continuous Illumination. The continuous illumination command is used when the spotter requires constant light on a target. The spotter may specify a period of time during which the illumination is to be effective. The ship determines the interval for firing the subsequent illumination salvos on the basis of the burning time of the projectile. The spotter commands "continuous illumination." This command should be used with discretion to avoid excessive expenditure of ammunition.

d. Method of Control. Method of control indicates the spotter's desire or ability to control the delivery of fire. The standard method of control is spotter adjust and is omitted in the call for fire. The nonstandard methods of control are fire for effect and ship adjust. Fire for effect can be modified by the command "cannot observe." All methods of control can be modified by the command "at my command."

(1) Spotter Adjust. When there is doubt about target location or firing accuracy, the spotter will adjust salvos until he is sure that fire will impact the target. This method is understood to be standard and is omitted from the call for fire. The spotter may state this when he desires to revert to adjustment during a mission.

(2) Fire for Effect. The spotter should strive for fire for effect with the first round or as soon as possible in the adjustment phase. When determining whether or not to fire for effect on the first round, the spotter must consider the target location and how accurately the ship has been firing its initial rounds on previous missions. He must also consider the dispersion pattern of NGF. If the spotter believes that the first salvo will affect the target, the best results are normally achieved by surprise fire. When fire for effect is desired, the spotter specifies the number of salvos (and number of guns if different from that used in adjustment) and "fire for effect."

Example
"10 salvos, fire for effect."

"Fire for effect" can be modified by the command "cannot observe" when the spotter desires to fire on a suspected target or a target provided by intelligence sources. "Cannot observe" is used when neither the spotter nor the ship can see the target. The spotter must specify the number of salvos to be fired in the method of engagement.

Example
"Two guns, four salvos, cannot observe, fire for effect."

(3) Ship Adjust. This method of control is employed when the spotter believes that the ship has a better view of the target than he does. Because direct fire is faster and more accurate, this method is used whenever possible. After the spotter has positively identified the target to the ship, he announces "ship adjust." The ship then takes the target under fire. The spotter may assist the ship by providing range spottings along the GTL, particularly when he is looking perpendicular to the GTL.

(4) At My Command. At my command is used as a modifier to the three methods of control. At my command may be used when the spotter wants to control the precise firing of each salvo in spotter adjust and the first salvo of fire for effect. He includes "at my command" in the method of control. When the ship is prepared to fire each round, the ship will transmit "ready over." The spotter then commands "fire" when he is ready for the ship to fire the round. At my command remains in effect throughout the mission or until the spotter announces "cancel at my command." At my command is frequently used by aerial observers. (See figure 3-7 on page 3-37.)

e. Prefiring Report. After the ship receives the call for fire and determines firing data, a report will be made to the spotter before firing begins. The spotter reads back this transmission to the ship and commands "break . . . fire, over." The transmission consists of the following information.

Example
"Fire for effect, at my command."

(1) Gun-Target Line. The ship will report its firing direction by using the same north reference and units used by the spotter. The ship will notify the spotter of subsequent changes to the GTL of 200 mils (10 degrees) or more. If the direction used for adjustment is the GTL, the ship will use mils grid in the call for fire if the direction in the call for fire was a cardinal/intercardinal direction, a GTL, or an arbitrary reference feature or if direction was omitted.

Situation 1
(Continued from Figure 3-6)
(Grid Method of Target Location, Spotter Adjust Mission)

Spotter:	"Grid 786 543, altitude 05, direction 2680, 50 troops in open, fuze CVT in effect, over."
Ship:	(Ship reads back.)

Situation 2
(Continued from Figure 3-6)
(Polar Plot Method of Target Location, At My Command Mission)

Spotter: "Direction 2680, distance 3000, down 40, 50 troops in open, fuze CVT in effect, at my command, over."

Ship: (Ship reads back.)

Situation 3
(Continued from Figure 3-6)
(Shift From a Known Point Method of Target Location, At My Command Mission)

Spotter: "From target number AB 3772, direction 3470, left 280, add 500, supply depot in defilade, radius 200, reduced charge, two guns 10 salvos, fire for effect, at my command, over."

Ship: (Ship reads back.)

Figure 3-7. Examples of Target Location, Target Description, Method of Engagement, and Method of Control.

(2) Line of Fire. If the ship is firing illumination, the firing direction may not pass over the target because of wind drift of the flare parachute. To indicate the illumination projectile trajectory, the ship will report "line of fire" followed by the directional reference. The line of fire may be different from the GTL.

(3) Ready/Time of Flight. When the ship is prepared to fire the first salvo, the ship reports "ready" followed by the TOF (seconds understood). The spotter reads back the entire prefiring report and commands "break . . . fire." If the method of control included at my command, the ship will also report "ready" before firing each subsequent round. The ship will inform the spotter when there is a TOF change of more than five seconds.

Example
Ship: "GTL 1680, ready 17, over."
Spotter: "GTL 1680, ready 17, break . . . fire, over."

(4) First Salvo at (Point of Aim). When the spotter has reported a danger close situation, the ship confirms the point of aim that was previously ordered by the spotter.

Example
"First salvo at north 400."

(5) Summit. If the spotter is airborne, the ship routinely reports the highest altitude above mean sea level that the projectile will reach on its flight path to the target. Summit may also be requested by ground spotters or the NGLO. Summit is reported in feet to aerial observers and in meters to ground units.

(6) Any Changes. If the ship must change any portion of the spotter's fire request, the ship notifies the spotter of the change. For instance, if the spotter requests "WP in effect" and the ship has none remaining, the ship will announce "cannot comply with WP, HE in effect."

f. Authentication. To avoid deception, the ship should initiate authentication procedures on establishing initial communications with the spotter.

3205. Report Upon Firing. The ship will transmit "shot" and "splash" after each salvo is fired in adjustment and after the initial salvo in the fire-for-effect phase. There is no requirement for the spotter to acknowledge these transmissions.

a. Shot. Shot is transmitted at the moment the guns are fired.

b. Splash. Splash is transmitted five seconds before the round is expected to detonate. Splash is not reported during fire for effect when two or more ships are conducting a massed-fire mission. In coordinated illumination missions, splash is reported for illumination (star) shells before the beginning of the HE adjustment phase and thereafter for the HE round only.

Example
"Shot . . . splash, out."

3206. Correction of Errors. Errors are sometimes made by the spotter or by the ship when transmitting data. The following procedures should be used to correct the data.

a. Correction. If the spotter realizes that he has made an error in his transmission, he immediately transmits the word "correction" followed by the corrected data. If the correction affects other subelements, his correction includes a restatement of the entire data.

Example
"Correction, direction 0670, over."

b. Wrong. If an error is made during a readback, the word "wrong" followed by the correct data is transmitted at the end of the transmission. The word "wrong" is then read back, along with the corrected version.

Example
"Wrong, direction 0670, right 300, add 400, up 15, over."

Section III. Adjustment of Fire

This section explains the procedures and the conditions for adjustment of fire. After a round bursts, a spotting is made and a correction is transmitted to adjust the fires onto the target. On satisfactory adjustment, the observer enters the fire-for-effect phase. This section is applicable to the artillery FO, the mortar FO, and the NGF spotter. Except where addressed separately, the word *observer* in the text refers to all three.

3301. Spottings. A spotting is an observer's mental determination of the location of the burst or mean point of impact (MPI) of multiple bursts in relation to the adjusting point as observed along the OTL. Spottings are not normally announced except in situations involving straddle NGF and observed/lost spottings. Spottings must be made the instant that the burst occurs, except where delayed deliberately to take advantage of drifting smoke or dust. The observer should position his binoculars for spotting before the burst appears. The observer holds the binoculars just below eye level, looking over the top of them with the naked eye until the burst is sighted. Then, the binoculars are raised to eye level and the spotting is made. Spottings are made for *height of burst* (HOB) to determine how high a burst is above the target, for *range* to determine how far a burst is beyond or short of the target, and for *deviation* to determine how far a burst is to the right or left of the OTL. The observer should consider spotting in that order (HOB, range, deviation) to determine the most difficult spottings first.

a. Height-of-Burst Spottings. HOB spottings are used to determine any increase or decrease required in the HOB or altitude of impact of a round. HOB spottings are used for adjusting air bursts when firing fuze time. These spottings are also used for making adjustments to ground bursts when attacking a target on a steep slope or with a vertical face. HOB spottings for air bursts are made to the nearest mil by using binoculars. HOB spottings are categorized as either air, graze, or mixed. These spottings are then used to make HOB corrections.

(1) Air. An air spotting is a round or group of rounds that burst in the air. The observer measures the number of mils above the target at which the air burst detonates. The spotting is made as *air* (so many mils) above the target.

Example
"Air 12."

(2) Graze. A graze spotting is a round or group of rounds that detonates or impacts. The spotting is made as *graze*.

(3) Mixed, Mixed Air, and Mixed Graze. A *mixed* spotting is a group of rounds that results in an equal number of air bursts and graze bursts. A *mixed air* spotting is a group of rounds that results in air bursts and graze bursts when most of the bursts are air bursts. A *mixed graze* spotting is a group of rounds that results in air bursts and graze bursts when most of the bursts are graze bursts. When attacking a target on a steep slope or with a vertical face, HOB spottings for *ground bursts* are the difference between the altitude (in meters) of the burst and the altitude of the target. The observer determines the difference by visual estimation or by map measurements. These spottings are then used to make HOB corrections.

b. Range Spottings. Definite range spottings are required to make a proper range adjustment. A graphical portrayal of range spottings is shown in figure 3-8 on page 3-43. Normally, a burst on or near the OTL provides a definite spotting. An observer can make a definite range spotting when the burst is not on or near the OTL by using his knowledge of the terrain, drifting smoke, and shadows. However, even experienced observers must use caution and good judgment when making such spottings. Possible range spottings are over, short, target, range correct, and doubtful.

(1) Over. An over spotting is a round that detonates beyond the target or adjusting point.

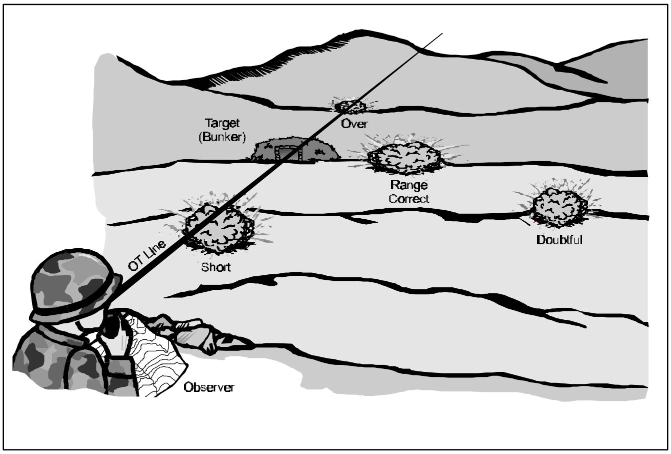


Figure 3-8. Range Spottings.

(2) Short. A short spotting is a round that detonates between the observer and the target or adjusting point.

(3) Target. A target spotting is a round that detonates on the target. This spotting is used in precision fire (artillery or mortar registration or destruction missions).

(4) Range Correct. A range correct spotting is a round that impacts at the correct range.

(5) Doubtful. A doubtful spotting is a round that is so far to the right or left of the OTL that a definite range spotting cannot be made.

c. Straddle (Naval Gunfire). In NGF, a spotting of *straddle* is made for a multigun salvo when some rounds fall short and some fall beyond the target. The spotter announces “straddle” followed by a correction to place the MPI on the target. The term is normally used during a ship adjust or a massed-fire mission.

d. Deviation Spottings. Deviation spottings determine the angular amount and direction of the deviation as seen from the observer’s position. Examples of deviation spottings are shown in figure 3-9 on page 3-45. During a fire mission, the observer measures deviation to the nearest five mils (nearest mil for precision fire) by using the method discussed in paragraph 2103. Possible deviation spottings are line or (so many mils) right or left of the OTL.

e. Unobserved Spottings. Under certain conditions, the observer may be able to make a spotting even though he is unable to see the round impact. For instance, he may hear but not see the round impact. By knowing the terrain, the observer determines that the only place that the round could have impacted without being seen is in a draw beyond the target. Although this is an *unobserved* spotting, the observer can make adjustments from the location where he determines that the round impacted.

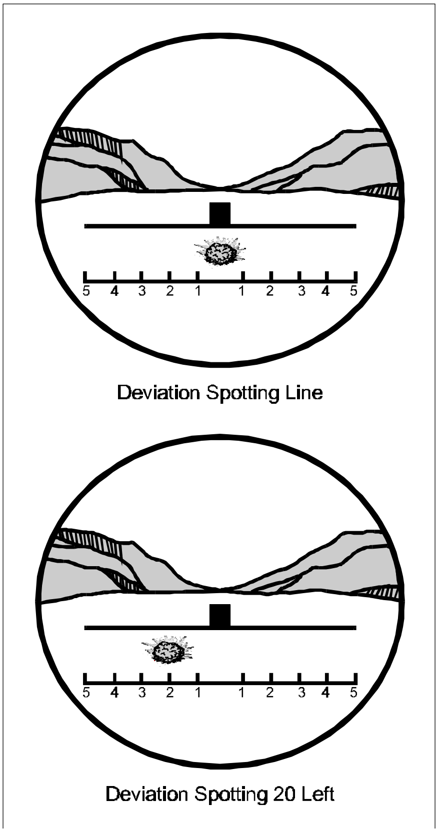


Figure 3-9. Examples of Computing Deviation Spottings.

1) Visibility Impairment. Visibility may be temporarily impaired in situations in which the observer has to take cover from incoming fire or smoke or dirt obstructs the target area visibility. The observer may also be unable to make an accurate spotting because he cannot determine which round among several is his round. In any of these situations, he announces “repeat” to indicate his desire for another round to be fired with the same data.

(2) Lost Rounds. If the observer is unable to locate the round (either visually or by sound), the spotting is *lost*. This spotting is announced followed by the appropriate corrective action. Rounds may be lost for several reasons, including fuze malfunctioning (dud), terrain or weather that prevents the observer from spotting the round, or errors by the firing unit. When a round is lost, positive action must be taken. In selecting the course of action, the observer should consider his own experience, the firing unit’s proficiency as demonstrated on previous missions, and the location of the friendly elements with respect to the target. Corrective actions by the observer may consist of one or more of the following:

- Begin with a data check of the target location data and the call for fire.

- Request that the firing unit check their data. In NGF, the spotter would announce “check solution.”

- Request “repeat.”

- Request shell WP, a 200-meter air burst with HE, or a smoke round (artillery only) for the next adjustment.

- Make a bold shift. Ensure that friendly troops are not endangered.

If the above corrective action fails, send “end of mission,” and transmit a new call for fire. See paragraph 3303. for procedures on end of mission.

3302. Corrections. After spotting the burst, the observer determines and transmits a correction (in meters) to move the next round to be fired onto the target or adjusting point. Corrections are sent in the reverse order of the spotting (deviation, range, and HOB). The observer simultaneously corrects for deviation, range, and HOB as required.

a. Sequence of Subsequent Corrections. After the initial burst appears, the observer transmits subsequent corrections until the mission is terminated. These corrections include appropriate changes in elements that were previously transmitted and the necessary corrections for deviation, range, and HOB. Table 3-1 provides a means for the observer to organize his transmission of multiple corrections in an orderly flow. Of the possible corrections in table 3-1 on page 3-49, the observer uses only those correction that are required.

b. Direction. Direction is the key element for adjustment of rounds. Direction precedes all other subsequent corrections when announced. In *NGF*, direction is sent as part of the call for fire. In *artillery/mortars*, if direction is not included in the call for fire, it can be sent immediately after the call for fire, while reading back the MTO, or with the first subsequent correction. Refinement of or changes to direction are made when the original direction changes by 100 mils/five degrees or more. Elements that may require correcting and the sequence of these corrections follow.

c. Deviation Corrections. Deviation corrections are determined in the following manner.

(1) Step One. Determine deviation spotting to the nearest five mils (one mil for precision fire).

(2) Step Two. Determine the OT factor. When the distance is greater than 1,000 meters, the OT distance is determined to the nearest 1,000 meters. The distance is then expressed in thousands (drop the last two digits) as the OT factor. If the OT distance is less than 1,000 meters, then the distance is determined to the nearest 100 meters and expressed in thousands.

(3) Step Three. Multiply the deviation spotting by the OT factor. Express to the nearest 10 meters. Deviation corrections are transmitted in multiples of 10 (meters understood), with the minimum correction being 30. The direction of the deviation correction is opposite that of the spotting. The computed deviation correction is announced as "left" or "right" (so much) (meters understood). Table 3-2 on page 3-50 provides examples of how deviation corrections are made.

Table 3-1. Sequence of Subsequent Corrections.

Artillery/Mortars	NGF
Direction	Direction
Danger close	Danger close

Trajectory	Trajectory
Method of fire	Shell
Distribution	Fuze
Shell	Deviation[1]
Fuze[1]	Range[1]
Volume of fire	HOB[1]
Deviation[1]	Number of guns
Range[1]	Number of salvos
HOB[1]	Method of control[1]
Target description	
Change in type of mission/control[1]	
Splash	
Repeat[1]	
Notes: [1] These commands constitute a command for the firing unit to deliver another round unless modified by the command "at my command."	

Example

OT distance = 2,400 meters; OT factor = 2

OT distance = 800 meters; OT factor = .8

Note

Large deviation corrections (e.g., right/left 400) may indicate an error in direction. This could be attributed to errors in initial target location, improper orientation of the OF fan, or malfunction of direction measuring equipment. When large corrections occur, the observer makes an appropriate check by verifying direction before continuing the mission. When necessary, he refines and transmits the new OT direction. Accuracy of adjustments depends, in part, on an accurate direction.

Table 3-2. Example of Computed Deviation Corrections.

Example	OT Distance (m)	OT Factor	Spotting	Deviation Correction
1	4,000	4	45 right	Left 180
2	2,500	2	100 left	Right 200
3	3,400	3	55 left	Right 160
4	1,500	2	20 right	Left 40
5	700	0.7	45 left	Right 30

d. Relationship of Observer-Target Line and Gun-Target Line and Dispersion. The relationship of the OTL to the GTL may influence the determination of deviation corrections. The natural dispersion along the GTL (more pronounced with NGF) limits the accuracy of some corrections. An observer whose OTL is perpendicular to the GTL makes deviation corrections that are actually range corrections for the weapons system. When this happens, the observer can overcorrect by spotting and correcting what is actually natural dispersion along the GTL.

(1) Artillery and Mortars. The angle formed by the intersection of the OTL and the GTL with the vertex of the angle at the target location is referred to as angle T. The observer is notified when angle T is significant enough to affect the adjustment of fire (500 mils or greater). When notified, the observer continues to make his deviation corrections as explained above. However, if he sees that the corrections are not taking their proper effect (e.g., a right 200 correction appears to shift right 300), the observer may consider adjusting his corrections proportionately to compensate for dispersion resulting from angle T, for example, cut the correction in half or thirds. (See figure 3-10 on page 3-52.)

(2) Naval Gunfire. The spotter must remain abreast of the OTL/GTL relationship because the characteristic flat trajectory of NGF results in a pronounced dispersion pattern along the GTL (range dispersion). The spotter must derive the OTL/GTL relationship from the prefiring report. He then visualizes the OTL/GTL relationship. The adjustment of NGF is discussed in detail in paragraph 3304.

e. Range Corrections. The observer must be aggressive in his conduct of the adjustment. He should strive to enter fire for effect as soon as possible. When conducting an adjustment onto a target, the observer makes range corrections along the OTL. Range corrections consist of the command “add” (move burst away from the observer) or “drop” (move burst closer to the observer). Range corrections are transmitted in multiples of 100 meters with the smallest correction being 100 meters. However, 50-meter corrections may be used when entering fire for effect. The methods for conducting range corrections are successive bracketing, hasty bracketing, one-round adjustment, and creeping fire.

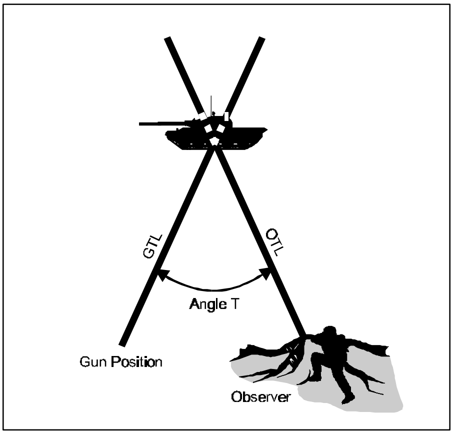


Figure 3-10. Angle T.

(1) Successive Bracketing. After a definite range spotting of over or short has been determined, the observer selects a range correction that is sufficiently large to ensure that the next round's impact is on the opposite side of the target from the previous round's impact. This essentially brackets the target between the two rounds. The observer selects a correction of add or drop 100, 200, 400, or 800 (meters understood) to achieve a bracket. Once a bracket has been established, corrections are made that successively split the bracket in half in multiples of 100-meter increments, always moving the next burst toward the target. The observer continues this process until a 100-meter bracket is established around the target or adjusting point. He then adds (or drops) 50 (with a deviation correction as required) and enters the fire-for-effect phase.

Note

On missions when PE_R is greater than 38 meters or on missions using shell dual-purpose improved conventional munitions (DPICM), M825, or family of scatterable mines (FASCAM), the fire-for-effect phase is entered after a 200-meter bracket has been established.

In NGF, once a 200-meter bracket is achieved, the spotter may enter fire for effect when engaging an area target such as a supply depot. If the observer fails to achieve a bracket on his initial correction, he retransmits another range correction until he achieves a bracket. Successive bracketing procedures are time consuming. This procedure should be used only when time is not critical and the situation requires this type of adjustment.

Example

The observer's spotting for the first round is "over, 75 mils left." Using an OT factor of two (OT distance = 2,400), the observer's first correction would be "right 150, drop 200." The next spotting is "short, 15 mils right." The observer transmits "left 30, add 100." The round impacts "short, five mils right." The observer transmits "add 50, fire for effect." (*No deviation corrections of less than 30 are made*.)

> **Note**
> Large range corrections (e.g., add/drop 800) may indicate an error in the initial OT factor calculated by the observer. By combining the initial distance to target with subsequent range corrections, a new OT factor can be refined. Determine a new OT factor with bold range corrections. Accuracy in adjustment depends on an accurate OT factor.

(2) Hasty Bracketing. Experience has shown that effectiveness on the target decreases as the number of rounds used in adjustment increases. This is due to a loss of surprise. An alternative to successive bracketing is hasty bracketing. In this technique, the observer uses an initial bracket as a yardstick to determine a correction necessary to move the next round(s) onto the target in fire for effect. Hasty bracketing can achieve effective results depending on the nature of the target, the terrain, the firing unit's proficiency, and the observer's experience. However, hasty bracketing is difficult to use when adjusting NGF because of its characteristic dispersion pattern.

(3) One-Round Adjustment. Unlike the two adjustment techniques discussed above, this method does not require the establishment of a bracket. The observer spots the location of the first round, calculates and transmits a correction that is necessary to move the next burst onto the target, and fires for effect. One-round adjustment requires an experienced observer who is familiar with the terrain. This technique can be used when insufficient time exists for adjustment, when the observer is equipped with a laser rangefinder, or when the continued adjustment of fire may endanger the observer. The laser polar technique uses a one-round adjustment because of the accuracy of its measurements. (See paragraph 9016.)

(4) Creeping Fire. The creeping fire method of adjustment is used when the observer desires to make range corrections by creeping the rounds closer to the target instead of bracketing or large corrections. This method of adjustment is always used in danger close missions. In danger close situations, the observer must keep in mind the position of the friendly troops to ensure that a correction will not cause rounds to endanger them. This may be applicable in situations where lost rounds are likely, for example, adjusting onto a target located on the topographic crest of a hill.

(a) In artillery and mortars, the observer makes corrections for creeping fire in 100-meter increments or less when moving rounds toward friendly forces. All mortars that will fire for effect are used in adjustment. For battalion missions, firing batteries should be adjusted individually.

(b) In NGF, the spotter moves each round in creeping fire toward the target in increments of 100 or 200 meters until effect is obtained. The combined effect of the correction should not exceed 200 meters toward friendly forces. If more than one gun is to fire for effect, the spotter should check the MPI of all guns to be used before entering fire for effect. Fires may be crept to within a minimum safety distance of the friendly position. Recommended minimum safety distances for adjusting salvos of a five-inch gun are 200 meters when firing parallel to front lines and 350 meters when not firing parallel to the front lines. The ship will normally advise the spotter when the predicted fall of shot approaches the minimum safety distances.

f. Height-of-Burst Corrections. HOB corrections are used to adjust the difference in altitude between the impact of rounds and the target. HOB corrections are also used to make corrections for air bursts. (See paragraphs 3305. (artillery) and 3306. (naval gunfire).) HOB corrections are needed when attacking a target on a steep slope or for a target presenting a vertical face. The observer uses up or down corrections (in meters) to move the impact of the round. These corrections will allow the observer to get rounds on target with fewer adjustments than would be needed when using other corrections, that is, add/drop or right/left. When using up/down corrections, the observer adjusts to the target; that is, he does not bracket. (See figure 3-11.)

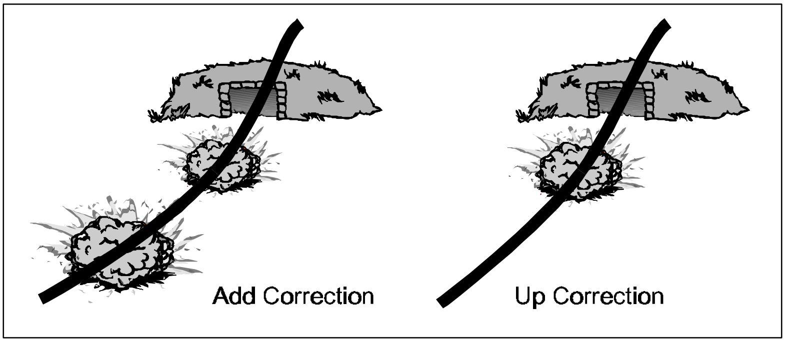


Figure 3-11. Examples of Corrections.

3303. Fire-for-Effect Phase

a. Conditions for Entering the Fire-for-Effect Phase. The fire-for-effect phase is entered when the deviation, range, and HOB (as applicable) are correct or if effective fire will result when the range bracket is split.

(1) Artillery and Mortars. The observer enters the fire-for-effect phase in the following situations:

- When an adjusting round has an effect on the target
- When splitting a 100-meter bracket
- When splitting a 200-meter bracket if notified by the FDC that the PE_R is 38 meters or larger or when firing shell DPICM, M825, or FASCAM.

(2) Naval Gunfire. The spotter enters fire for effect in the following situations:

- When an adjusting round has an effect on the target
- When splitting a 100-meter bracket for a point target
- When splitting a 200-meter bracket for an area target.

b. Procedures for Entering the Fire-for-Effect Phase. The fire-for-effect phase is entered in the following manner.

(1) Artillery and Mortars. The observer announces "fire for effect," preceded by any corrections.

Example "Fire for effect, over" or "right 30, add 50, fire for effect, over."

(2) Naval Gunfire. The spotter transmits a correction as required, the number of guns if different from that used in adjustment or stated in the call for fire, and the number of salvos then announces "fire for effect."

Example "Right 30, add 50, six salvos, fire for effect."

c. Procedures for Obtaining Additional Fire After Fire for Effect. The observer analyzes the results of the fire for effect. The situation may require additional rounds to be fired on the same location or a different location.

(1) Repeat. For *artillery and mortars,* if additional fire is needed, the observer announces "repeat." The term "repeat" indicates the observer's desire to use the same volume of fire.

(2) Adjust the Mean Point of Impact of the Fires. If the location of the fire needs to be moved to achieve satisfactory results, the observer announces the appropriate corrections (refinement) and "repeat" or reenters adjust fire.

Example
"Right 100, repeat, over."
"Add 400, adjust fire (spotter adjust for NGF), over."

For *NGF*, the spotter distributes the fire over an area target by announcing "spreading fires," followed by a correction or repeat.

Example
"Spreading fires, right 100, repeat, over."

d. Refinement. Refinement is given for all missions. Refinement is a term used in artillery to indicate a final correction to move the center of impact to the adjusting point. This correction may be less than 30 meters and is expressed to the nearest 10 meters.

Example
"Right 20, add 20."

e. End of Mission. On achieving the effects desired on the target, the observer should transmit an end of mission statement to the firing unit. Four items are needed in the end of mission statement: refinement, record as target, end of mission, and surveillance (RREMS).

(1) Refinement. In artillery, if fires have been inaccurate but have produced sufficient results, the observer transmits a correction or refinement to the FDC.

Example
"Right 20, add 20, end of mission, RPG silenced, over."

(2) Record as Target. If the observer wants the target to be plotted for future use, he announces "record as target."

(a) In *artillery and mortars*, the FDC applies the refinement, conducts a replot when necessary, and announces the adjusted grid to the target. The target number should be the same number provided in the MTO.

(b) In *NGF*, the target number is assigned by the spotter.

Example
"Record as target, target number AB 1250, over."

(3) End of Mission. "End of mission" followed by surveillance is the last transmission in the course of the fire mission. Once it has been announced, the mission is considered to be terminated.

(4) Surveillance. Surveillance should be brief but should provide casualty and/or damage information as accurately as possible. This requires the correct usage of the terms *destroyed*, *neutralized*, and *suppressed*, as addressed in appendix A.

Example
“End of mission, BMP neutralized, estimate six casualties, over.” “Right 20, add 20, record as target, end of mission, three trucks destroyed, estimate 15 casualties, over.”

3304. Naval Gunfire Adjustment Procedures. The flat trajectory and high muzzle velocity of NGF make the adjustment of NGF difficult, particularly on flat terrain. The spotter must use OF procedures (discussed previously in this chapter), such as accurate target location and bracketing. The spotter must also use the following procedures.

a. Identify the Gun-Target Line. When notified of the GTL in the prefiring report, the spotter must visualize its position in relation to the target and his own position. This will provide the basis for the spotter to identify round-to-round dispersion in adjustment.

b. Be Aware of the Dispersion Pattern of Naval Gunfire. The fall of shot of NGF can be described as a narrow, elongated pattern as seen along the GTL. The size of the pattern varies with range. For example, at 21,000 meters, the five-inch-gun mount will cause a round-to-round dispersion pattern that is approximately 150 meters long and 50 meters wide. Figure 3-12 on page 3-62 displays the NGF dispersion pattern.

c. Predict Each Fall of Shot Before Impact. While the ship is determining firing data for the next round, the spotter should visualize the fall of shot based on his corrections. The spotter compares the actual impact of the round with the predicted fall of shot. Differences that occur along the GTL may indicate round-to-round dispersion.

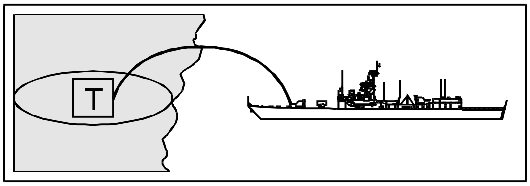


Figure 3-12. Naval Gunfire Dispersion Pattern.

d. Ignore Errors to the Fall of Shot Attributed to Round-to-Round Dispersion. When a round has impacted contrary to its predicted fall of shot due to dispersion, the spotter makes a correction from its predicted point of impact instead of its actual point of impact. This correction should result in the next fall of shot impacting as predicted. It also keeps the spotter from getting a ping-pong effect in adjustment. (See figure 3-13 on page 3-63.)

e. Correct From the Mean Point of Impact. The MPI is “the point whose coordinates are the arithmetic means of the coordinates of the separate points of impact/burst of a finite number of projectiles fired or released at the same aiming point under a given set of conditions.” (Joint Pub 1-02) When consecutive rounds impact differently from their predicted fall of shot, the spotter should make a correction from the average or MPI of the rounds. (See figure 3-14 on page 3-63.)

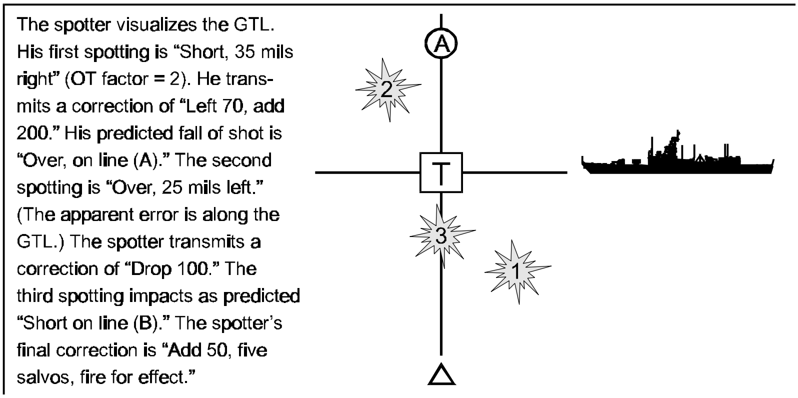


Figure 3-13. Example of Dispersion.

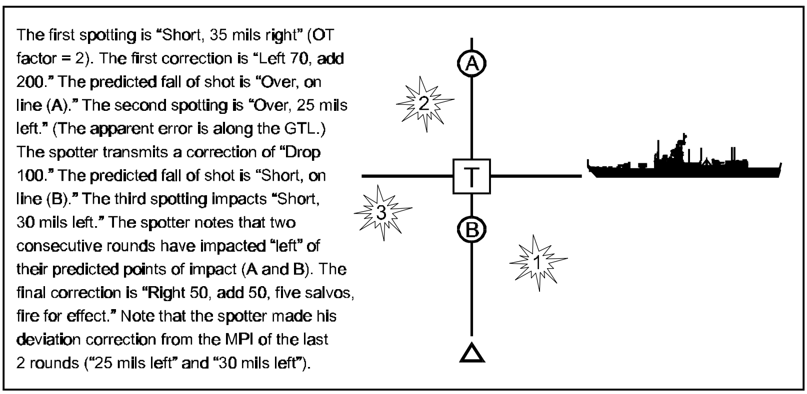


Figure 3-14. Adjustment of Mean Point of Impact.

f. Multiple Rounds in Adjustment. There may be times when the spotter needs to adjust with multiple rounds, to fire multiple salvos from a single gun, or to use multiple guns in adjustment. The multiple-rounds-in-adjustment technique requires the spotter to adjust from the MPI of all rounds fired. This technique is normally used when firing on a large-area target or when visualizing the GTL. This technique can also be used by spotters who are experiencing difficulties in range dispersion during adjustment.

g. Elevation/Height-of-Burst Adjustment of Impact Fires. On steep terrain, up or down corrections are essential in the adjustment of NGF. The spotter uses the corrections to bring the fall of shot to the same elevation as the target. Up and down corrections will be reflected on the ground with reference to the GTL. The spotter transmits up or down corrections in increments of five meters. The spotter can use the map to help determine these corrections. The spotter should avoid mixing add or drop with up or down corrections for impact fires because both of these corrections involve an elevation change on the gun and the results would be unpredictable. Deviation and range adjustments along the OTL will usually equate to elevation changes on the gun when transformed to GTL corrections. The spotter should use up or down corrections to bring the impacts to the same altitude as the target then switch to deviation and/or range corrections.

3305. Adjusting Artillery Air Bursts. Two types of fuzes that create an air burst with shell HE are mechanical time fuzes, called time, and proximity fuzes, called VT. When firing fuze time, the FO must adjust the HOB. The adjustment of air bursts is made by using HOB spottings to determine a correction. The firing battery fires one gun in adjustment. VT fuzes do not require adjustment.

a. Time Fuze Procedures

(1) Adjustment. HOB adjustment follows the adjustment of HE/Q. HE/Q is adjusted for deviation and range to within 50 meters of the target. The FO then initiates the firing of an air burst by announcing "time repeat" or "time . . . " followed by a deviation and/or range correction. When an air burst detonates, the HOB spotting (to the nearest mil) is multiplied by the OT factor to determine a correction in meters. The correction is made to cause the next air burst to detonate 20 meters above the target. The correction is transmitted as an up or down correction followed by the number of meters (understood to be meters). Deviation or range corrections are not made after entering the time phase.

(a) Graze Burst. If the initial round is a graze spotting, then an automatic correction of "up 40" is made. Subsequent "up 40" corrections are given until an air burst is achieved. Consecutive graze spottings may indicate an error by the battery, for example, improper fuze setting, or an error by the observer in target location altitude. The FO must avoid making deviation and range corrections from a graze burst unless he is unable to achieve effects on target.

(b) Corrections. When making HOB corrections, the FO must be aware of the gunnery solution and its effect on the round. (See figure 3-15 on page 3-66.) When a HOB correction is given by the FO, the FDC converts the HOB correction to a fuze setting correction for the mechanical time fuze. An up HOB correction will result in a decrease in the fuze setting; a down correction will result in an increase in the fuze setting. The change in fuze setting will change the point of detonation along the trajectory of the round. In addition to achieving a change in HOB, the FO will also see a change in range. An up correction will result in the round detonating short of the target; a down correction will result in the round detonating closer to the target.

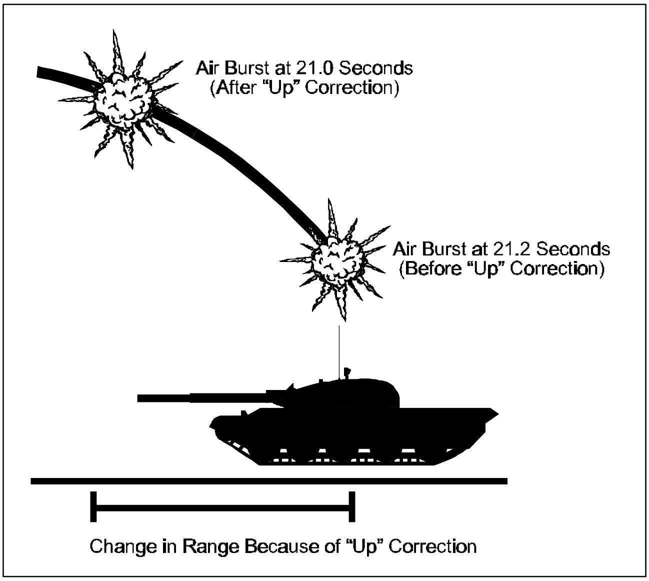


Figure 3-15. Effect of Height of Burst Corrections on Burst of Round.

(2) Fire for Effect. When an air burst is achieved, the fire-for-effect phase is entered if the FO believes that the HOB correction will result in a 20-meter HOB. Fire for effect is never begun if the last round observed was spotted as “graze” or if the HOB correction is greater than 40 meters.

Example
“Down 10, fire for effect, over.”

There are several possible spottings for the initial fire-for-effect volley, including air, mixed, mixed air, and mixed graze. (See paragraph 3301.) If additional fire, or sending refinements, is required to achieve effects, the following corrections can be made. For air, adjust the mean HOB to 20 meters. For mixed, the correction is “up 10.” For mixed air, the HOB is correct. For mixed graze, the correction is “up 20.”

(3) Fire-for-Effect Missions. Time fuzes are normally selected for adjust-fire missions because of the requirements to achieve an effective HOB. However, it is possible to initially fire for effect with time fuzes if a registration has been conducted with that fuze lot. The closer the target is to the registration point, the greater the likelihood of achieving effects without adjustment.

b. Proximity Time Fuze Procedures

(1) Adjustment. VT fuzes require no adjustment before firing for effect. The fire-for-effect phase is entered after the appropriate bracket is established with the adjusting shell and fuze. VT fuzes should always achieve an air burst.

(2) Fire for Effect. VT fuzes achieve their seven-meter HOB by using radar, not the time setting on the fuze. Graze bursts of an entire volley indicate either a computational error by the battery, for example, improper fuze setting; an error by the observer in target location altitude; or a malfunctioning lot of fuzes. In the case of graze bursts with VT, the *spotting* of graze is transmitted to the FDC.

Example
"Graze, repeat, over."

The FDC then subtracts one second from the fuze arming time in an attempt to overcome computational or observer error. Factors affecting the performance of VT fuzes and possibly creating premature air bursts include snow, water, and intervening crests.

3306. Adjusting Naval Gunfire Air Bursts. Time fires use special fuzes to achieve an air burst over the target. These fuzes include mechanical and electronic time fuzes that require a time setting before firing. Air bursts may also be delivered by proximity fuzes (VT and fuze controlled variable time (CVT)) designed to explode at an optimal HOB (20 meters for five-inch NGF) based on a radio-activated signal. Time fires using time or electronic time fuzes require adjustment to ensure detonation at an optimal HOB (20 meters) in fire for effect. Proximity fuzes do not require adjustment.

a. Adjustment of Time Fires. The observer announces "fuze time in effect" in the method-of-engagement element of his call for fire.

He conducts adjustment with fuze quick in the same manner as discussed previously in this chapter. He enters the time phase of the adjustment process in the following situations:

- When splitting a 200-meter bracket for an area target
- When splitting a 100-meter bracket for a point target
- When an adjusting round has an effect on the target.

The transmission to enter into the time phase of adjustment is “fuze time” followed by a correction (or repeat).

Examples
“Fuze time, right 30, add 50, over.”
“Fuze time, repeat, over.”

b. Height-of-Burst Corrections. If the initial time round is spotted as a graze, then the correction is “up 40.” A 40-meter HOB correction will be applied until a spotting of “air” is obtained. Consecutive graze spottings may indicate an error in the altitude of the target reported in the call for fire or an error by the mechanical fuze setter on the gun. The spotter must avoid making deviation and range corrections from a graze burst. Usually, a graze burst will be over the target on the GTL. Once an initial air spotting is achieved, the spotter measures the spotting to the nearest mil and computes a HOB correction by multiplying the spotting by the OT factor. The HOB correction is made to the nearest five meters to correct the HOB to 20 meters. If a correct HOB can reasonably be expected, the spotter enters fire for effect. If the air spotting is excessively high (60 meters or greater), then the spotter should observe another salvo before entering fire for effect. Excessively high bursts are normally short on the GTL and out of the target area because the fuze functioned prematurely in the projectile's trajectory. If a graze burst is obtained after an air burst, the correction is “up 20.” Fire for effect is never begun when the last burst observed results in a graze spotting.

Chapter 4

Requesting and Controlling Close Air Support

This chapter provides procedures for requesting and controlling both fixed- and rotary-wing CAS. Normally, the terminal control of CAS aircraft is conducted by FACs. However, in combat or emergency situations where a FAC is not available, other Marines who are knowledgeable of these procedures, particularly observers and spotters, may request CAS and function as the terminal controllers for CAS aircraft. An understanding of these procedures by observers and spotters also enhances the coordination of missions that integrate indirect fires and CAS. Because these procedures are applied by all Marines requesting or controlling CAS, including Marines who are not formally trained or designated as FACs, this chapter will refer to the CAS requester and controller generically as the *terminal controller*. The CAS procedures discussed here are oriented to high-threat conditions because these are the most difficult to understand and the most demanding that may be encountered in the battlespace. In lower threat situations, these procedures may be streamlined. More detailed discussion of CAS terminal control procedures can be found in MCWP 3-23.1.

4001. Types of Close Air Support. There are two types of CAS that are available to support the ground forces: preplanned and immediate. The type used depends on the time available for planning.

a. Preplanned. Preplanned CAS is an airstrike on a target that can be anticipated sufficiently in advance to permit detailed mission coordination and planning. These missions are categorized as scheduled or on call. A scheduled mission is executed at a specific time. An on-call mission involves aircraft placed in a ground/air alert status and preloaded with ordnance for a particular target or type of target.

b. Immediate. Immediate CAS is an airstrike on a target of opportunity that was not identified or requested sufficiently in advance to permit detailed mission coordination or planning. An immediate mission is the type with which the observer and the spotter will commonly be involved, and it requires impromptu coordination.

4002. Levels of Threat. The employment of CAS will likely be against an enemy who presents an air defense threat. This threat will affect the employment of CAS. The feasibility of using CAS on a specific target will be driven, in part, by the threat. Attack tactics selected by the aircraft pilot or flight leader will be influenced by the threat. Attack tactics are the specific tactics used in attacking a target. The greater the threat, the lower the altitude; the higher the dive angle, the more accurate the delivery. The threat to CAS may be high, medium, or low.

a. High Threat. A high threat is an environment created by a hostile force massing heavy combat power, including an Integrated Air Defense System (IADS) and electronic warfare capabilities that would seriously diminish the ability of the ACE to provide necessary air support. In this type of threat, aircraft tactics are normally characterized as fast and low. This results in a minimal time for target acquisition, which may affect accuracy.

b. Medium Threat. A medium threat is an environment in which the enemy possesses a limited radar/electro-optical acquisition air defense system that is not fully integrated. Specific aircraft performance and associated weapons systems permit tactics that allow acceptable exposure to those enemy defenses.

c. Low Threat. A low threat is an environment where no known integrated/sophisticated surface-to-air or air-to-air capability exists. The threat is limited to visual target acquisition and fire control systems, that is, small arms, large-caliber automatic weapons, and shoulder-fired infrared missiles. In this type of threat, aircraft tactics may be fast or slow, at low to medium altitude, with ample time to acquire the target.

4003. Airspace Control Measures. Airspace control measures are procedural control measures designed to maximize the effectiveness of combat operations by promoting the safe, efficient, and flexible use of airspace. Airspace control measures are used to delineate or modify hostile criteria, delegate target identification authority, or serve as aids for fire control. Airspace control measures speed handling and control of aircraft over the battlespace. Air control agencies such as the DASC or Navy TACC use these measures in directing aircraft to and from the target area. Terminal controllers and observers must understand the meaning of each of these measures.

a. Control Point. Control points route aircrews to their targets and provide a ready means of conducting fire support coordination. Control points must be easily identified from the air and support the MAGTF's scheme of maneuver. The MAGTF force fires coordination center (FFCC) and the ACE select control points based on MAGTF requirements. The MAGTF commander approves control points. Control points are given names or numbers and are often used to facilitate the establishment of airspace coordination areas (ACAs) for aircraft operating in areas where flight routes or tactics can conflict with indirect-fire trajectories.

b. Contact Point. A contact point is the position at which an aircrew makes radio contact with an air control agency. Normally, a contact point is outside the range of enemy surface-to-air weapons. The aircrew contacts the terminal controller at the contact point during ingress. A contact point allows coordination of final plans before heavily defended airspace is entered.

c. Initial Point. Aircrews use an initial point (IP) to start their run to the target or their approach to a landing zone. IPs are well defined and easily identified (visually or electronically). Terminal controllers and aircrews use IPs to help position fixed-wing CAS aircraft delivering ordnance.

d. Holding Area. Holding areas are areas well forward in the battlespace that provide for helicopter dispersion as well as cover and concealment from enemy observation and fires. Holding areas may be located at maneuver regimental or battalion headquarters or at the terminal controller's position. Rotary-wing CAS aircrews normally occupy holding areas while awaiting targets or missions. While in the holding area, rotary-wing CAS aircrews receive CAS briefings and perform final mission coordination with terminal controllers.

e. Battle Position. Battle positions are maneuvering areas that also contain various firing points, both laterally and in depth. Helicopters maneuver in battle positions while awaiting the TOT or time to target (TTT). They are coordinated and selected by the supported commander. Once the terminal controller clears rotary-wing CAS aircraft into a battle position, these aircraft should not exit until authorized. Aircrews have freedom of movement within the battle position unless restricted by the flight leader. To avoid enemy counterfire, aircraft may need to displace and resume the attack from a different battle position. Therefore, alternate battle positions should be established. Terminal controllers should consider requesting ACAs around battle positions. If an approved battle position does not exist, aircrews can plan a hasty battle position in coordination with the terminal controller. If there is not a properly placed or existing battle position, the terminal controller may create a new battle position. Terminal controllers identify the battle position by grid, known point, or prominent terrain or by shifting an existing battle position. The positions of new battle positions must be given to the appropriate FSCC for fire support coordination. Battle position selection is based on the following factors.

(1) Field of Fire. The battle position should permit the sighting of targets throughout the kill zone.

(2) Adequate Maneuver Area. The battle position must be large enough for rotary-wing CAS aircrews to maneuver between various firing points.

(3) Range. The battle position should be located so that the kill zone is within the effective range of rotary-wing CAS aircraft.

(4) Target Altitude. The battle position should be at an elevation equal to or higher than the target area.

(5) Background. Terrain features behind the battle position should prevent rotary-wing CAS aircraft from being silhouetted against the horizon.

(6) Sun/Moon. If possible, the sun or moon should be located behind or to the side of the aircraft. This allows the rotary-wing CAS aircrews to view the kill zone and prevents the enemy from seeing and targeting the aircraft.

(7) Shadow. If possible, terrain or vegetation should cover the battle position with shadows.

(8) Rotor Wash. The battle position location should reduce the effects of rotor wash on surrounding terrain, for example, debris, leaves, snow, sand, and dirt.

(9) Backblast. The battle position location should reduce the effects of backblast on surrounding terrain.

4004. Coordination Techniques

a. Run-In Heading. The run-in heading is the heading from the IP to the target. For rotary-wing CAS aircraft, this may be the heading from the center of the battle position to the target. The terminal controller determines this heading from his map and converts it to a magnetic heading for transmission in the brief. The assignment of run-in headings facilitates fire support coordination by establishing a corridor for the aircraft between the IP and the target. Without a run-in heading, the aircrews may exercise a number of options for proceeding from the IP to the target. The decision to use run-in headings depends on factors such as target orientation, terrain, disposition of defense, and weather.

b. Offset Direction. An offset direction is used to ease fire support coordination, safeguard friendly forces, aid target acquisition, or align aircraft for the attack or egress. The offset direction tells the aircrew on which side of the IP-to-target line they can maneuver for the attack. An offset direction aids fire support coordination by restricting aircrews from using airspace on the other side of the IP-to-target line. It keeps aircraft clear of enemy air defenses and reduces interference with GTLs. It also reduces an aircrew’s chance of being hit by friendly direct and indirect fires.

> **Note**
> During combat, the danger to aircraft from friendly direct/indirect fires is quite small compared to the threat from enemy air defenses. The offset direction regulates the attack quadrant without assigning a specific attack heading. This technique protects friendly ground forces from range errors in the delivery of ordnance without unduly restricting the attacking aircraft.

c. Attack Heading. An attack heading is the assigned magnetic compass heading that an aircrew flies during the ordnance-delivery phase of the attack. Terminal controllers assign attack headings for several reasons: to improve ground troop safety, to aid in target acquisition, and to ease fire support coordination. Attack headings, especially during visual attacks, may reduce the flexibility and survivability of aircraft.

d. Pullup Point. The pullup point is important in low-level attacks because it is the point at which the fixed-wing CAS aircraft begins to climb to identify the target and to gain altitude to strike the target. Pullup points are selected by the pilot and will vary depending on the type of aircraft, type of attack intended, and experience of the aircrew.

e. Attack Routes. Rotary-wing CAS aircrews use attack routes to move from the holding area to the battle position. Aircrews select primary and alternate attack routes. If an ACA is required, the aircrew or terminal controller coordinates with the appropriate FSCC. The ideal attack route is a corridor that allows aircrews to move into the battle position undetected. Detection, even if beyond the range of enemy air defense weapons, removes the advantage of surprise. Terrain and vegetation are used to conceal aircraft movement on the attack route. SEAD fires may also be employed to conceal aircraft movement and prevent detection.

f. Firing Points. A firing point is a specific point within a battle position that a single aircraft occupies while engaging targets. The flight leader determines movement of aircraft within the battle position. Aircrews choose their own firing points even though the supported commander coordinates and controls the location of the battle position. Alternate firing points should be identified so that aircrews can displace after the initial engagement.

4005. Aircraft Ordnance. A knowledge of aircraft ordnance is important for the proper employment of CAS. This information allows the terminal controller to know the effects that can be produced on the target and to make target marking and airspace coordination compatible with the type of delivery.

a. General-Purpose Bombs. General-purpose, MK-80-series bombs are among the most widely used weapons in the inventory. When fuzed for instantaneous detonation, they provide good fragmentation effects for use against personnel and light equipment. When fuzed for delayed detonation, they can be used to create obstacles (e.g., cratering rounds). Retarding devices, called snake-eye fins and ballute, can be attached to MK-82-series and MK-83-series bombs. With these devices, it is possible to deliver ordnance in a low-altitude delivery. (See table 4-1 on page 4-10.)

Table 4-1. Designations for General-Purpose Bombs.

Type	Size	Delivery Means
MK-82 aircraft	500 lb	All fixed-wing CAS aircraft
MK-83 aircraft	1,000 lb	All fixed-wing CAS aircraft
MK-84 aircraft	2,000 lb	All fixed-wing CAS aircraft (except AV-8B)

The fragmentation pattern varies with the size, configuration, and method of delivery of the bomb. An MK-82 with snake-eye fins (delivered by an F/A-18 at 2,500 feet above ground level with a release angle of 30 degrees) can produce a ground pattern with fragments dispersed up to 1,000 meters on either side of the point of impact. See appendix A for minimum safe distances.

b. Firebombs. The MK-77 is the primary firebomb. Firebombs have a very erratic trajectory and must be released at a very low altitude to achieve desired accuracy. A typical ground pattern for the MK-77 is elliptical in shape and is approximately 215 feet long in the direction of delivery and 75 feet wide. This ordnance can be delivered from all CAS aircraft.

c. Cluster Bomb Unit Weapons. The cluster bomb unit (CBU) weapon consists of one type of bomb casing filled with a large number of either antipersonnel, antimateriel, or antitank munitions. The CBU weapon is designed to provide a high kill or damage probability against area, moving, and point targets. CBU weapons can be employed from all CAS aircraft. The CBU weapon inventory includes the following.

(1) MK-20 Rockeye. This is an area weapon designed for antiarmor use. It can also be used against other targets, such as trucks, missile sites, radars, and fuel storage tanks.

(2) CBU-59/B Antipersonnel/Antimaterial Weapon. This weapon is highly effective against both personnel and lightly armored equipment under a wide variety of terrain conditions. The bomblets function as shaped-charge devices against light to medium armor and as fragmentation devices against soft targets. Antipersonnel/antimaterial (APAM) weapons are highly effective against parked trucks, armored personnel carriers, and so on.

(3) CBU-78/B Gator. Gator provides a means for rapidly planting a minefield. The mines are extremely effective against armored vehicles and personnel for area denial and harassment. The ability to select from three self-destruction times for the mines allows tactical counterattack by friendly forces.

d. Rockets. There are two types of air-to-surface rockets in the Marine Corps inventory—the 2.75-inch folding-fin aircraft rocket (FFAR) and the 5-inch Zuni rocket. These rockets, with the selection of warheads available, provide an effective attack against a variety of targets. Rockets can be employed from all CAS aircraft.

(1) 2.75-inch Folding-Fin Aircraft Rocket. These rockets are normally fired in ripple (rapid repeat); this increases the probability of hits. The warheads available are fragmentation, antiarmor shaped charge, smoke, flare, and flechette.

(2) 5-inch Zuni. These rockets can be fired singly or in ripple, with fragmentation, antiarmor shaped charge, or WP warheads.

e. Air-to-Surface Guided Missiles. Various air-to-surface missiles are available in the CAS inventory. Some of these are discussed below. Laser-guided missiles are discussed in chapter 9.

(1) Walleye Weapons System. Walleye is an air-to-surface glide bomb that uses automatic video tracking for homing and guidance to surface targets. This weapon is most effective against heavily structured, well-defined targets in daylight/clear weather conditions. Walleye can be employed from all fixed-wing CAS aircraft except the AV-8B.

(2) M-65 Airborne Tube Launched, Optically Tracked, Wire Command Link Guided Missile System. This weapon provides the capability to conduct a point target attack of armor at a maximum effective range of 3,750 meters. It is employed from attack helicopters.

(3) AGM-114B Helicopterborne Fire and Forget Missile. The helicopterborne fire and forget missile (HELLFIRE) is a laser-guided antiarmor missile. It provides pinpoint accuracy from a safe standoff distance. HELLFIRE can currently be employed only from the AH-1W, AH-64, and OH-58D.

(4) AGM-65 Maverick Missile. The Maverick missile is used against field fortifications and armored vehicles. There is a laser-guided variant (AGM-65E) and an imaging infrared-seeker variant (AGM-65F). The Maverick is employed from the F/A-18 and AV-8B.

f. Fuel Air Explosive Weapons. The HE force of the fuel air explosive weapon creates an overpressure that can be effective against mines, boobytraps, and personnel. The bombs are parachute retarded and have a degree of target discrimination that allows them to penetrate light foliage without detonation. This ordnance can be employed from all CAS aircraft.

g. Guns. Aircraft employ various guns, including the 20-mm, 25-mm, and 30-mm weapons. Aircraft guns are accurate and highly effective against a variety of linear targets, such as truck convoys, a column of troops, and so on. All CAS aircraft can employ guns.

h. Flares. All CAS aircraft can employ flares (MK-45/LUU-2), which provide illumination of the target area for up to three minutes (flare dependent).

4006. Close Air Support Request and Control Procedures. The terminal controller normally follows a sequence of events that will provide the essential information needed by those who must approve the mission, coordinate the mission, and fly the mission. The sequence of events is as follows: request, brief, time, mark, adjust, control, and report.

4007. Request. Requests for immediate CAS missions are made to support requirements that arise during battle and that cannot be identified far enough in advance to permit detailed mission coordination and planning. Immediate missions provide crisis response to unforeseen dilemmas and sacrifice detailed planning and tailored ordnance loads in return for timely response. Requests for immediate CAS are normally transmitted on the TAR net by the requester directly to the air control agency (normally the DASC). The air officers at intermediate-echelon FSCCs monitor the requests for coordination purposes and indicate approval in the method prescribed by the commander—either positive or passive clearance. The format used for immediate requests corresponds to the appropriate lines of the joint tactical airstrike request (JTAR). (See figure 4-1 on pages 4-16 and 4-17 and MCWP 3-23.1.) The request may be made in one transmission or in separate bursts, consistent with the communications security situation, and should include pertinent lines from the JTAR. Requests for preplanned CAS missions are submitted by using the same JTAR format but are submitted to the appropriate FSCC for consolidation, approval, and forwarding to higher echelon FSCCs.

a. Elements of the Immediate Request

(1) Identification of Unit Called/Requester. This element includes the call signs of the unit called and the requester, followed by the words “immediate CAS.” The transmission of “immediate CAS” prioritizes the mission for responsiveness.

(2) Mission Category. The mission category for an immediate CAS mission is indicated by announcing “immediate” and the mission priority. The following numerical designations are used to define the tactical situation.

(a) 1—Emergency. Targets that require immediate action and supersede all other categories of mission priority.

(b) 2—Priority. Targets that require immediate action and supersede routine targets.

(c) 3—Routine. Targets of opportunity that do not demand urgent execution.

(3) Target Description. The target is described by type, size, and mobility. This information is used in mission processing to determine the type and number of aircraft and type and amount of ordnance needed for the mission.

(4) Target Location. The target location is provided by using the UTM 100,000-meter-square designation and grid coordinates (e.g., SS623 456) and the elevation in feet (mean sea level). The ordnance delivery systems of F-14, F/A-18A, older model F/A-18C, and some U.S. Air Force aircraft require latitude/longitude rather than UTM grid. (See appendix F.) Although all pilots can manually convert UTM grid to latitude/longitude if necessary, it is generally easier for a trained terminal controller to make this conversion. Pilots who are distracted by threat conditions or other flight requirements may specifically request latitude/longitude if a UTM grid is given. (See figure 4-2 on page 4-18.)

JOINT TACTICAL AIR STRIKE REQUEST	See JCS Pub 12, Vol II, for instructions for preparation.

SECTION I - MISSION REQUEST			DATE	
1. UNIT CALLED	THIS IS	REQUEST NUMBER	SENT	
			TIME	BY
2. PREPLANNED: [A] PRECEDENCE ______ [B] PRIORITY ______ IMMEDIATE: [C] PRIORITY ______			RECEIVED	
			TIME	BY

3. TARGET IS/NUMBER OF

[A] PERS IN OPEN ______ [B] PERS DUG IN ______ [C] WPNS/MG/RR/AT ______ [D] MORTARS,ARTY ______

[E] AAA ADA ______ [F] RKTS MISSILE ______ [G] ARMOR ______ [H] VEHICLES ______

[I] BLDGS ______ [J] BRIDGES ______ [K] PILLBOX,BUNKER ______ [L] SUPPLIES,EQUIP ______

[M] CENTER (CP,COM) ______ [N] AREA ______ [O] ROUTE ______ [P] MOVING N E S W ______

[Q] REMARKS ______

4. TARGET LOCATION IS

[A] ______ (COORDINATES) [B] ______ (COORDINATES) [C] ______ (COORDINATES) [D] ______ (COORDINATES)

[E] TGT ELEV ______ [F] SHEET NO ______ [G] SERIES ______ [H] CHART NO ______

CHECKED

BY

5. TARGET TIME/DATE

[A] ASAP ______ [B] NLT ______ [C] AT ______ [D] TO ______

6. DESIRED ORD/RESULTS

[A] ORDNANCE ______

[B] DESTROY ______ [C] NEUTRALIZE ______ [D] HARASS/INTERDICT ______

7. FINAL CONTROL

[A] FAC/RABFAC ______ [B] CALL SIGN ______ [C] FREQ ______

[D] ASRT ______ [E] * FREQ ______ [F] FIX/CONT PT ______

8. REMARKS

1. IP ______
2. HDNG ______ ° MAG OFFSET: L/R
3. DISTANCE ______
4. TGT ELEVATION ______ FEET MSL
5. TGT DESCRIPTION ______
6. TGT LOCATION ______
7. MARK TYPE ______ CODE ______
8. FRIENDLIES ______
9. EGRESS ______
10. BCN-TGT ______ ° MAG BCN GRID ____/____
11. BCN-TGT ______ METERS TGT GRID ____/____
12. BCN ELEVATION ______ FEET MSL

	ACKNOWLEDGED
	BDE/REGT
	DIVISION
	OTHER

Figure 4-1. Joint Tactical Airstrike Request (Section I).

SECTION II - COORDINATION

9. NGF	10. ARTY	11. AIO/G-2/G-3

12. REQUEST ☐ APPROVED ☐ DISAPPROVED	13. BY	14. REASON FOR DISAPPROVAL

15. RESTRICTIVE FIRE/AIR PLAN [A] IS NOT [B] NUMBER	16. IS IN EFFECT [A] (FROM TIME) ________ [B] (TO TIME) ________

17. LOCATION [A] ________________ [B] ________________ (FROM COORDINATE) (TO COORDINATE)	18. WIDTH (METERS)	19. ALTITUDE/VERTEX [A] ____________ [B] ________ MAXIMUM VERTEX MINIMUM

SECTION III - MISSION DATA

20. MISSION NUMBER	21. CALL SIGN	22. NO. AND TYPE AIRCRAFT	23. ORDNANCE
24. EST/ACT TAKOFF	25. EST TOT	26. CONT PT/RDNVS (COORD NAVAID FIX)	27. INITIAL CONTACT
28. FAC/ASRT/TAC (A) CALL SIGN FREQ	29. RESTRICTIVE FIRE/AIR PLAN (SEE 15-19)	30. TGT DESCRIPTION	*31. TGT COORD/ELEV

32. BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT (BDA) REPORT

[A] TARGET COORD ____________________________

[B] TIME ON/OFF ______________________________

[C] % ORD ON TGT/ % TGT DESTROYED ____________

[D] RESULTS __________________________________

[E] UNIT SUPPORTED ___________________________

☐	ACKNOWLEDGED
☐	BDE/REGT
☐	DIVISION
☐	OTHER

*TRANSMIT AS APPROPRIATE

Figure 4-1. Joint Tactical Airstrike Request (Section II).

Transmission:

Terminal controller:	"Budworth, this is Tiger 14 with an immediate CAS request, over."
Terminal controller:	"Immediate, priority 2, five armored vehicles moving in column, SS623 546, elevation 55, ASAP, Tiger 14, Orange, Chevy, friendly troops 1,000 meters south, over."

Description of Transmission:

Unit called/request identification	Budworth, this is Tiger 14 with an immediate CAS request, over.
Mission category	Immediate, priority 2
Target description	Five armored vehicles moving in column
Target location	SS623 546, elevation 55
TOT	As soon as possible (ASAP)
Desired ordnance/results	(Not normally transmitted)
Final control	
Call sign	Tiger 14
Frequency	Orange
Contact point	Chevy
Remarks	Friendly troops 1,000 meters south, over.

Figure 4-2. Example of Immediate Request.

(5) Time on Target. The time at which the ordnance is desired on the target may be specified as "ASAP" (meaning that the target is to be attacked as soon as possible); as "TOT NLT _______" (meaning that the target is to be attacked no later than (NLT) the specified time on a synchronized clock); or as "TOT _______" (which provides a specified time on a synchronized clock when the target is to be attacked).

(6) Desired Ordnance/Results. This element is not normally transmitted in the immediate request because responsiveness overrides ordnance selection.

(7) Final Control. This element identifies the terminal controller who will conduct the attack briefing and control the release of ordnance. It includes the call sign of the terminal controller, the frequency recommended for terminal control, and the contact point or IP to be used. The frequency is normally transmitted by using a preestablished color code pertaining to a selected frequency. The frequency modulation (FM) may be ultrahigh frequency (UHF) or VHF, depending on the type of aircraft.

(8) Remarks. This element provides any additional information that may assist the air control agency in mission processing, for example, friendly location, weather, threats, and so on.

b. Processing and Routing of the Request

(1) Mission Clearance. The air officers at intermediate-echelon FSCCs monitor requests for immediate CAS missions for coordination purposes. Mission clearance is conducted in the method prescribed by the commander—either positive or passive clearance. Under positive clearance procedures, each request for immediate CAS must be specifically cleared by the FSCC of the unit in whose zone of action the fires will impact. The FSCC with which the DASC is collocated must advise the DASC that the mission is approved or disapproved before final mission processing is completed and control of CAS aircraft is passed to the terminal controller.

Under passive clearance procedures, FSCCs monitor the transmitted CAS request and either remain silent if the request is cleared (*silence is consent*) or interject if the request is not cleared or if more time is required to clear the request. In this case, the DASC processes the mission request unless the FSCC with which the DASC is collocated disapproves the request for immediate CAS. To avoid inadvertent clearance resulting from loss of communications, commanders may modify passive clearance procedures by stipulating that immediate CAS requests are not cleared unless the appropriate FSCCs acknowledge that the request was monitored. For purposes of confirmation or when doubt exists, the DASC will coordinate with the air officer in the FSCC with which the DASC is collocated. Requests for CAS beyond the fire support coordination line (FSCL) need not be cleared, but FSCCs must inform all other affected units (e.g., special operations forces and reconnaissance units) of these missions in sufficient time to allow necessary reaction to avoid friendly casualties. In exceptional circumstances, the inability to do so will not preclude the attack of targets beyond the FSCL by CAS aircraft; however, failure to coordinate these missions increases the risk of friendly casualties and could waste limited resources through duplicative attack. The MAGTF FSCC will establish procedures for exchanging this information with other components of a joint force.

(2) Mission Processing. The DASC begins processing immediate CAS requests on receipt. It completes mission processing upon receiving clearance from the FSCC with which it is collocated. Clearance may be either positive or passive as designated by the commander. After examining assets and priorities and coordinating with the TACC as required, the DASC identifies what aircraft are available for the mission. The aircraft assigned may come from multiple sources, including ground alert aircraft, airborne alert aircraft, or, if required, aircraft diverted from another mission. The aircrew(s) will be provided with the final control data. The DASC keeps the CAS requester informed of the status of the aircraft filling his request. The DASC will assign a request number for the mission. Figure 4-3 on page 4-22 gives an example of a transmission by the DASC informing the terminal controller of the mission status.

(3) Procedural Control. Procedural control of assigned aircraft will be provided by the DASC to a point at which control will be assumed by the terminal controller. The DASC determines aircraft routing in coordination with the senior ground combat element (GCE) FSCC on the basis of the tactical situation and the threat. Aircraft are normally routed by using preestablished control points throughout the area. The terminal controller will provide routing for the aircraft from the point at which initial contact is made with the aircraft.

(4) Initial Contact. Initial contact with the terminal controller will be initiated by the aircraft on the assigned frequency. An example of this initial contact is provided in figure 4-4 on page 4-23.

Transmission:

DASC: "Tiger 14, this is Budworth, mission 10-2, Check, two F/A-18s inbound with Rockeye ETA 15, contact on Orange."

Description of Transmission:

Identification	Tiger 14, this is Budworth
Request number	Mission 10-2
Call sign of flight[1]	Check
Number of aircraft	Two F/A-18s inbound
Type of ordnance	Rockeye
Estimated time of arrival (ETA) in minutes	ETA 15
Frequency of terminal control	Contact on Orange

Legend: [1]The aircraft flight is referred to collectively by call sign; individual aircraft in the flight are referred to as "lead" (flight leader) and "dash (number)" (remaining aircraft in flight), for example, "dash 2."

Figure 4-3. Example of Transmission of Immediate Mission Status to Terminal Controller by Direct Air Support Center.

4008. Brief. The brief provides the aircrew with essential information for execution of the mission. The terminal controller may transmit the brief in one transmission or in bursts of several lines, consistent with the communications security situation. The brief follows a numbered format sequence; therefore, reference to line numbers or elements is not required. The brief should be passed to the aircrew as early as communications can be established. As a last resort, the aircrew can receive the brief at the contact point/holding area. The terminal controller uses a CAS briefing form. (See figure 4-5 on page 4-24.) Remarks may follow the CAS briefing, as required. Information may be provided on the threat, hazards, weather, ordnance delivery, attack heading, airspace coordination, and so on.

Transmission:	
Flight leader:	"Tiger 14, this is Check 10-2, two F/A-18s inbound Chevy 12 Rockeye[1] each, 0 + 30."
Terminal controller:	"Roger, Check, proceed to Chevy, stand by for brief."
Flight leader:	"Ready to copy."
Description of Transmission:	
Identification	Tiger 14, this is Check
Mission number	10-2
Number of aircraft and type of ordnance	Two F/A-18s inbound Chevy 12 Rockeye each
Time on station	0 + 30

Legend: [1]The ordnance may be referred to by a preestablished code, for example, D-22.

Figure 4-4. Example of Initial Contact Between Aircraft and Terminal Controller.

Example

"Artillery firing in target area . . . remain above 1,000 feet inbound IP."

Transmission:

"Snake 045, left 12.3, 55, five armored vehicles moving north to south in column, SS623 456, WP, south 1,000, egress south to ford."

Description of Transmission:

IP or battle position	Snake
Heading and offset	045, left
Distance	12.3
Target elevation	55
Target description	Five armored vehicles moving north to south in column
Target location	SS623 456
Type of mark (if beacon or laser, include appropriate code)[1]	WP
Location of friendly forces[1]	South 1,000
Egress[1]	Egress south to ford

Legend: [1]These elements may be omitted in a limited communications environment.

Figure 4-5. Example of Close Air Support Briefing.

4009. Time. Immediately following the brief, the terminal controller gives the aircrew the desired time for ordnance to impact on the target. If both the terminal controller and aircrew are on a synchronized clock, this time should be expressed as a TOT. Using TOT eliminates the need for a hack and eases coordination of target marking and SEAD. TOT and synchronized clock are described in appendix D.

Example
Terminal controller: “Time on target 30.”
Flight leader: “Roger, 30.”

If a synchronized clock has not been established or is not maintained by either the terminal controller or flight leader, TTT may be used to coordinate the timing of the mission. TTT is the number of minutes and seconds to elapse before the ordnance impact on the target. The TTT is followed by the word “hack.” The TTT must allow sufficient time for the aircrew’s response and flight time. Generally, a TTT of six to eight minutes is used. The aircrew must determine whether they can comply with the desired TTT. The terminal controller passes the TTT to the aircraft as shown in the following example.

Example
Terminal controller: “Six plus zero, zero . . . hack.”

When the flight leader reads back the hack time, this indicates that he has a good copy of the brief, that the hack was accomplished, and that the hack allows sufficient time for the aircraft’s response. If the time is too short, he transmits “negative” and states a required TTT to allow aircraft positioning for ordnance delivery. The countdown continues from the original hack.

Example
“Negative, eight plus zero, zero.”

The terminal controller then reexamines the situation and determines whether the required TTT indicated by the pilot is acceptable. If it is acceptable, the terminal controller restates the TTT to the flight leader.

Example
"Eight plus zero, zero."

If the flight leader fails to copy all of the brief but can comply with the hack, he notifies the terminal controller and indicates the specific line(s) of the brief that he failed to copy. He also acknowledges the hack. The countdown continues from the hack.

Example
Flight leader: "Tiger 14, Check 10-2, say again line two, roger, six plus zero, zero."
Terminal controller: "045, left."

If the flight leader missed parts of the brief and missed the hack, then the transmissions are made as shown in the following example.

Example
Flight leader: "Tiger 14, Check 10-2, say again line two, negative hack."
Terminal controller: "045, left, six plus zero, zero . . . hack."
Flight leader: "Roger, six plus zero, zero."

At the end of the mission brief, the flight leader repeats the TOT/TTT to notify the terminal controller that the flight leader received and understood the entire mission brief.

4010. Mark, Adjustment, and Control of Initial Aircraft. A laser, infrared, or munitions mark may be required to assist aircraft in identifying the target. The preferred method of marking a target is by laser if the aircraft has a laser seeker or airborne passive laser spot tracker. A WP munitions mark, if required, will be timed to impact 20 to 30 seconds before the established TOT or TTT; an illumination mark (fuzed to burn on the ground) should impact 45 seconds before the TOT/TTT. If the attacking aircraft is in a low-level approach, it will start to climb at a pullup point to gain sufficient height from which to observe the mark and execute the attack. The pilot will establish the pullup point somewhere between the IP and the target. Positive clearance from the terminal controller for the aircraft to drop/fire is normally required before delivery of any ordnance. Before clearing the aircraft, the terminal controller should have both the aircraft and target in sight and ensure that the aircraft's wings are level and pointed in the correct direction. (See paragraph 4013.)

a. Laser Mark. A laser mark is the most effective means of improving accuracy of aircraft-delivered ordnance. The combination of a laser mark and laser-guided weapons (LGWs) provides the best results. If the aircraft is equipped with a laser spot tracker, the pilot can also employ a laser mark to visually locate the target and to conduct an accurate attack with unguided ordnance. In a preplanned mission, the laser-on time may be specified in the

JTAR, in which case the terminal controller turns the laser on and off as scheduled. The pilot will normally initiate laser on in immediate and on-call missions. This is done by transmitting a “10 seconds” warning call that the aircraft will need laser on in 10 seconds, and then “laser on” when ready to acquire the laser. Pilots may also use this technique to initiate laser on in preplanned missions. Normal laser designation time is 20 seconds, although pilots may request longer laser-on time by specifying a time after transmitting “laser on,” for example, “laser on, 30 seconds.” If communications are unreliable, the terminal controller should begin designating 30 seconds before TOT or TTT. When the terminal controller turns on the laser, he alerts the pilot and, if the aircraft’s wings are level and pointed in the right direction, clears the pilot to attack by saying “cleared hot.” The pilot confirms that he sees the designated laser spot by transmitting “spot” and acknowledges the clearance by repeating “cleared hot.” Minimizing laser-on time is important in a laser countermeasures environment and when employing battery-operated laser designators. The terminal controller will turn off the laser designator when the pilot transmits “terminate,” when the weapon hits the targets, or after 20 seconds of laser designating (or longer if specifically requested or if communications are unreliable).

Example

Flight leader: "10 seconds." (no response required)
Flight leader: "Laser on, 30 seconds." (Terminal controller may elect to turn the laser on 10 seconds after the 10-second call without hearing the laser-on call if communications problems are expected. Flight leader may request longer laser-on time.)
Terminal controller: "Laser on, 10-2, (aircraft is wings level, on heading, and pointed at the target), cleared hot."
Flight leader: "Spot, 10-2, roger, cleared hot."
Flight leader: "Terminate."

Offset designation procedures may also be used in a laser countermeasures environment and, if required, will be indicated by the terminal controller in the remarks section of the CAS briefing. At the laser-on call, the terminal controller will designate an offset position near the target to avoid alerting the target. The pilot will then transmit "shift" to direct the terminal controller to shift laser energy from the offset position onto the target itself. The "shift" transmission, when used, can replace the "spot" transmission. (Refer to chapter 9 and Joint Pub 3-09.1, *Joint Laser Designation Procedures,* for more information on laser operations.)

b. Infrared Mark. Infrared pointers and other infrared devices that can assist a terminal controller in marking a target at night are now becoming available. Although these infrared devices can be very effective in identifying targets to pilots who are wearing night vision devices, they cannot be used to guide or improve the accuracy of aircraft ordnance. These infrared devices should be used only in situations where the enemy is unlikely to also have night vision devices. Infrared marks should be initiated 20 to 30 seconds before the TOT/TTT or when requested by the pilot and should continue until the pilot transmits “terminate” or the weapon hits the target.

Example

Flight leader: “Sparkle on.” (Terminal controller may elect to turn infrared pointer on 30 seconds before the TOT/TTT without hearing the sparkle-on call if communications problems are expected.)

Terminal controller: “Sparkle on, 10-2, (aircraft is wings level, on heading, and pointed at the target), cleared hot.”

Flight leader: “Spot, 10-2, roger, cleared hot.”

Flight leader: “Terminate.”

c. Munitions Marking. Marking with artillery, NGF, or mortar fires is an effective means of assisting pilots in visually acquiring the target, but, unlike laser marks, these means do not improve the accuracy of aircraft ordnance. (See chapter 8 for artillery, NGF, and mortar procedures to provide a mark for CAS aircrews). Before choosing to mark by artillery, NGF, or mortars, observers should consider the following:

- The ability of these munitions by themselves to achieve the desired effects on the target
- The prudence of diverting these supporting arms from other missions
- The danger of additional exposure of these supporting arms to the enemy’s indirect-fire acquisition devices

- The additional coordination between supporting arms required for this mission.

If the decision is made to mark the target with another supporting arm, WP marking rounds will be timed to impact 20 to 30 seconds before the established TOT or TTT; illumination marks (fuzed to burn on the ground) should impact 45 seconds before the established TOT or TTT. When marking rounds appear, the terminal controller transmits an adjustment and, if the aircraft's wings are level and pointed in the right direction, clears the aircraft to attack. An adjustment orients the pilot's eyes in the vicinity of the target. Speed in adjustment is more important than accuracy because this gives the pilot more time to identify the target. The terminal controller makes the adjustment by using a cardinal direction and distance (in meters) from the marking round to the target. The terminal controller may need to specify the marking round to help the pilot differentiate it from other munitions exploding in the battlespace, for example, "from the mark WP, west 200." If there is a prominent ground reference available, the terminal controller can use it in the adjustment, for example, "from the mark, west 200 in ravine." The pilot acknowledges the adjustment by transmitting "tally mark" and the clearance by transmitting "cleared hot." (See figure 4-6 on page 4-32.)

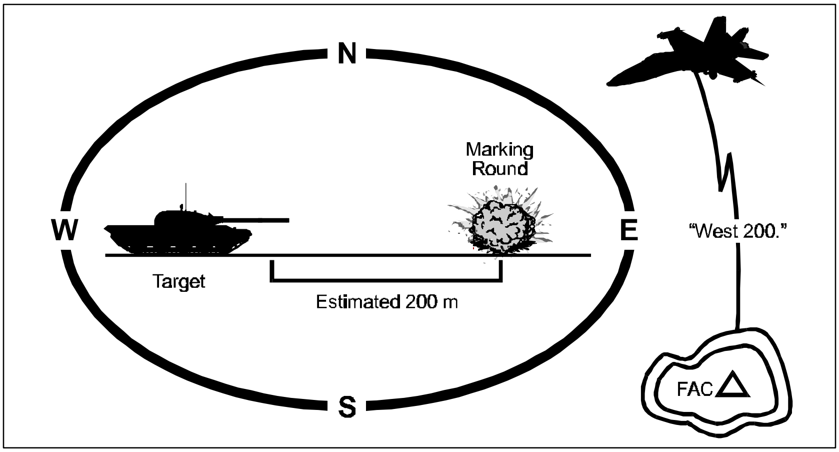


Figure 4-6. Adjustment From Marking Round.

Example

Terminal controller: "10-2, from the mark, west 200, (aircraft is wings level, on heading, and pointed at the target), cleared hot."
Flight leader: "Tally mark, roger, (aircraft is wings level, on heading, and pointed at the target), cleared hot."

The following applies should the pilot need help identifying the mark.

Terminal controller: "10-2, from the mark, illumination on deck, west 200, (aircraft is wings level, on heading, and pointed at the target), cleared hot."
Flight leader: "Tally mark, roger, (aircraft is wings level, on heading, and pointed at the target), cleared hot."

The following applies if a prominent ground reference is available.

Terminal controller: "10-2, from the mark, west 200 on north side of dirt road, (aircraft is wings level, on heading, and pointed at the target), cleared hot."
Flight leader: "Tally mark, roger, (aircraft is wings level, on heading, and

d. Abort Procedures. If it is necessary to discontinue an aircraft's run on a target, the terminal controller does so by transmitting "abort, abort, abort."

4011. Adjustment and Control of Subsequent Aircraft. When the flight consists of multiple aircraft, each aircraft may be individually adjusted onto the target. Subsequent aircraft normally trail preceding aircraft by approximately 30 seconds. This lapse allows protection of aircraft from fragmentation. The adjustment for subsequent aircraft is made from the preceding aircraft's hit or from the impact of the marking round (whichever is closer to the target) by using the same procedure (cardinal direction and distance). (See figure 4-7 on page 4-34.) The terminal controller provides clearance to attack in the same manner for subsequent aircraft as for the lead aircraft.

Example

Terminal controller: “From lead’s hit, east 200, cleared hot.”
Wingman: “Roger, cleared hot.”

The following example applies if the mark is closer than the lead’s hit.

Terminal controller: “From the mark, west 200, cleared hot.”
Wingman: “Tally mark, roger, cleared hot.”

4012. Reattacks. As a general rule, a goal of CAS is to complete a successful attack against all targets on the first pass. In a low or medium threat, reattacks may be a viable option. The reattack should ensure the desired effect on the target, allow visual orientation by the pilot, and increase responsiveness to the ground commander. If a reattack is conducted, the terminal controller will give the pilot a pulloff direction and may assign different attack headings. Additional marks or a narrative description of target location in relation to the last mark, last hit, landmarks, terrain features, or friendly positions may be given. The aircraft may also be returned to the IP for reattack.

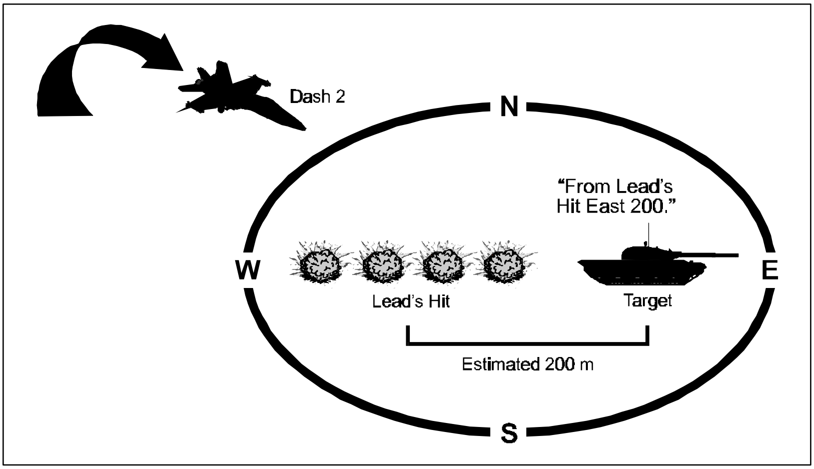


Figure 4-7. Adjustment for Dash 2.

4013. Reasonable Assurance. Aircrews must receive positive clearance ("cleared hot") from the terminal controller before releasing any ordnance. During peacetime training/exercises, personnel involved in CAS missions must follow range training regulations for release of ordnance. During combat operations, battlespace conditions (communications jamming, low-altitude flight, etc.) can prevent the terminal controller from being able to positively clear aircraft to deliver ordnance. In such cases, aircrews and supported units may have to rely on the concept of reasonable assurance to complete the mission. Reasonable assurance allows aircrews to deliver their ordnance without verbal clearance if they are *reasonably* sure that they are attacking the proper target. The MAGTF commander normally establishes the precise guidelines and procedures for the use of reasonable assurance and disseminates them throughout the MAGTF and supporting carrier wings. Examples of reasonable assurance guidelines and procedures include the following:

- The MAGTF commander declares that reasonable assurance is acceptable for CAS missions under night or limited-visibility conditions when the terminal controller's laser spot or munitions mark can be positively identified by the pilot.

- The MAGTF commander declares that reasonable assurance is acceptable for day visual attack when the pilot verbally acknowledges the CAS brief.

4014. The Report. Following completion of the attack, a report giving bomb damage assessment is provided by the terminal controller. The report may be transmitted to the pilot, if still within communications range, or to the DASC. (See figure 4-8 on page 4-36 for an example of a transmission of a report and a description of the transmission.)

Transmission:

"SS619 456, 0905, 0906, 75 over 80, four armored vehicles destroyed, one turning east, 10 killed in action (KIAs), mission successful, T6G."

Description of Transmission:

Target coordinates (location of target when attacked)	SS619 456

Time on/off target (time of aircraft attack/time aircraft completed mission and departed)	0905, 0906
Percent ordnance on target/percent target destroyed	75 over 80
Results	Four armored vehicles destroyed, one turning east, 10 KIAs, mission successful
Unit supported by the mission	T6G

Figure 4-8. Example of Report on Immediate Close Air Support Mission.

4015. Air-Delivered Ordnance in Vicinity of Friendly Troops. The accuracy of air-delivered ordnance is subject to many variables. Therefore, unlike for indirect-fire weapons, a danger close distance for the safe separation of air-delivered ordnance is difficult to establish. When air-delivered ordnance is to be delivered near friendly forces (danger close), a careful analysis must be made. The air control agency must consider the situation when selecting and assigning aircraft. Once assigned, the pilot must incorporate this situation into the selection of his attack tactics. Finally, the terminal controller must provide data/instructions to assist the pilot in ensuring safe separation. As with all CAS missions, the supported commander must approve its delivery. Factors that may be considered when delivering air-delivered ordnance in the vicinity of friendly troops include the following.

a. Type and Size of Ordnance. The accuracy of air-delivered ordnance varies with the type, size, and method of delivery of the ordnance; the type of aircraft; and the pilot's proficiency.

b. Aircraft Type/Weapons System/Attack Tactics. The accuracy of air-delivered ordnance varies with the type of aircraft and weapons systems being employed. Sophisticated weapons enhance delivery accuracy and reliability. Generally, high-angle delivery enhances accuracy.

c. Attack Heading. The most common inaccuracies in delivering ordnance occur in low dive angles, which result in errors in range along the attack heading of the aircraft. Therefore, in proximity to friendly forces, an attack heading that is parallel to friendly troops enhances safety and is much preferred.

d. Weather in the Target Area. Low ceiling restricts aircraft tactics and acquisition of the target.

e. Terrain in the Target Area. The position of the target on terrain features (e.g., in a draw or on a hill) will influence the aircraft's attack tactics and, therefore, accuracy.

f. Threat. The threat level and type of threat influence attack tactics. In a high threat environment, low-level, high-speed tactics may reduce accuracy. The characteristics of the threat weapons (e.g., range, method of acquisition, etc.) will influence tactics as well.

g. Availability and Visibility of Target/Marking. The availability of a mark and its acquisition by the pilot enhance the safe delivery of air-delivered ordnance.

h. Terminal Controller Proficiency. The availability of an experienced FAC and his ability to control the airstrike will enhance the safe delivery of ordnance. The ability to control depends on the terminal controller's ability to see the target, the mark, and the aircraft during its attack, as well as on communications.

i. Type and Degree of Friendly Cover

4016. Emergency Procedures for Requesting Close Air Support. In an emergency situation during combat, a need may exist for an untrained Marine to request and adjust CAS. After the requester identifies himself, he specifies where, when, and on what he desires CAS and whether he can control the delivery. (See figure 4-9 on page 4-39.)

Transmission:

"I have five armored vehicles moving in column on road. Coordinates SS623 456, elevation 55. Need support ASAP. I *cannot* control."

Description of Transmission:

What (target description)	I have five armored vehicles moving in column on road.
Where (target location)	Coordinates SS623 456, elevation 55.
When (time airstrike is required: ASAP, NLT, at specific time)	Need support ASAP.
Whether (statement of whether the requester can control, observe, mark, correct)	I *cannot* control.

Figure 4-9. Example of Emergency Transmission of a Request for Close Air Support.

(reverse blank)

Chapter 5

Artillery and Mortar Special Situations

Section I. Artillery and Mortar High-Angle Fire

High-angle fire is "fire delivered at angles of elevation greater than the elevation that corresponds to the maximum range of the gun and ammunition concerned; fire, the range of which decreases as the angle of elevation is increased." (Joint Pub 1-02) High-angle fire is employed for artillery when the weapons fire out of defilade, from within built-up areas, or over high terrain features near friendly troops. It is also employed against targets in defilade when the target is directly behind hill crests, in jungles, or in deep gullies or ravines and cannot be reached by low-angle fire. All U.S. artillery weapons are capable of high-angle fire. Mortars are used to conduct only high-angle fire.

5101. Procedures. The FO procedures for the adjustment of high-angle fire are the same as those for the adjustment of low-angle fire. The FO must realize that small deviation corrections during adjustment may be unnecessary and time consuming because of the increased dispersion experienced during high-angle fire. Because the TOF is long in both adjustment and fire for effect, the FDC announces "shot" when the round is fired and announces "splash" five seconds before the burst occurs. Fuze time is not used in high-angle fire. If an air burst is desired, fuze VT provides excellent results.

Section II. Artillery and Mortar Precision Fire

The use of precision fire places a great deal of responsibility on the observer. The FO must consider the time required, ammunition expenditure, and signature of the firing unit in relation to the effect to be gained from precision fire missions. There are two types of precision missions: registration and destruction. When conducting precision fire, an eight-digit grid should be used unless the FO is equipped with a laser rangefinder.

5201. Artillery Registration Missions. Registration is “the adjustment of fire to determine firing data corrections.” (Joint Pub 1-02) The FO is directed to conduct registrations when the firing unit has no other means to determine firing data corrections to improve its accuracy. The following types of registration will be discussed: precision registration of artillery using fuze quick and fuze time, second-lot registration, abbreviated registration, and precision registration for mortars.

a. Precision Registration. A precision registration is conducted with a single weapon. The FDO may instruct the FO to conduct a registration on a designated point or may have the FO select the registration point. The registration point should be accurately located, semipermanent, near the center of the zone, on fairly level terrain if possible, and on common survey with the firing unit. The registration may include an impact portion (adjustment of fuze quick) or an impact and time portion (adjustment of fuze quick and fuze time). The precision registration is initiated with an MTO.

Example
FDC: "H18 this is H44, register on known point 2, quick and time, over."
FO: (Read back by observer.)
FO: "Direction 6400, over." (Transmission given when ready to observe.)
FDC: (Read back by FDC.)
FDC: "Shot, over."
FO: "Shot, out."

The FDC may provide a general vicinity for the observer to select a registration point. In this case, the FO transmits the selected grid (eight-place grid) with altitude and the direction.

Example
"Grid 6124 3843, altitude 210, direction 6310, over."

(1) Impact Portion (Adjustment of Fuze Quick). The objective of the impact portion of a registration is to obtain *spottings* of two overs and two shorts along the OTL from rounds fired with the same data or from rounds fired with data 25 meters apart (50 meters when probable error in range is greater than or equal to 25 meters). These rounds are called usable rounds. This normally requires spottings from four separate rounds. However, a "target hit" or a round that is spotted as "range correct" counts as a spotting of both over and short. Therefore, the objective could be achieved with two consecutive target hits or range correct spottings. The following additional procedures apply.

(a) Deviation. The FO spots the rounds for deviation to the nearest mil and brings rounds onto the OTL before splitting a 200-meter bracket. Deviation corrections should not be made after a 200-meter bracket has been established. Once the FO brings the rounds onto the OTL, he measures and records deviation spottings but makes no correction. When a doubtful range spotting is obtained, the FO corrects for deviation only. If a deviation correction must be made after a 200-meter bracket has been established, the last round fired and all previous rounds cannot be considered usable rounds for determining range and deviation refinement data.

(b) Range. The FO spots the rounds for range (over, short, or range correct) and makes range corrections by using successive bracketing until a 50-meter range bracket is established (add or drop 50). Once this round impacts, the FO makes his spotting, makes a range correction to fire two rounds with data 25 meters in the direction opposite that of the spotting, and sends "two rounds, add or drop 25." If both rounds result in spottings of "short" (or "over"), the FO changes the volume to one round and sends "add 25" (or "drop 25"). Firing is continued until two definite range spottings have been obtained at the opposite end of the 25-meter bracket.

(c) Refinement. When the requirement of two overs and two shorts with the same data or data fired 25 meters apart has been met, the impact portion of the registration ends with necessary refinement data. Refinement data may include a deviation correction, a range correction, or both to the nearest 10 meters.

When determining refinement data for range, the location of the registration point is determined with respect to the two sets of spottings and then refinement data is determined and announced. If the registration point is nearer to the last round(s) fired, then *no range refinement* is necessary to move the impact toward the registration point. (See figure 5-1.)

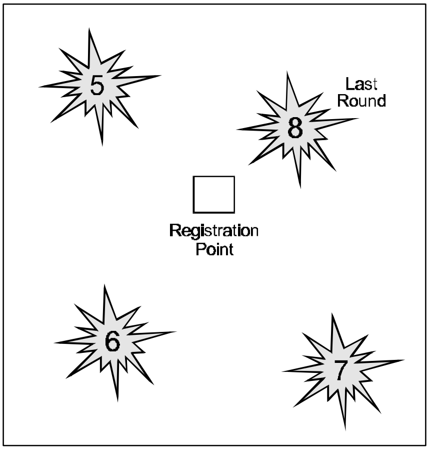


Figure 5-1. No Range Refinement Necessary.

If the registration point is equidistant between the two sets of rounds, then the observer determines the range refinement to be “add 10” or “drop 10” from the last data fired. (See figure 5-2 on page 5-6.)

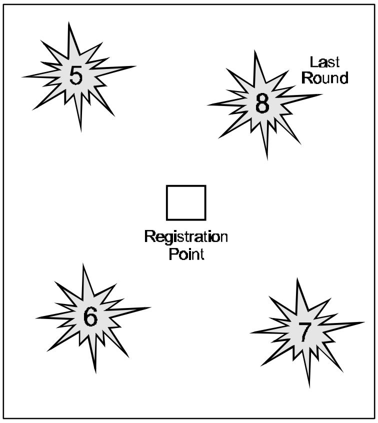


Figure 5-2. Drop 10.

If the registration point is nearer to the pair of rounds at the opposite end of the bracket, then the observer determines the range refinement to be "add 20" or "drop 20" from the last data fired. (See figure 5-3.)

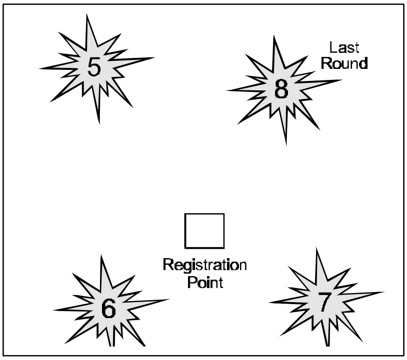
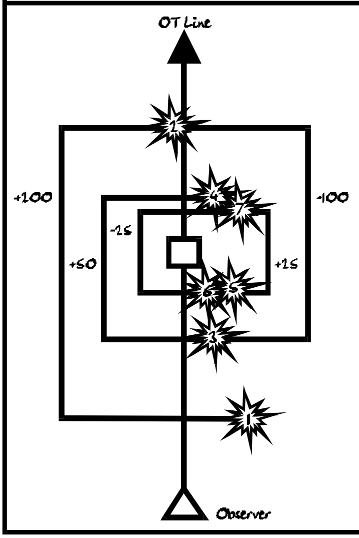


Figure 5-3. Drop 20.

The FO must keep track of the rounds and how they are spotted in relation to the registration point. This is easily done by drawing a registration diagram and numbering the rounds, as illustrated in figure 5-4.

SECTION II REGISTRATION

28. MESSAGE TO OBSERVER	29. OT DIRECTION	30. OT FACTOR	
REC ON KN PT2	1604	3	



CORRECTIONS e	SPOTTINGS f	ROUNDS g
31. INITIAL ROUND	-8R	1
32. +200	+2L	2
33. -100	-3R	3
34. +50	+6R	4
35. (2) -25	-8R	5
36.	-5R	6
37. (1) +25	+7R	7
38. L20-10 REC	AS REQ PT EOM	
39.		
40.		
41.		
42.		
43.		
44.		

REVERSE OF DA FORM 5429-R. JUN 85

Legend

EOM = End of Mission
KN PT = Known Point
REC = Record
REG = Register
REG PT = Registration Point

Figure 5-4. Example of Registration Diagram.

Deviation refinement is determined by adding the deviation spottings of the rounds establishing the two overs and two shorts. This may include two, three, or four deviation spottings. This total is then divided by the number of rounds to get an average deviation, which is expressed to the nearest mil. The average deviation multiplied by the OT factor equals the correction, which is expressed to the nearest 10 meters. Figure 5-5 provides an example of deviation corrections for impact registration.

The FO has determined four usable rounds with the following spottings:

Round	Spotting
4	Over, 6 right
5	Short, 8 right
6	Short, 5 right
7	Over, 7 right

The FO determines the sum of the deviation spottings to be 26 right (6 right + 8 right + 5 right + 7 right).

The average deviation of 6 right (26 right divided by 4 rounds = 6.5 (6 right)) is multiplied by the OT factor (3) to determine the deviation refinement of "left 20" (6 right x 3 = 18 meters right ("left 20")).

If the spottings include right and left spottings, the observer must algebraically compute the average deviation. For example, 7 right and 3 left equals 4 right.

If the calculated deviation refinement is less than 10 meters, it is omitted.

The registration point was *equidistant* between the two sets of rounds, as illustrated in figure 5-2. The observer determines the range refinement to be "drop 10."

The observer transmits the following correction: "Left 20, drop 10, record as registration point, (end of mission or time, repeat)."

Figure 5-5. Example of Deviation Corrections for Impact Registration.

If the MTO specified only an impact portion of the registration, then the FO terminates the impact registration by transmitting his refinement data followed by the announcement of "record as registration point, end of mission."

Example
"Left 20, drop 10, record as registration point, end of mission, over."

If the MTO specified an impact and time portion, then the FO terminates the impact portion and initiates the time portion by transmitting his refinement data followed by the announcement of "record as registration point, time, repeat."

Example
"Left 20, drop 10, record as registration point, time, repeat, over."

Note
Because the BCS/backup computer system (BUCS) uses only known points, the FO may be required to transmit "record as known point." In either case, the FDC will send an MTO assigning a target number to the registration point.

(2) Time Portion (Adjustment of Fuze Time). The objective of the time portion of the precision registration is to correct the mean HOB of four rounds fired with the same data to 20 meters above the registration point.

(a) Adjustment. If the first round is spotted as "graze," then a correction of "up 40" is given. If the first air burst is extremely high, the observer may send a "down" correction and repeat. Once a measurable air burst has been obtained, the command is "three rounds, repeat, over."

(b) Refinement. When four rounds have been fired with the same data, the registration is ended with the appropriate correction to achieve a 20-meter HOB. When four air bursts are spotted, the HOB is corrected to 20 meters. The mean HOB is determined by adding the four spottings (in mils), dividing by four, expressing the sum to the nearest mil, and then multiplying by the OT factor. This is the same technique used in determining deviation corrections. The sum is then expressed to the nearest five meters, and the appropriate correction is determined to achieve the desired 20-meter HOB.

Example
"Up 10, record as time registration point, end of mission, over."

For mixed spottings, the following automatic corrections are used:

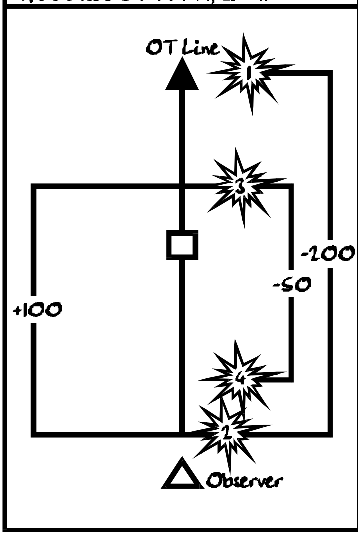
- Three air bursts and one graze—no correction required
- Two air bursts and two grazes—up 10
- One air burst and three grazes—up 20.

Check rounds may be fired to verify the validity of the time registration; however, they are not necessary.

b. Second-Lot Registration. The FDC may direct the FO to conduct a "two-lot" registration. Second-lot registrations are conducted in a manner similar to that for first-lot (single) registrations. After the first-lot impact registration has been completed, a precision registration for fuze time is conducted, if required. The FDC will announce to the FO "observe second-lot registration" after the FO has recorded the registration of the first lot. The FO must then establish the appropriate range bracket and complete the second-lot registration. The time portion of the registration is not fired with the second lot.

c. Abbreviated Registration. At times, the tactical situation or ammunition constraints may prohibit conducting a full-scale precision registration. Although not as accurate, an abbreviated precision registration can compensate for the effects of nonstandard conditions. (Abbreviated registrations are more accurate and therefore more feasible if the FO is equipped with a laser rangefinder). The FDO makes the decision to conduct an abbreviated registration. For this type of registration, the FO merely shortens the standard procedures of a precision registration.

(1) Impact Portion (Adjustment of Fuze Quick). Normal adjust-fire procedures are followed until a 100-meter bracket is split. The correction sent is "add (or drop) 50." The burst that is a result of an "add (or drop) 50" is spotted. Minor corrections for both deviation and range to the nearest 10 meters are sent to the FDC, along with the announcement of "record as registration point, (time repeat)," as shown in figure 5-6.



SECTION II REGISTRATION

28. MESSAGE TO OBSERVER	29. OT DIRECTION	30. OT FACTOR
ABBB REC ON KN PT 1, Q + TI	0220	2

CORRECTIONS e	SPOTTINGS f	ROUNDS g
31. INITIAL ROUND	+3R	1
32. -200	-2L	2
33. +100	+3R	3
34. -50	-3R	4
35. L + 0, +40 REC AS		
36. REQ PT, TI RPT		
37.	Q	5
38. UP 40	A3	6
39. UP 10, REC	AS TI REQ	
40. PT, EOM		
41.		
42.		
43.		
44.		

REVERSE OF DA FORM 5429-R, JUN 85

Figure 5-6. Example of Abbreviated Registration.

(2) Time Portion (Adjustment of Fuze Time). Normal adjust-fire time-adjustment procedures are followed in the time portion. An air burst is obtained and then corrected to a 20-meter HOB. Instead of firing for effect, refinement is sent to the FDC, the time registration point is recorded, and the mission is ended.

5202. Precision Registration for Mortars

a. Procedures. Precision registration for mortars is conducted for impact fires only. The procedures are almost identical to the precision registration of fuze quick (impact) procedures for artillery. The exception are as follows:

- Only spottings of one round over and one round short are required.
- Once a 100-meter range bracket has been split and the last fired round is within 50 meters of the target, refinement corrections are sent to the FDC and the mission is ended.
- Range refinements are made to the nearest 25 meters.

The transmissions to the FDC after the last two rounds are similar to those used for artillery.

b. Sheaf Adjustment. The mortar sheaf must be adjusted to make all of the mortars fire parallel. The sheaf may be adjusted at any time during a fire mission but may be directed by the FDC after a registration. The FDC will announce "prepare to adjust sheaf, over." The mortars will be positioned and numbered in sequence from right to left as seen from behind the tubes. For 81-mm mortars, numbers may be one through eight when positioned as a platoon and one through four for a two-section position.

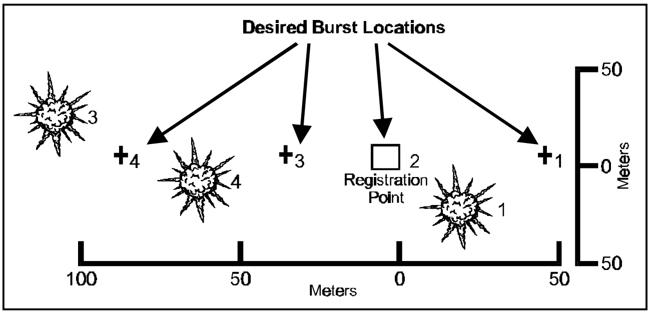
> **Note**
> In the 81-mm mortar platoon, the term "mortar section" refers to four tubes (squads).

To adjust the sheaf, the observer requests "section right (or left), repeat, over." Each squad will then fire, in order, from left to right (or right to left) with 10-second intervals between rounds. The mortar that was used to register will not fire.

Example

If the observer requests "section right, repeat, over" and number 2 conducted the registration, then numbers 1, 3, and 4 would fire.

In adjusting the sheaf, all rounds must be adjusted on line at approximately the same range (within 50 meters) and with 40 meters of lateral spread between rounds. Range corrections for rounds impacting within 50 meters of the sheaf line are ignored. The sheaf is adjusted perpendicular to the GTL. If angle T is greater than 500 mils, then each piece is adjusted onto the registration point and the FDC computes data for the sheaf. Lateral refinement corrections are made to the nearest 10 meters, but corrections of less than 50 meters are not fired. Once refinement corrections for all mortars have been determined, the sheaf has been adjusted. For example, the sheaf of an 81-mm mortar platoon is being adjusted where the platoon is employed in two 2-section positions. Tube 2 conducted the registration. The observer has requested "section right, repeat, over." (See figure 5-7 on page 5-15.)



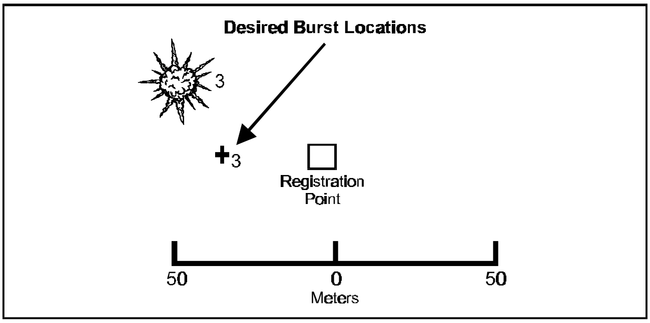


Figure 5-7. Example of the Adjustment of a Mortar Sheaf.

In this example, all rounds are within 50 meters of the correct range. Only number 3 is more than 50 meters out on lateral adjustment, so the adjustment for tube 3 is sent first. Then refinement data for tubes 1 and 4 is sent as follows: "Number 3, right 60, repeat; number 1, right 30, number 1 is adjusted; number 4, left 20, number 4 is adjusted, over."

Number 3 is now fired, and the round impacts 10 meters right of the desired burst location. The observer transmits "number 3, left

10, number 3 is adjusted, sheaf is adjusted, end of mission, over." Figure 5-8 shows the adjusted sheaf.

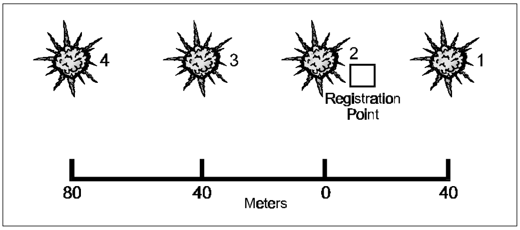
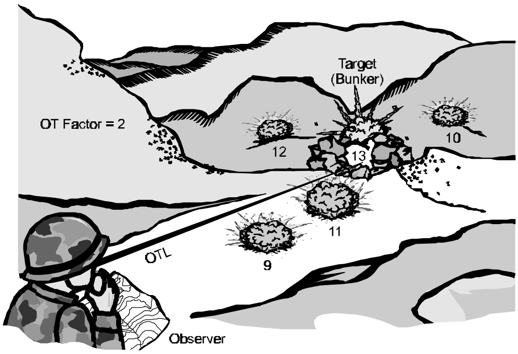


Figure 5-8. Adjusted Mortar Sheaf.

5203. Destruction Missions. Destruction is "a type of adjustment for destroying a given target." (Joint Pub 1-02) The destruction mission is fired by using one weapon to destroy a point target. The destruction mission is similar to a registration in that the FO continues adjustments to establish a 25-meter bracket by adding or dropping 10 meters. He then continues to fire additional rounds, making corrections to the nearest 10 meters after every third round until the target is destroyed or the mission is ended. After every third round, an additional refinement is made, and firing is continued until the target is destroyed or the mission is ended. Corrections may be made after every round if desired. Because of the amount of time and ammunition required, destruction missions should be used only when required by the tactical situation. Only a target that is critical to an operation should be engaged in this manner, and only if no other means exists to destroy the target, for example, Copperheads. An example of a destruction mission is shown in figure 5-9 on page 5-17.



FO Tra[illegible] "H44 this is H18, adjust fire, over."
FDC Transmission: (FDC reads back.)
FO Transmission: "Grid 4324 9684, altitude 100, over."
FDC Transmission: (FDC reads back.)
FO Transmission: "Enemy machine gun bunker, destruction, over."
FDC Transmission: (FDC reads back.)

Round	Spotting	Correction
1	-30 left	Right 60, add 800
2	+15 right	Left 30, drop 400
3	-5 right	Add 200
4	+4 right	Drop 100
5	-4 right	Add 50
6	+5 right	Drop 25
7	-4 right	Add 10[1]
8	+5 right	Repeat
9	-4 right	Repeat
10	Range correct	Left 10[2]
11	Target	Repeat
		End of mission,[3] bunker destroyed

Notes

[1] Target was midway between the four spotting rounds.
[2] Preponderance was: 4 right + 5 right + 4 right = 13 right ÷ 3 = 4.3 right ≈ 4 right x 2 (OT factor) = 8 right ≈ 10 right. Correction is left 10.
[3] Mission ended because target was destroyed.

Figure 5-9. Example of Destruction Mission.

Section III. Artillery High-Burst or Mean Point of Impact Registrations

The opportunities for a precision registration are limited because it requires visual observation on a clearly defined, accurately located registration point in the target area. At night, visual adjustment of fire on a registration point is impossible without some type of illumination or night observation device. In desert, jungle, or arctic operations, clearly defined registration points in the target area are not usually available. Special procedures, including observation techniques, have been developed to provide for registration under these conditions. Two such procedures are the high-burst (HB) and MPI registrations.

5301. General. An HB and an MPI registration are identical, except that the rounds for an HB registration are air bursts and the rounds for the MPI registration are impact rounds. Two FOs (referred to as 01 and 02) are required to conduct these registrations. Each FO must occupy a surveyed OP and have a means to accurately conduct angular measurement, such as a BC scope, aiming circle, or MULE. Directional control, or a line of known direction, must be established on the ground so that the FO can orient his instrument for direction. For night observation, this may require the orientation of instruments during daylight. The exact location of the instrument and the line of known direction should be marked so that they can be identified during darkness. Additionally, for HB registration, one FO must be prepared to measure vertical angles.

5302. Procedures for High-Burst Registration

a. Initial Orientation of the Observing Instruments. To prepare the instruments for orientation, the exact location of the instrument and lines of known direction must be known. The instrument (BC scope or aiming circle) is then placed over the position marker and leveled. To orient the instrument, an azimuth of known direction is placed on the azimuth scales using the *upper recording motion*. Then, using the *lower nonrecording motion*, the vertical cross line in the reticle is aligned on the marker or point that identifies the known direction. The instrument is then considered to be properly oriented for direction. If more than one known direction is available, this can be used to check the orientation of the instrument by using the upper motion. Once the instrument is oriented, the lower motion should not be touched. All angular measurements are taken by using the upper motion.

b. Observing the High-Burst/Mean Point of Impact Registration. For the HB registration, the two FOs simultaneously observe time fire aimed at a point in the air above the target area. The FDC selects the point at which the fire is to be aimed by selecting a point on the ground in the area in which the registration is desired and projecting this point into the air with a prescribed HOB. This is the orienting point. The FDC controls the firing of the HB registration. One weapon is used to fire the registration. All rounds are fired with the same data. Each FO reports the direction from his position to the bursts. One of the FOs will be directed to report the vertical angle after each round. For the MPI, the registration is the same, except the rounds are fired with fuze quick.

c. Orientation of the Observing Instruments on the Orienting Point. The FDC orients the FOs by sending an MTO that tells each FO the direction and vertical angle from his position to the selected orienting point.

Example
"Message to observer, observe HB registration, 01 direction 1164, vertical angle plus 12. Measure the vertical angle, 02 direction 0718, vertical angle minus 3. Report when ready to observe."

Each FO sets the direction given to him on the azimuth scales of his instrument, using the upper motion. In the case of a MULE, the designator is rotated to the correct direction. The horizontal line of sight of the instrument now coincides with the horizontal line of sight from the FO's position to the orienting point. Each FO sets the vertical angle given to him on the elevation scales to orient the instrument for HOB. The manner in which the FO sets the vertical angle on the scales depends on the type of observing instrument being used.

(1) Aiming Circle. The elevation scales on the M2 aiming circle are ideally graduated so that a zero reading on the scales corresponds to a vertical angle of zero. However, a correction factor using the tubular leveling vial must be determined and applied. Refer to MCWP 3-16.3/FM 6-50. The scales are graduated and numbered in each direction from zero. In one direction, the graduations are printed in black; those in the opposite direction are red. Positive (plus) vertical angles are indicated by the black numbers, and negative (minus) vertical angles are indicated by the red numbers. The elevation scales on the aiming circle are operated with the elevation micrometer knob. The elevation micrometer knob is used to level the tubular leveling vial. The corresponding elevation is the correction factor and is applied to all readings.

Example
Orient to vertical angle +12 with a correction factor of -3; set off vertical angle +15 (12 - (-3)).
Orient to vertical angle +12 with a correction factor of +3; set off vertical angle +9 (12 - (+3)).

If the vertical angle given to the FO is a positive angle, the FO sets its value on the elevation scales in the direction represented by the black numbers. If the vertical angle is a negative value, he uses the red numbers. This action places the center of the cross lines in the reticle of the instrument in line with the point in the air selected as the orienting point.

(2) Battery Commander Scope. If the FO is using a BC scope, he orients the instrument for HOB by applying the vertical angle to the angle-of-site scales. These scales are graduated so that a vertical angle of zero corresponds to a reading of 300 on the angle-of-site scales. If the vertical angle is positive, its value is added to 300 and the resulting number is set on the angle-of-site scales. If the vertical angle is negative, its value is subtracted from 300 and the remainder is placed on the angle-of-site scales.

Example
The vertical angle is +12; the reading set on the angle-of-site scales is 312 (300 + 12).
The vertical angle is - 3; the reading set on the angle-of-site scales is 297 (300 - 3).

After setting the reading on the angle-of-site scales, the FO levels the angle-of-site mechanism by using the elevation knob to center the bubble in the level vial. This action places the center of the cross lines in the reticle of the instrument in line with the point in the air at which the rounds will be fired.

d. Measuring and Reporting the First Round. When the FOs report "ready to observe," the FDC directs the firing of the rounds one at a time. The FDC reports "shot" and "splash" for each round. When the burst of the first round appears, each FO determines the direction to the round by spotting the horizontal deviation from the vertical cross line and then combines this value with the reading on the azimuth scales. If the deviation is to the right of the vertical cross line, he adds the value to the reading on the azimuth scales. If the deviation is to the left of the vertical cross line, the FO subtracts the value from the reading on the instrument (RALS). The FOs report their observations in turn.

Example
"01 direction ____, vertical angle ____, over."
"02 direction ____, over."

e. Determining the Vertical Angle. The vertical angle to the burst is determined in one of two ways.

(1) Aiming Circle. If using an aiming circle, the FO spots the number of mils that the burst appears above or below the horizontal cross line in the reticle of the instrument and combines this reading with the reading on the elevation scales.

Example
The burst appears 10 mils above the horizontal cross line, and the reading on the elevation scales is +20. The vertical angle to the burst is +30 (20 + 10). With a correction factor of +3, the vertical angle is +27 (30 - (+3)). The burst appears 10 mils below the horizontal cross line in the reticle of the instrument, and the reading on the elevation scales is +6. The vertical angle to the burst is -4 (6 + (-10)). With a correction factor of -3, the vertical angle is -1 (-4 - (-3)).

(2) Battery Commander Scope. If using a BC scope, the FO reads the number of mils that the burst appears above or below the horizontal cross line in the reticle of the instrument and combines this reading with the reading on the angle-of-site scales. The value of the vertical angle is the difference between this combined reading and 300. If the combined reading is greater than 300, the value of the vertical angle is positive. If the combined reading is less than 300, the value of the vertical angle is negative.

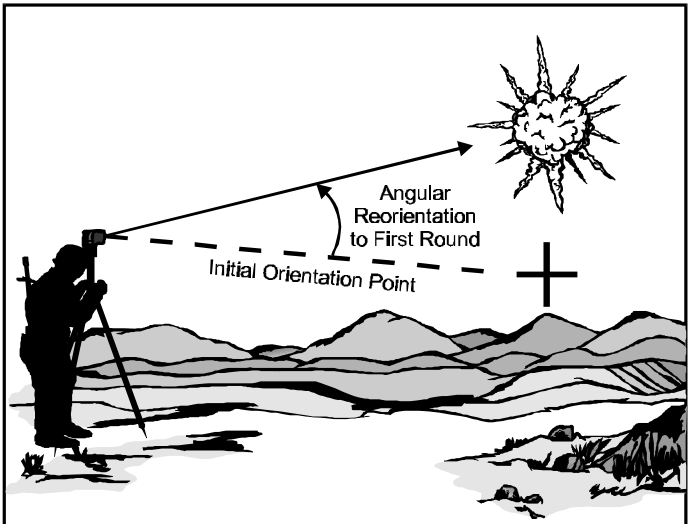
Example
The burst appears 20 mils above the horizontal cross line, and the reading on the angle-of-site scales is 305. The vertical angle is +25 (305 + 20 = 325; 325 - 300 = +25).

f. Unobserved Spottings. If the FO does not observe the initial round within the field of view of his instrument, he should report this and the location of the burst to the FDC.

Example
"02 round unobserved, too far left, over."

g. Reorienting on the First Round. Once the FO has reoriented his instrument on the direction and vertical angle where the initial round burst, he will report the direction (and vertical angle if applicable) of the first round to the FDC. (See figure 5-10 on page 5-25.) This will allow for smaller deviation measurements for subsequent rounds.

h. Measuring and Reporting Subsequent Rounds. The procedures for measuring and reporting direction and vertical angle for subsequent rounds are the same as those for the first round. However, the FO typically does *not* reorient his instrument after subsequent rounds. Depending on the proficiency of the observer, he may reorient on each subsequent round. This is most beneficial when the registration point is not affected by strong winds and the observer is equipped with an aiming circle. When the FDC has obtained enough readings to compute the registration data, it terminates the registration by sending “end of mission” to 01.



The initial orientation for the FO was “Direction 0430, vertical angle +15.” After the burst of 40 mils left of the vertical cross line, the FO determines a direction of 0390. The burst appeared five mils below the horizontal cross line, with a setting on the elevation scales of +15; therefore, the FO obtains a vertical angle of +10. After reporting the instrument readings for the first round, the FO reorients his instrument on a direction of 0390 and a vertical angle of +10.

Figure 5-10. Reorientation After the First Round.

5303. Procedures for Mean Point of Impact Registration. In an MPI registration, the FDC selects a ground location as the orienting point and uses impact fuzes in the registration. The establishment of the OPs and the procedures followed by the FOs are the same as those in an HB registration.

Section IV. Artillery Improved Conventional Munitions

ICMs are HE base-ejection projectiles with a mechanical time fuze and a body assembly containing a number of submunitions. The submunitions (grenades) are ejected through the base of the projectile and scattered in the target area. There are two types of ICM rounds: the antipersonnel round and the dual-purpose round. Table 5-1 shows the number of grenades in each ICM round.

Table 5-1. Number of Grenades in Each Improved Conventional Munitions Round.

ICM	Weapon	Projectile	Number of Grenades
Antipersonnel	105 mm	M444	18
	155 mm	M449 family	60
	105 mm	M915/6	42
Dual purpose	155 mm	M483A1	88
	155 mm	M864	72
	226-mm Multiple Launch Rocket System (MLRS)	M79	644

5401. Antipersonnel Round. The antipersonnel round is most effective against exposed personnel. When the fuze functions, an expelling charge forces the grenades out through the base of the projectile. Small vanes on each grenade flip forward, arming the grenade and stabilizing it in flight. (See figure 5-11.) When the striker plate (on the base of the grenade) makes contact with the ground, the grenade is hurled upward four to six feet in the air and detonates. Antipersonnel ICM (APICM) is no longer manufactured but is still held in war reserve.

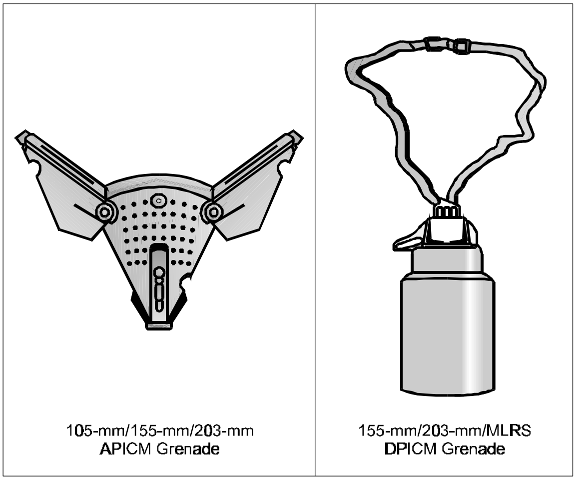


Figure 5-11. Improved Conventional Munitions Grenades.

5402. Dual-Purpose Round. The dual-purpose round is effective against lightly armored or thin-skinned vehicles. However, it is also very effective against personnel. After the grenade is ejected, a ribbon streamer arms and stabilizes it during its descent. (See figure 5-11.) On impact, a shaped charge that can pierce 2.75 inches of rolled steel armor is detonated. The surrounding steel case fragments are very effective against personnel.

5403. Dispersion. All ICM projectiles are base ejecting. The fuze functions at varying HOBs, and an expelling charge is detonated that ejects the entire payload of submunitions out the rear of the projectile. Centrifugal force disperses the grenades radially from the projectile line of flight. The size and shape of bomblet dispersion patterns are not constant and change over range. Also, the concentration of bomblets is not uniform over the entire surface area. There is a noticeable decrease of submunitions in the center of the dispersion pattern; this is sometimes referred to as the doughnut effect.

a. Antipersonnel Improved Conventional Munitions. M449 APICM dispersion is generally elliptical in shape. It disperses its submunitions approximately 100 meters by 60 meters. Depending on the observer's orientation to the GTL, he could see a varying distribution of submunitions.

b. Dual-Purpose Improved Conventional Munitions. M483A1 DPICM dispersion generally changes shape from elliptical at minimum ranges and lower charges to almost circular at maximum ranges. This variation is due primarily to angle of fall and HOB. At minimum ranges, the dimensions are approximately 50 meters by 100 meters. At maximum ranges, they are approximately 100 meters by 120 meters. Unless the observer is close to the GTL at minimum ranges, he should see bomblet dispersion of approximately 100 meters per projectile.

c. Base Burn Dual-Purpose Improved Conventional Munitions. M864 base burn DPICM (BBDPICM) is currently held in war reserves. Despite having fewer grenades, its dispersion pattern is larger than that of DPICM. However, because it is designed for employment at higher ranges, which produce a steep angle of fall, the dispersion pattern is typically circular. At its designed ranges, the dimensions are approximately 150 meters by 150 meters.

d. Battery Computer System Special Circular Sheaf. Based on the dimensions of a single projectile's dispersion, the dimensions of the typical sheaf can be predicted. The default BCS special circular sheaf is a 100-meter radius with aim points equally distributed on a concentric circle at half the target radius (50 meters). Depending on the range, the DPICM sheaf is typically 200 meters by 200 meters. Figure 5-12 on page 5-30 shows four guns firing DPICM at maximum range and at shorter ranges. Angle T can affect what the observer sees regarding the sheaf. The BBDPICM sheaf is consistently 250 meters by 250 meters. Figure 5-13 on page 5-30 shows four guns firing BBDPICM. Note that errors as a result of the dispersion of the projectiles can cause a random gap or overlap within the sheaf.

5404. Improved Conventional Munitions Call for Fire and Adjustment. The ICM call for fire is the same as any call for fire. (See figure 5-14 on page 5-31.) The FO identifies the type of ICM that he wants to be fired in effect by referring to APICM as APICM and DPICM as ICM. BBDPICM is only employed at ranges beyond DPICM, as determined by the FDC. (See appendix F.) Normal corrections for HE in adjustment apply; however, the fire-for-effect phase is entered once a 200-meter bracket is established. Procedures for the adjustment of the ICM follow.

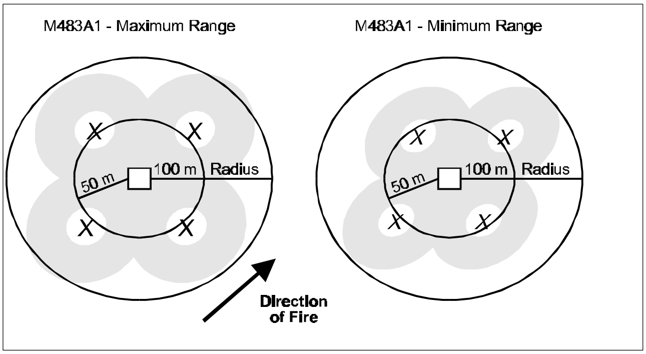


Figure 5-12. M483A1 Dispersion Pattern at Maximum and Minimum Ranges.

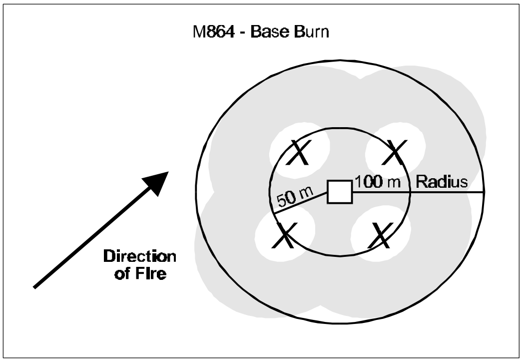


Figure 5-13. M864 Base Burn Dispersion Pattern.

HE Adjustment—DPICM in Effect
"P51 this is P87, adjust fire, over." "Grid 933 876, over." "Infantry company halted, APICM in effect, over."
Fire for Effect With DPICM
"P51 this is P87, fire for effect, over." "Grid 372 461, over." "Platoon assembly area, ICM, over."

Figure 5-14. Example of Improved Conventional Munitions Missions.

a. Range and Deviation. Because of the size of the effects pattern, deviation shifts of less than 50 meters and range corrections of less than 100 meters should not be made. Normal range and deviation corrections are used when adjusting DPICM in the self-registering mode.

b. Height of Burst. Because of the reliability of the round, no adjustment for HOB is required before firing for effect. However, errors in either target location or firing solution can produce effects other than the designed HOB. The result is bomblet dispersion that is either too large to be effective or too small to adequately cover the target area. If a repeat of fire for effect is required, HOB may then be adjusted. The observer corrects the HOB up to increase dispersion and corrects it down to decrease dispersion. Corrections are made in 50-meter increments.

c. Danger Close. When adjusting close-in fires with ICM, the observer must start the adjustment at least 600 meters from friendly troops, depending on the relative locations of weapons, the target, and friendly troops. Special consideration must be given to the direction and speed of the wind in the target area. The adjustment should be made with the entire battery. Corrections should be made from the near edge of the effects pattern. Use of a converged sheaf should be considered to decrease the size of the sheaf.

5405. Employment Considerations. ICM should not be fired into wooded areas. The grenades become suspended in tree branches and later pose a threat to friendly forces. Discretion should be exercised when using ICM in an area that friendly forces must cross because the unexploded submunition rate is approximately 1.5 percent. Precautions should be taken when firing ICM rounds in snow, marshy areas, and loose sand. These types of terrain conditions do not increase the dud rate but do pose more of a threat to friendly forces by concealing duds. Slopes of more than 60 degrees reduce the effectiveness of ICM. Because of the large area covered, limited use is recommended close to unprotected friendly troops.

Section V. Artillery Family of Scatterable Mines

FASCAM are time-sensitive, self-destructing mines that are emplaced by different assets, including aviation. Artillery FASCAM consists of antiarmor and antipersonnel mines in a base-ejecting projectile. These FASCAM projectiles consist of the remote antiarmor mine system (RAAMS) and area denial artillery munitions (ADAM).

5501. Remote Antiarmor Mine System Projectiles. RAAMS minefields are used against enemy armored vehicles. The RAAMS projectile is fired by a 155-mm howitzer, and nine antiarmor mines are base ejected over the target area. After a short delay to allow for mine freefall, impact, and roll, the magnetically fuzed mines arm themselves. Some of the mines have an antidisturbance feature that causes the mines to detonate if they are moved or picked up. If the RAAMS mines are not detonated, they will begin to self-destruct after 80 percent of the factory-set self-destruct time elapses.

a. M718 Projectile. The M718 projectile has a long-duration factory-set self-destruct time (48 hours).

b. M741 Projectile. The M741 projectile has a short-duration factory-set self-destruct time (four hours).

5502. Area Denial Artillery Munitions Projectiles. ADAM mines are used against personnel. They can be used against dismounted personnel in an armored attack or on existing antitank obstacles to hinder dismounted breaching. When employed against an enemy that has a dismounted breaching capability, ADAM mines are delivered directly on top of a RAAMS minefield. ADAM rounds are always the last rounds fired when used in conjunction with RAAMS or other munitions. This prevents the activation or destruction of the ADAM munitions by the other means.

The ADAM projectile is fired by a 155-mm howitzer, and 36 antipersonnel mines are base ejected over the target area. When an ADAM mine comes to rest on the ground, several tripwire sensors are deployed out to a maximum distance of 20 feet. When a sensor is disturbed or tripped, a small ball-like munition is propelled two to eight feet upward. The munition detonates and scatters approximately 600 1.5-grain steel fragments in all directions. If the mine tripwire sensors are not disturbed, the mine will self-destruct after the factory-set time has elapsed.

a. M692 Projectiles. The M692 projectile has a long-duration factory-set self-destruct time (48 hours).

b. M731 Projectiles. The M731 projectile has a short-duration factory-set self-destruct time (four hours).

5503. Types of Minefields. Three types of RAAMS/ADAM minefields may be used, depending on the amount of planning and coordination time available and the density of the mines. The three types are planned minefields, target-of-opportunity minefields, and minefields used with other munitions.

a. Planned Minefields. These minefields are normally initiated and coordinated at the higher level. They are scheduled or on-call targets to support barrier/obstacle plans. They consist of long or short self-destruct mines. Safety zones are computed before firing.

b. Target-of-Opportunity Minefields. These minefields are initiated through the call for fire and support the maneuver commander with an immediate minefield. They consist of only short self-destruct mines. The standard minefield module is 400 meters by 400 meters. Target-of-opportunity minefields are normally low density with a combination of RAAMS and ADAM projectiles. The number of projectiles varies depending on the range, angle of fire, and minefield attitude. The safety zone is based on aim points and is computed immediately after firing. The safety zone contains 99 percent of the deployed mines and represents the effective friendly obstacle for maneuver elements.

c. Minefields Used With Other Munitions. Minefields established in conjunction with an attack using other munitions are initiated through the target list or the call for fire. They support operations by harassing enemy targets within constraints set by the supported commander. These minefields are sized on the basis of the method of attack and use of RAAMS, ADAM, or a combination in the last volley. They consist of only short-duration mines. The safety zone is computed immediately after firing.

5504. Target Location

a. Moving Targets. The aim point for a moving target is placed directly in front of the enemy axis of advance. An aim point is placed 1,000 meters in front of the enemy target for every 10 kilometers per hour of speed, as shown in figure 5-15 on page 5-36. This allows enough time for mine delivery and arming before an enemy encounter.

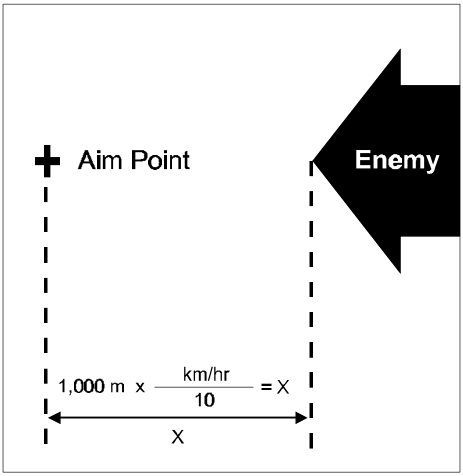


Figure 5-15. Aim Point Location for a Moving Target.

b. Stationary Targets. The aim point for a stationary target is placed directly over the target center. Aim points are located to an accuracy of 100 meters for adjust fire and 10 meters for fire for effect. If adjustment is necessary, it will be conducted with shell M483A1 in the self-registering mode.

5505. Family of Scatterable Mines Call for Fire and Adjustment. The FASCAM call for fire is usually transmitted and processed in the same manner as other requests for target-of-opportunity fire missions. The adjusting shell is DPICM in self-registration mode and shell ADAM, which is always fired last. Targets of opportunity are either fire-for-effect or adjust-fire missions. Missions within 1,000 meters of friendly forces should be referred to the firing-unit FDC for computation of the buffer zone before firing. Adjustment procedures for FASCAM are identical to those described for ICM. Figure 5-16 shows two different examples of a FASCAM call for fire.

Fire-for-Effect Mission

FO:	"Z57 this is Z42, fire for effect, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)
FO:	"Grid 1804 5132, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)
FO:	"Platoon in the open, ADAM, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)

Adjust-Fire Mission

FO:	"Z57 this is Z42, adjust fire, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)
FO:	"Grid 180 513, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)
FO:	"Five T-72 tanks attacking, RAAMS in effect, over."
FDC:	(FDC reads back.)

Figure 5-16. Example of Family of Scatterable Mines Call for Fire.

5506. Employment Considerations. Authorization for FASCAM employment is established in the OPORD and is usually held at the regimental level. Caution should be exercised when employing these mines in areas where friendly troops are likely to move. Although the mines have a self-destruct mechanism, the dud rate is comparable to that of DPICM.

Section VI. Artillery and Mortar Illumination

Battlespace illumination gives friendly forces enough light to aid them in ground operations at night. Illumination also facilitates operations for both the FO and the maneuver unit. Characteristics of artillery illumination are contained in appendix A. See chapter 6 for NGF adjustment procedures for illumination.

5601. Employment of Illumination. Illumination should be used with *caution* to avoid the accidental compromise of or interference with a friendly unit by premature or inappropriate fires. These fires must be coordinated before delivery if it is suspected that the effects of these fires will cross the boundary of an adjacent unit.

a. Volume. The amount of illumination that is required for a particular mission depends on the OT distance; the conditions of visibility; and the size, width, and depth of the area to be illuminated. By selecting the proper illuminating pattern and controlling the rate of fire, the FO can illuminate an area effectively with a minimal expenditure of ammunition. See table 5-2 on page 5-39 for the rates of fire for continuous illumination and other information on the employment of illuminating shells.

b. Uses. Illumination shells are used for the following:

- Illuminating areas of suspected enemy activity
- Providing illumination for night fires

Table 5-2. Employment Factors for Illuminating Shells.

Howitzer/ Mortar	Projectile	Initial HOB (m)	Distance Between Bursts (Spread) (m)	Burning Time (sec)	Rate of Continuous Illumination (rounds/min)	Rate of Descent (m/sec)
155 mm	M-485A2	600	1,000	120	1/2	5
81 mm	M-301A1	400	500	60	1	6
81 mm	M-301A2	400	500	60	1	6
81 mm	M-301A3	600	500	60	1	6

- Harassing enemy positions
- Furnishing directions to friendly troops for attacks or patrol activities
- Marking targets for attack by CAS
- “Washing out” enemy passive night-sight systems.

5602. Illumination Patterns

a. One-Gun Illumination Pattern. The one-gun illumination pattern is used when effective illumination can be obtained by firing one round at a time. To get this pattern, the FO calls for illumination as the type of adjustment and type of projectile.

b. Two-Gun Illumination Pattern. The two-gun illumination pattern is used when an area requires more illumination than can be furnished by one-gun illumination. In two-gun illumination, two rounds are caused to burst simultaneously in the same place. To get this pattern, the FO requests "illumination two guns." This pattern is not necessary with the M485A2 155-mm projectile.

c. Two-Gun Illumination Range Spread Pattern. The two-gun illumination range spread pattern is used when the area to be illuminated has greater depth than width as seen along the OTL (GTL for mortars). (See figure 5-17.) Spread illumination causes less shadow than illumination that is concentrated in one place. To get this pattern, the FO calls for "illumination range spread." The FDC centers the spread over the point indicated by the FO and orients the spread along the OTL for artillery (unless GTL is requested) and along the GTL for mortars. (See table 5-2 on page 5-39 for distance between bursts.)

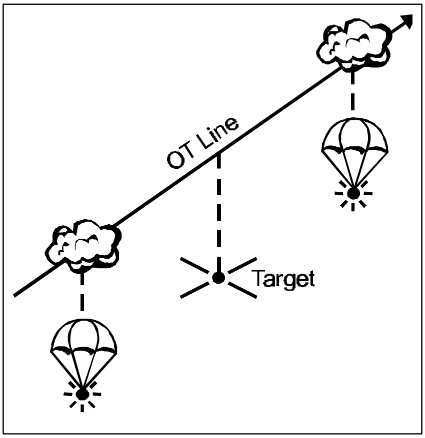


Figure 5-17. Illumination Range Spread.

d. Two-Gun Illumination Lateral Spread. The two-gun illumination lateral spread pattern is used when the area to be illuminated has greater width than depth. (See figure 5-18.) To get this pattern, the FO calls for "illumination lateral spread." The FDC centers the spread over the point indicated by the FO and orients the spread perpendicular to the OTL for artillery and to the GTL for mortars. Distances between bursts are the same as those for a range spread.

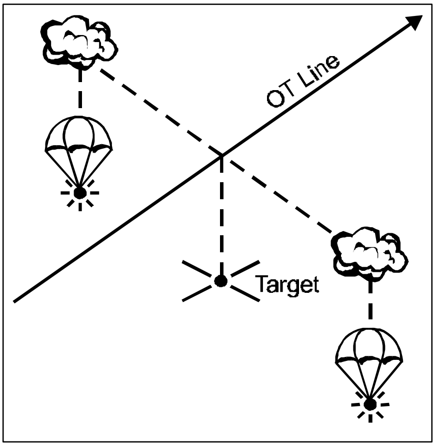


Figure 5-18. Illumination Lateral Spread.

e. Four-Gun Illumination Range and Lateral Spread. The four-gun illumination pattern is used to illuminate a large area. (See figure 5-19 on page 5-42.) Four rounds are caused to burst simultaneously parallel and perpendicular to the OTL for artillery (GTL for mortars). This pattern illuminates an area with practically no shadows or dark spots. To get this pattern, the FO calls for "illumination range and lateral spread." The pattern of bursts is the combination of range and lateral spreads.

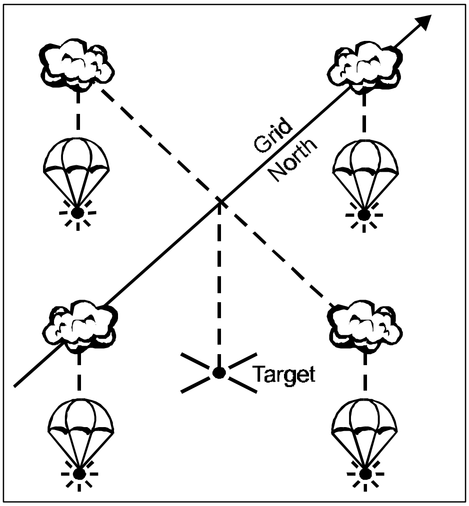


Figure 5-19. Illumination Range and Lateral Spread.

5603. Illumination Call for Fire and Adjustment

a. Call for Fire. In the illumination call for fire, "illumination" is given as the type of projectile, and, if desired, the appropriate range or lateral spread is given as the distribution. (See figure 5-20 on page 5-43 for an example of an illumination mission.)

“P53 this is P67, adjust fire, over.” “Grid 616 376, over.” “Vehicle noises, suspected tanks, illumination, over.”

This fires illuminating round bursts about 100 mils left of the suspected area and burns out 40 mils too high (measured with binoculars). Using an OT factor of 2, the observer transmits:

“Direction 5800, right 200, down 100, over.”

Deviation (100 mils x 2 = 200 meters).

HOB (40 mils x 2 = 80 meters » 100 meters).

The second round bursts short near the OTL but is too low. The round burns for six seconds on the ground. The observer requests:

“Add 400, up 50, over.”

(6 x 5 = 30 meters » 50 meters).

The third round bursts at the appropriate height over the suspected area, but haze and the distance between the suspected area and the observer cause poor visibility when only one illuminating round is used. The observer believes that two rounds will be adequate to extend the visible area and reduce shadows. He requests:

“Lateral spread, over.”

Two rounds burst in a lateral spread over the suspected area. The observer notices two tanks and a number of infantrymen moving to the right of the extreme edge of the illuminated area. He then prepares and transmits a second call for fire, moves his illumination over to the adjusting point, and transmits “illumination mark” when maximum illumination of the target has been obtained:

“Right 400, coordinated illumination, over.” “Adjust fire, over.” “Grid 611 382, over.” “Two tanks and platoon of infantry, ICM in effect, over.”

The observer may also have sent his target location by polar plot (“Adjust fire, polar, over.”) or by shifting from the center of the illumination (“Adjust fire, shift, illumination, over.”).

The observer transmits “illumination mark” when maximum illumination of the target has been obtained. He then adjusts the HE and fires for effect.

Figure 5-20. Example of Illumination Mission.

b. Adjustment. Procedures for adjusting illumination are discussed below.

(1) Range and deviation corrections are made in 100-meter increments. The adjustment of illumination to within 200 meters of the adjusting point is considered to be adequate because of the size of the area illuminated by the flare. Range and deviation corrections of less than 200 meters should not be made.

(2) The correct position of the flare in relation to the area to be illuminated depends on the terrain and wind. Generally, the flare should be to one flank of the area and at about the same range. In a strong wind, the point of burst must be upwind from the area to be illuminated because the flare will drift. If the area is on a forward slope, the flare should be on the flank and at a slightly shorter range. For illuminating a very prominent object, visibility is better if the flare is placed beyond the object so that the object is silhouetted.

(3) The proper HOB is obtained when the flare burns out just as it strikes the ground. HOB corrections are made in multiples of 50 meters. Variations in time of burning between individual flares make any finer adjustment of the HOB impractical. When burnout occurs during descent, the HOB correction is made by estimating the height of the flare when it burned out. When visibility permits, the spotting (height of the burnout above the ground) may be measured with binoculars. The HOB spotting (in mils) is multiplied by the OT factor to determine the height of burnout (in meters). The height is expressed to the nearest 50 meters and is sent as a down correction.

Example
The flare burns out 20 mils above the ground. The OT factor is 3. The correction is "down 50" (20 mils x 3 = 60 (50 meters)).

When the flare continues to burn after it strikes the ground, a correction is required to raise the HOB. The length of time in seconds that the flare burns on the ground is counted and multiplied by the rate of descent. (See table 5-2 on page 5-39.) The product is expressed to the nearest 50 meters and sent as an up correction.

Note
When using a night observation device, the FO should ensure that the flare burns out appreciably (100 - 200 meters) above the adjusting point to keep the device from washing out.

5604. Coordinated Illumination. When the FO has located a target suitable for HE or other fire, he initiates a call for fire by announcing "coordinated illumination" and then the mission data. (See figure 5-20 on page 5-43.) If no better means of designating the location of the target is possible, the burst center of the illumination can be used as a reference point.

Example
"Illumination right 200, HE add 100."

Once the FO has adjusted the illuminating shell to the desired location, he should control the rate of fire and the number of pieces firing. He should reduce the ammunition expended to the minimum required for observation.

a. Fire Direction Center Control. The FO allows the FDC to control firing of both illumination and HE by announcing "coordinated illumination" in his call for fire. While adjusting the illumination to yield the best light on the target, the FO should announce "illumination mark" to the FDC to notify it of the exact time when the target is best illuminated. Several marks may have to be established because a new mark must be established each time the illumination is corrected. By marking the adjusting rounds, the FO avoids the need for a separate illumination round to mark. The FDC times the interval between the actual firing of the illuminating round and the receipt of the FO's "illumination mark." By comparing this time interval with the TOF of the HE, the FDC can control the firing of the HE rounds so that they arrive at the target during the period of maximum illumination. If the FO adjusts the illuminating fire and the HE fire concurrently, he begins corrections pertaining to illumination with the word "illumination" and those pertaining to HE with "HE."

b. Observer Control. As an alternate method, the FO may request "coordinated illumination" and announce the method of control as "by round at my command" for both missions. This indicates that both HE and illumination will be fired only at the FO's command. In this method, the observer is responsible for timing his own mark and incorporating the HE TOF into the delivery of fires. As soon as the FDC reports that the illumination and HE fires are ready, the FO commands the firing of illumination. Then the FO commands the firing of the HE so that it will impact during maximum illumination of the target. The FO must request the HE TOF to better coordinate the firing of each round. An experienced FO and battery may be able to adjust more than one HE round under each round of illumination.

5605. Continuous Illumination. Because of the amount of ammunition expended, the least desirable method of coordinated illumination is for the FO to request "continuous illumination." In this technique, the FDC fires illumination continually (intervals between firing depend on the type of projectile) while the FO adjusts the HE. This is acceptable when illumination is enhancing the performance of optics in acquiring direct-fire targets.

Section VII. Smoke

The main objective of employing smoke is to create a *one-way mirror* so that forces may attack but not be seen by the enemy. Smoke is a combat multiplier that can be used in many ways to help accomplish the mission. Smoke can conceal both friendly and enemy troop movements, slow attacking forces, disrupt command and control, and reduce exposure of critical friendly and enemy assets. Observers must synchronize, integrate, and sustain smoke to defeat enemy electro-optical systems. Smoke at the critical time and place helps the combined-arms team to accomplish its mission. The force that most effectively employs smoke and functions better in limited visibility has the advantage in battle.

5701. Categories of Smoke. Smoke is categorized as deliberate or hasty.

a. Deliberate. Deliberate smoke is normally employed at the regimental level or higher. Any smoke source can provide deliberate smoke. Deliberate smoke can conceal forces or protect large areas (several square kilometers) behind the forward line of troops with smoke generators supplemented by smoke pots. This requires large amounts of fuel, fog oil, and munitions as well as extensive use of artillery assets and scarce smoke generators. Point or small-area targets can be obscured by other smoke assets (artillery, mortars, NGF, and air-to-ground rockets).

b. Hasty. Smoke in hasty operations is often used by battalions and smaller units against immediate tactical threats. Hasty smoke employs the unit's basic load of smoke-producing sources in addition to rapid-response assets like mortars and artillery. These operations typically require short planning and execution times, minimal coordination, relatively short duration of effects, and the use of organic assets. Hasty smoke obscurants are created to support small-unit maneuver or disengagement. Units must carefully plan the operational and logistical support for using hasty smoke.

5702. Battlespace Applications. The battlespace applications for using smoke in deliberate and hasty operations are obscuring, screening, marking, and/or deceiving.

a. Obscuring. Obscuring smoke is used to degrade the enemy's combat effectiveness. Obscuring smoke is placed on or near the enemy to suppress enemy observers and to minimize their vision and/or their ability to command and control their forces.

b. Screening. Screening smoke is used to conceal friendly forces, positions, and activities from enemy ground or air observation. Screening smoke is normally placed between friendly and enemy forces.

c. Marking. Marking smoke is used to identify targets for aircraft, to identify friendly locations, or as a navigational aid. It can also be used to signal prearranged battlespace cues.

d. Deceiving. Deceiving smoke is used to mislead the enemy about friendly force intentions. Deceiving smoke can support the deception plan by drawing attention away from the main effort.

5703. Delivery Systems

a. Mortars. Mortar units can deliver a high volume of smoke at short to medium ranges. Mortars generally provide the most rapid and responsive fires for the commander. The various types of mortar smoke include WP and red phosphorus (RP). (See table 5-3 on page 5-50.)

Table 5-3. Smoke Munitions Data.

Delivery System	Type of Round	Time To Build Effective Smoke	Average Burning Time	Average Obscuration Length (m/Round)	
				Crosswind	Headwind/ Tailwind
155 mm	HC	1 - 1½ min	4 min	350	75
	WP	½ min	1 - 1½ min	150	50
	M825	½ min	5 - 8 min	350	100 - 200
81 mm	WP	½ min	1 min	100	40
	RP	½ min	1½ - 2 min	90 - 150	40 - 50
60 mm	WP	½ min	1 min	75	40
5-inch/54	WP	½ min	1 min	150	40
Note: Planning factors are meteorologically dependent. Data is based on favorable conditions.					

(1) White Phosphorus Smoke. WP is available from company mortars (M224 60 mm) and battalion mortars (M252 81 mm). Mortar WP produces rapid smoke buildup, but its effects are of limited duration. It can be used for marking targets.

(2) Red Phosphorus Smoke (M819). RP is a time-fuzed round that contains RP smoke pellets. At a preset time along the round's trajectory, the fuze functions to expel and ignite the RP pellets at an approximate HOB of 175 meters. The burning pellets produce a cloud of dense smoke after hitting the ground. A three-round volley is required to develop the basic smoke screen. RP smoke is available from 81-mm mortars only.

b. Artillery. Various smoke munitions can be fired by cannon artillery. The artillery provides smoke at short, medium, and long ranges. Artillery units can provide longer, more effective smoke effects than the mortar platoons. However, excessive use of smoke should be planned and coordinated so that artillery units can meet the commander's needs. The types of artillery smoke are hexachloroethane (HC), WP, and M825 improved smoke (felt-wedge WP). (See table 5-3.)

(1) White Phosphorus Smoke. This type of artillery smoke involves a canister filled with WP. It is either PD or time fuzed. It is the primary marking round and builds quickly but has little sustainment. With a time fuze, it disperses more for obscuring. It is not fired with fuze VT.

(2) Hexachloroethane Smoke. HC is time fuzed and functions at a HOB of approximately 50 meters. The HC smoke canisters are expelled from the projectile and disperse in the target area. It is slow building but is effective for screening.

(3) M825 Improved Smoke. M825 has replaced HC smoke rounds. It is a canister filled with WP-impregnated felt wedges that are expelled from the base. It is time fuzed and functions at a predetermined HOB that varies with the propellant and charge fired. The wedges build rapidly into an effective screen with lasting duration.

> **Note**
> Soft sand or mud can prevent wedges from completely burning; this poses a nonlethal hazard to maneuvering forces when wedges are reexposed to

5704. Smoke Planning Considerations. The factors to consider when planning smoke are weather, terrain, means available, ammunition, the enemy, and command and control. On the basis of these factors, the FO can advise the company commander on the feasibility or likely performance of smoke.

a. Weather. Weather aspects are interrelated. The wind, temperature gradient, humidity, precipitation, and cloud cover will indicate the effectiveness of smoke and the volume required. Wind speed and direction are the primary factors in smoke performance.

(1) Wind Speed. Wind speed indicates whether smoke will be effective. High winds push smoke down, and effective smoke will not thicken until it has blown farther downwind. Low winds allow smoke to billow high and thicken closer to its source. Figure 5-21 on page 5-53 shows the optimal wind speeds for smoke. The equivalent wind-speed scale, the grass drop/flag method, and the onboard computer of the M1A1 are valid methods to determine wind speed.

(a) Equivalent Wind Scale. The observer can use table 5-4 on page 5-53 to determine wind speed. It is the least accurate and most subjective of all of the methods.

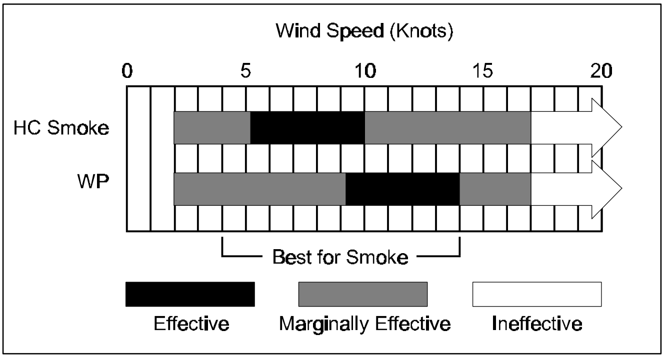


Figure 5-21. Optimal Wind Speeds.

Table 5-4. Equivalent Wind-Speed Scale.

Knots	Observation
1	Smoke, vapor from breath, and dust raised by vehicles or personnel rise vertically. No leaf movement.
1 - 3	Direction of wind slightly shown by smoke, vapor from breath, or dust raised by vehicles or personnel. Slight intermittent movement of leaves.
4 - 6	Wind slightly felt on face. Leaves rustle.
7 - 10	Leaves and small twigs in constant motion.
11 - 16	Wind raises dust from ground. Loose paper and small branches move.
17 - 21	Small trees with leaves sway. Coastal wavelets form on inland waters.
22 - 27	Large branches on trees in motion. Whistle heard in telephone or fence wires.
28 - 33	Whole trees in motion. Inconvenience felt walking against wind.

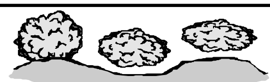
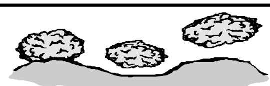
(b) The Grass Drop Method or Flag Method. The grass drop and flag methods are better ways to determine wind speed. Extend the arm downwind and parallel to the ground. Drop some grass from the hand and point to the grass on the ground. Estimate the angle formed by the arm and torso, in degrees, and divide by four to determine wind speed in knots. The flag method is similar. Use a flag or lightweight strip of cloth attached to a vertical object. Estimate the angle of the flag/cloth and the vertical object, in degrees, and divide by four to determine wind speed in knots.

(c) Onboard Computer of the M1A1 Tank. The observer uses the onboard computer to determine the wind speed at the tank location. This is the most accurate method of wind measurement.

(2) Wind Direction. Computations are used to determine the local-area wind direction. Local-area wind direction indicates where the smoke will travel. Wind direction is measured as a horizontal clockwise angle, in mils, from grid north. It extends from the direction from which the wind is blowing to the direction to which the wind is blowing. A field-expedient method of determining wind direction is to face away from the wind and measure the actual wind direction with a compass.

(3) Temperature Gradient. Temperature alone has no direct impact on the effectiveness of smoke. Temperature gradients do, however, directly affect smoke performance. Temperature gradients are determined by comparing air temperatures at 0.5 meters and four meters. Unstable, neutral, and stable are the three general temperature gradients used. Table 5-5 on page 5-55 is used for predicting these conditions and how the smoke will perform under these conditions.

Table 5-5. Temperature Gradients.

Smoke Condition (Temperature) Gradient)	Time of Day Weather Conditions	Expected Smoke Behavior as The Smoke Drifts Downwind (Wind Direction ⟶)
FAVORABLE (Inversion)	1. Night - Until 1 hour after sunrise. 2. Wind speed less than 5 kts. 3. Sky cover less than 30 percent. ALL THREE CONDITIONS MUST BE MET.	 Stable condition - Favorable for smoke employment.
MODERATELY FAVORABLE (Neutral)	This condition occurs most often 1-2 hours before and after sunrise and when the wind speed is 5 kts or more and/or the sky cover is 30 percent or more.	 Neutral condition - Moderately favorable for smoke employment.
MARGINAL (Lapse)	1. Day - beginning 2 hours after sunrise. 2. Wind speed less than 5 kts. 3. Sky cover less than 30 percent. ALL THREE CONDITIONS MUST BE MET.	 Unstable condition - marginal for smoke employment.

(a) *Unstable conditions* exist when the air temperature decreases with an increase in altitude. An unstable condition is characterized by vertical air currents and turbulence. Smoke tends to break up and become diffused under these conditions. Unstable conditions should be considered by planners as marginal for smoke employment.

(b) *Neutral conditions* exist when an increase in altitude is accompanied by little or no change in air temperature. Limited vertical air currents also cause neutral conditions when the wind speed is greater than five knots. Planners should consider neutral conditions as moderately favorable for smoke employment.

(c) *Stable (inversion) conditions* exist when the air temperature increases with an increase in altitude. This condition greatly limits vertical air currents. Smoke produced during inversion conditions lies low to the ground and may reduce visibility at ground level. Stable (inversion) conditions should be considered favorable by planners for smoke employment if there is enough wind to carry the smoke over the target area.

(4) Humidity. WP, RP, and HC smoke are hygroscopic and produce smoke particles that absorb moisture from the air. Moisture increases particle size and density and makes the smoke more effective. Smoke munitions generally produce denser, thicker smoke in high humidity than in low humidity. High humidity is generally favorable for smoke employment.

(5) Precipitation. Precipitation is a natural obscurant. Using smoke in mist or fog produces thicker smoke that is more effective against electro-optical systems. Light rain produces moderately favorable conditions for using smoke because the smoke might not rise high enough to produce effects. Heavy rain and snow are effective natural obscurants themselves and will degrade electro-optical systems effectively. As a general rule, precipitation pushes smoke down to the ground and spreads it over larger areas.

(6) Cloud Cover. Clouds will give an indication of how smoke will perform in the battlespace. As a general rule, the atmosphere is stable (favorable) when the sky is covered with clouds. Scattered clouds indicate moderately favorable conditions. No cloud cover indicates marginal conditions.

b. Terrain. Winds follow the contours of the Earth. The type of terrain over which smoke travels has a tremendous effect on how the smoke will cover a specific area. Flat, unbroken terrain creates effective smoke farther downwind. Trees and small buildings tend to break up smoke, which may then reform to cover a larger area and create effective smoke near the source. Steep hills or mountains create volatile winds, usually resulting in gaps and uneven smoke. Slopes and valleys create thermal slope winds at different times. Heating effects during the day cause up-slope winds. Cooling effects at night cause down-slope winds. Table 5-6 on page 5-58 summarizes atmospheric and terrain effects on smoke operations.

c. Means Available. Observers recommend to maneuver commanders the best means of providing smoke. Higher level FSCCs must review and then approve, modify, or deny this request on the basis of the effects of the smoke on all maneuvers.

d. Ammunition. Smoke ammunition is a limited asset. Because ammunition requirements vary with each mission, observers should know the amount and types of smoke ammunition available and how many minutes of coverage it can provide. Extensive, planned smoke employment should be coordinated early with firing units to allow for redistribution or requisition of ammunition.

Table 5-6. Terrain and Atmospherics.

Factor	Unfavorable	Moderately Favorable	Favorable
Wind	More than 10 knots	Less than five knots	5 to 10 knots
Atmospheric stability category	Unstable (lapse) (favorable for smoke curtain)	Neutral	Stable (inversion) (unfavorable for smoke curtain)
Humidity	Low	Moderate	High
Precipitation	None	Light rain	Mist/fog
Cloud cover	None	Scattered	Overcast, low ceiling
Terrain	Even	Gently rolling	Complex topography
Vegetation	Sparse or none (desert)	Medium to dense	Heavily wooded or jungle
Time of day	Late morning through late afternoon	Mid-morning	1 hour before EENT to 4 hours after BMNT

Legend:
BMNT = beginning of morning nautical twilight
EENT = end of evening nautical twilight

e. The Enemy. When considering smoke employment, the enemy's electro-optical capability should be known and likely positions for his weapons systems and observers that may threaten friendly forces should be anticipated. On the basis of the commander's plan, observers should determine when smoke employment will enhance friendly operations and hinder enemy operations.

f. Desired Effects. Clearly stated guidelines, restrictions, desired effects against enemy electro-optical systems, and other smoke employment instructions should be part of the commander's guidance and unit SOPs. Desired effects are specified as visible or infrared. All types of smoke are capable of producing visible and infrared effects. Table 5-7 on page 5-60 shows the effectiveness of the types of smoke against enemy and friendly electro-optical systems. Figure 5-22 on page 5-61 shows the effectiveness of all types of obscurants against enemy and friendly electro-optical systems.

(1) Visible. The visible wavelength is relatively easy to defeat with smoke. Obscurants hinder enemy viewers such as binoculars, weapons sights, night observation sights, and laser rangefinders.

Smoke can also degrade friendly visibility. Smoke that is sufficient to degrade less sophisticated electro-optical systems may be relatively ineffective against more sophisticated electro-optical systems. Infrared device-equipped observers have an inherent tactical advantage over observers who rely solely on the visible wavelength. With infrared devices, observers can more easily acquire targets through smoke, although positive target identification is more difficult.

Table 5-7. Smoke Effects on Electro-optical Systems.

Spectral Region	Electro-optical System	Type of Smoke
Visible 0.40 - 0.75µm	Viewers: • Daylight sights • Naked eye • Camera lens • Binoculars/standard optics • Battlespace television • Manual command to line of sight (MCLOS) missiles (AT-3) • Night sights	All
Near infrared 0.75 - 4µm	Viewers: • Semiautomatic command to line of sight (SACLOS) missiles (AT-4 and AT-5) • Night sights	All
	Sensors: • Laser designators • Laser rangefinders	All
Mid infrared 4 - 14µm	Viewers: • Passive thermal sights	WP, RP, type III infrared obscurant, dust
Far infrared 14 - 100µm	Sensors: • Thermal imagers • Terminal homing missiles (AT-6)	WP, RP, type III infrared obscurant, dust
Millimeter wave and lower frequency 1.00 mm	Radar Radio Microwaves	WP, developmental obscurants
X-ray and higher frequency	Directed electromagnetic pulse Nuclear weapons	Oil smoke (attenuation only), developmental obscurants

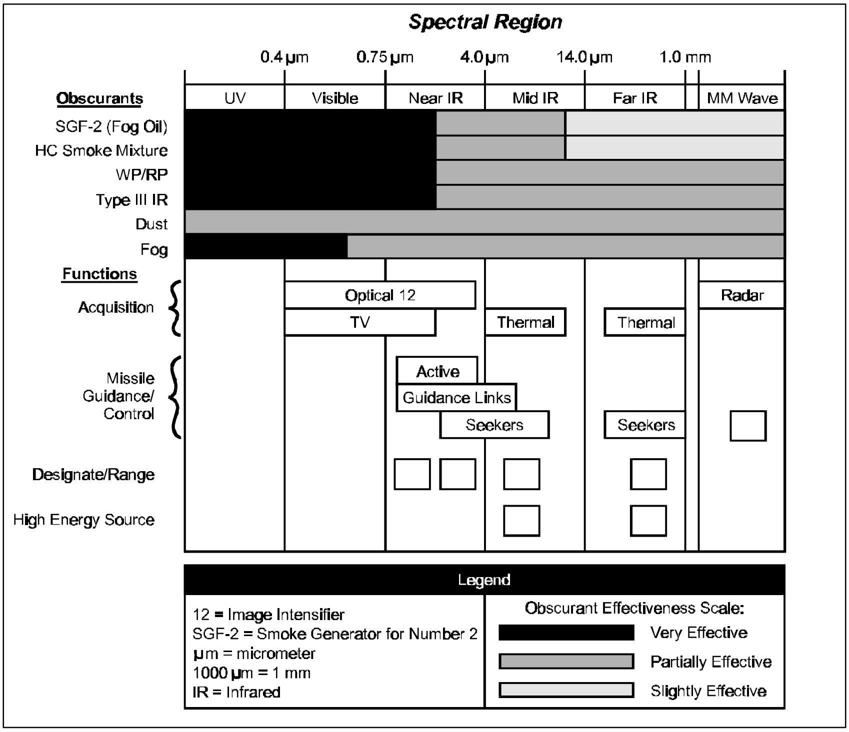


Figure 5-22. Obscurant Effects on Electro-optical Systems.

(2) Infrared. Visual obscurants may degrade the visibility of observers using infrared devices. Bispectral obscurants, however, can defeat sophisticated battlespace viewers and weapon guidance systems such as command line-of-sight or terminal homing systems on antitank missiles. Bispectral obscurants defeat or degrade both the visual and infrared portions of the electromagnetic spectrum simultaneously. Firing units employing bispectral fires deliver sufficient amounts of smoke to degrade less sophisticated as well as advanced electro-optical systems as necessary. Like visual obscurants, bispectral obscurants can degrade both enemy and friendly systems. Bispectral obscurants are required to defeat an enemy that is equipped with more sophisticated electro-optical technology.

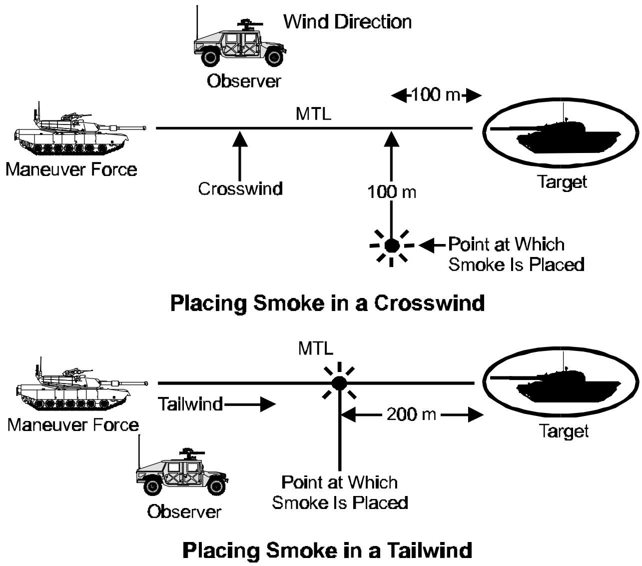
5705. Types of Smoke Missions. Immediate smoke and quick smoke are the two types of smoke missions that are fired by the artillery and mortars.

a. Immediate Smoke. Immediate smoke provides obscuring, protecting, or marking smoke over small areas. It is more responsive than quick smoke, but the duration and area of effects are limited. Immediate smoke is effective against point targets for short periods. Unit SOPs should state the amount and type of ammunition to be fired and the number of guns to be used.

(1) Adjusting Point. The adjusting point for immediate smoke is normally the target itself. However, the observer may determine that offsetting his adjusting point into the wind may produce better obscuration. When offsetting the adjusting point, use the criteria listed in figure 5-23 on page 5-63.

(2) Requesting Immediate Smoke. The call for fire for immediate smoke consists of four elements sent in one transmission. The four elements are observer identification, warning order, target location, and transmission authentication.

Delivery Technique	Wind Direction			Adjusting Point With Respect to:
	Cross	Head	Tail	
Immediate (WP and Smoke) Point/Suppression	100S-100UW	100S	200S	Point To Obscure on MTL



Legend
MTL = Maneuver-Target Line
S = Short
UW = Upwind

Figure 5-23. Optional Adjusting Points for Immediate Smoke.

(a) Observer Identification. The observer's call sign identifies him to the FDC.

(b) Warning Order. The observer announces "immediate smoke."

(c) Target Location. Any method of target location may be used.

(d) Transmission Authentication. Proper transmission authentication at the end of the call for fire is required.

Example (Grid)
FO: "W52 this is H24, immediate smoke, grid 628 545, I authenticate ROMEO DELTA, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)

Example (Shift From Known Point)
FO: "W52 this is H24, immediate smoke, shift target number AB3058, direction 4360, left 130, add 300, I authenticate MIKE LIMA, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)

Example (Polar)
FO: "W52 this is H24, immediate smoke, polar, direction 4360, distance 2700, up 30, I authenticate PAPA KILO, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)

Example (Laser Polar)
FO: "W52 this is H24, immediate smoke, laser polar, direction 4362, distance 2730, vertical angle plus 11, I authenticate CHARLIE ALFA, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)

b. Quick Smoke. Quick smoke provides obscuring, screening, or deceiving smoke over larger areas. More planning and coordination are required for quick smoke than for immediate smoke. Smoke rounds for quick smoke missions are fired in a linear sheaf and cover larger areas than are covered by immediate smoke missions.

(1) Planning Quick Smoke Missions. Quick smoke is effective against enemy positions and formations. A standard call for fire includes target location, target description, length of the sheaf, direction of the maneuver-target line (MTL), direction of the wind in relation to the MTL, desired time, and duration and effects of the smoke. Fire for effect should be requested for planned targets or refined target locations. Adjust fire can be conducted when the method of target location is less accurate. When adjusting fire, provide OT direction for grid missions.

(a) Target Location. Any method of target location may be used. The target location is the center of the area where the screen needs to be most effective. Note that adjusting rounds are delivered to where the screen is planned. However, during the fire for effect, smoke rounds will be offset by the FDC for the effects of wind.

(b) Target Description. Announce “screen” followed by an accurate target description. “Screen” alerts the FDC that smoke mission data will follow. Target descriptions such as open area, tree line, or hilltop are inappropriate. If the enemy situation is vague or unknown, transmit a description of the suspected target for screening.

(c) Length of the Smoke Sheaf. In coordination with the commander, determine the area to obscure, screen, protect, or deceive. The actual length of the smoke sheaf in meters is then determined. A recommendation should then be made to the commander regarding the length of the sheaf and the weapons system that should be used.

(d) Determining the Maneuver-Target Line. The MTL is a horizontal clockwise angle measured from grid north. Depending on the situation, the MTL can extend from the observer's location to and through the target, or it can extend from the most vulnerable point along the route of march to and through the target. The MTL is determined to an accuracy of 10 mils.

(e) Determining the Wind Direction in Relation to the Maneuver-Target Line. Determine whether the wind is a right crosswind, left crosswind, headwind, or tailwind in relation to the MTL. A left crosswind blows from left to right across the MTL from the observer's perspective. A right crosswind blows from right to left across the MTL from the observer's perspective. A headwind blows along the MTL toward the observer. A tailwind blows along the MTL away from the observer. Figure 5-24 shows how to convert the wind direction in relation to the MTL to a right crosswind, left crosswind, headwind, or tailwind. To compute the difference between the actual wind direction and the direction of the MTL, see figure 5-24 on page 5-67.

(f) Desired Time and Duration of Smoke Effects. Consult with the commander to determine how long the smoke effects are required. In the offense, the duration of required smoke effects is based on the friendly unit's average rate of speed and the distance of the friendly movement. In the defense, it is based on the enemy's closure rate and the distance that he needs to cover before he can be effectively engaged.

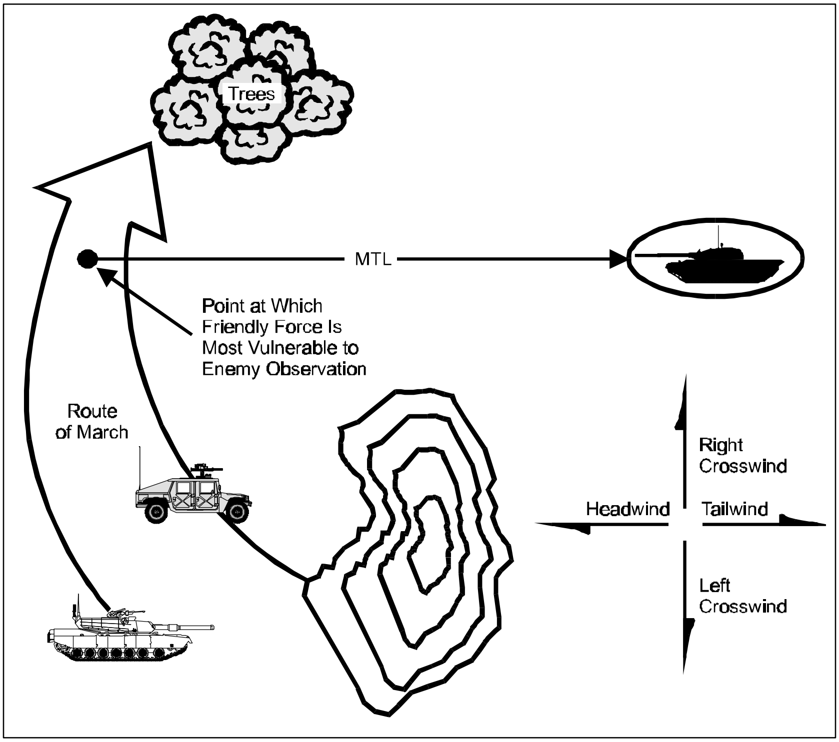


Figure 5-24. Determining Wind Direction in Relation to the Maneuver-Target Line.

(g) Desired Smoke Effects. Announce “smoke” or “infrared smoke” to describe the desired effects of the smoke mission. “Smoke” is a request for visible effects. “Infrared smoke” is a request for infrared effects.

(h) Feasibility. During planning, the observer can provide mission information to the FDC and allow it to compute the number of rounds required for support. This allows feasibility assessment, as well as ammunition preparation. The FDO will select the appropriate smoke munition that will produce the requested effects.

(2) Requesting Quick Smoke. Quick smoke is requested by using the six elements of the standard call for fire. These elements are sent in three transmissions.

(a) Observer Identification. This identifies the observer to the FDC.

(b) Warning Order. Announce "fire for effect" or "adjust fire."

(c) Target Location. Use any of the four methods of target location.

(d) Target Description. Announce "screen" followed by the actual or suspected target description.

(e) Method of Engagement. Announce the length of the smoke sheaf, MTL, direction of the wind in relation to the MTL, and desired time and duration of smoke effects. Use the memory aid "L-M-Dir-T," which stands for the following:

- L—length of the linear smoke sheaf
- M—MTL direction

- Dir—direction of the wind in relation to the MTL
- T—desired time and duration of smoke effects in minutes. (Following this, announce either "smoke" or "infrared smoke.")

(f) Method of Fire and Control. Method of fire is not normally requested. However, any method of control can be specified based on the tactical situation.

Example (Grid Method)
FO: "W52 this is H24, adjust fire, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)
FO: "Grid 617 538, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)
FO: "Screen T-55 company dug in, length 600, MTL 1850, right crosswind, five minutes, smoke in effect, over."
FDC: (Reads back and challenges.)
FO: (Replies.)
FDC: (Announces MTO.)
FO: (Reads back MTO.)

Example (Shift Method)

FO: "R5M this is M24, fire for effect, shift target number AB3062, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)
FO: "Direction 4570, right 280, add 400, down 35, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)
FO: "Screen suspected combat OP, length 200, MTL 0120, left crosswind, five minutes, infrared smoke, over."
FDC: (Reads back and challenges.)
FO: (Replies.)
FDC: (Announces MTO.)
FO: (Reads back MTO.)

Example (Polar Method)

FO: "W5H this is H24, fire for effect, polar, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)
FO: "Direction 4420, distance 2700, up 45, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)
FO: "Screen BRDM-2 with AT-5, length 200, MTL 5240, tailwind, 10 minutes, infrared smoke, time on target 0615, over."
FDC: (Reads back and challenges.)
FO: (Replies.)
FDC: (Announces MTO.)
FO: (Reads back MTO.)

Example (Laser Polar Method)

FO: "W5H this is H24, fire for effect, laser polar, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)
FO: "Direction 4514, distance 4170, vertical angle plus six, over."
FDC: (Reads back.)
FO: "Screen BMP-2 platoon with AT-5s, length 400, MTL 4510, headwind, 10 minutes, infrared smoke, at my command, over."
FDC: (Reads back and challenges.)
FO: (Replies.)
FDC: (Announces MTO.)
FO: (Reads back MTO.)

(3) Adjustment Procedures for Quick Smoke. Shell HE is used in adjustment for quick smoke missions. HC smoke adjusts the HOB before firing for effect, but M825 does not. When firing HC smoke, request "smoke" when splitting the 200-meter bracket (within 100 meters of the target). After observing the smoke round, apply a HOB correction and fire for effect. When firing M825 smoke, the same adjustment procedures as for DPICM are used. No HOB adjustment rounds are necessary; fire for effect when splitting the 200-meter bracket. Carefully analyze the behavior of the smoke to ensure effective smoke coverage. Make deviation, range, and HOB corrections from the center of the smoke sheaf as required. Because the smoke will cover a larger area, minimum corrections are as follows:

- Deviation—left/right 50 meters
- Range—add/drop 100 meters
- HOB—up/down 50 meters.

(a) Adjusting White Phosphorus Smoke. WP is adjusted for range and deviation only when it is fired with a PD fuze. When it is employed with a time fuze, it is adjusted for HOB to 20 meters.

(b) Adjusting Hexachloroethane Smoke. Range, deviation, and HOB corrections are sent when necessary. Range and deviation correction criteria are used as previously stated. The following automatic corrections are used for adjusting HC-smoke HOB:

- Ground burst—up 100

- Bouncing canisters—up 50
- Canisters too spread out—down 50.

(c) Adjusting M825 Improved Smoke. Range, deviation, and HOB corrections may be sent when necessary. Range and deviation corrections are used as previously stated. However, M825 improved smoke rarely requires HOB corrections. If the observer spots the M825 as graze, he must immediately announce “graze” to the FDC. The FDC must verify that the firing data were correct. HOB corrections for M825 smoke are announced in 50-meter increments. The following HOB corrections will be used for M825 smoke:

- Graze/firing data correct—up 100
- Thick/dense separated clouds—up 50
- Thin/uneven clouds—down 50.

(d) Adjusting Red Phosphorus Smoke. Range, deviation, and HOB corrections may be sent when necessary. Range and deviation corrections are used as previously stated. However, RP rarely requires HOB corrections. Use the M825 HOB adjustment criteria for RP smoke.

5706. Safety Considerations. HC smoke is carcinogenic. All types of phosphorous munitions produce phosphoric acid, which is poisonous. Personnel must wear respiratory protection (e.g., protective masks) when operating in HC smoke and while exposed to phosphorous smoke. M825 felt wedges and RP smoke pellets sometimes do not burn completely. This is referred to as "crusting over." Crusted-over felt wedges and pellets will reignite when disturbed and could cause serious burns. Personnel should be warned of their use in the area or areas that they will occupy.

Section VIII. Artillery and Mortar Final Protective Fires

FPF is "an immediately available prearranged barrier of fire designed to impede enemy movement across defensive lines or areas." (Joint Pub 1-02) FPFs consist of final protective lines (FPLs) and principal directions of fire (PDFs) from direct-fire weapons and continuous indirect-fire barrages. In artillery, a battery is assigned one FPF. In mortars, an FPF may be assigned to a squad, a section, or the platoon. The size of the FPF depends on the type and number of weapons. (See table 5-8.) Once assigned the FPF, the firing unit remains laid on that data in between missions and prepares ammunition. A unit cannot be laid on both an FPF and a priority target.

Table 5-8. Final Protective Fires.

Weapon	Size (m)
60-mm mortar Section (3 tube)	 60 x 30
81-mm mortar Platoon (8 tube) Section (4 tube) Weapon (1 tube)	 280 x 35 140 x 35 35 x 35
155-mm howitzer Battery (6 gun)	 300 x 50

5801. Employment of Final Protective Fires. The location of FPF normally is designated by the supported commander for whom it is being planned. It may be any distance from the friendly position that supports the current tactical situation within range of organic direct-fire weapons. This is normally within 200 to 400 meters (danger close). The importance of accurate defensive fires and the danger close situation usually requires that each weapon firing the FPF be adjusted into place, if possible.

5802. Final Protective Fire Procedures. FPF can be either adjusted or nonadjusted. Considerations include the tactical implications of adjusting the FPF (loss of surprise) versus the accuracy that is acquired for firing close to friendly troops. If adjusting, the initial target location sent is not the location of the center of the FPF but a grid that is a safe distance (400 to 600 meters) from friendly troops. Because this grid is part of a final defensive plan, it should be encrypted. The call for fire is similar to the normal call for fire with the exception of the third transmission. The attitude or direction of the long axis of the FPF is announced. In target description, “final protective fires” is announced. “Danger close” is announced in the method of engagement. “Fuze delay” should be requested whenever possible to minimize the safety hazard to friendly units while providing close-in fires.

a. Executing the Final Protective Fire. Once established, the FPF is initiated by the company commander. The observer fires the artillery FPF, using an established code or announcing “fire the FPF” with the appropriate authentication. To halt firing of the FPF, the command “cease loading” or “check firing” is given. To terminate the FPF, “cancel FPF” is announced.

b. Adjusted Final Protective Fires

(1) Manual Fire Direction Centers. The procedures for mortar FDCs and manual artillery FDCs are the same. The entire battery or mortar platoon fires one round (a battery/platoon one volley) centered on the initial grid sent by the FO. If the rounds impact as shown in figure 5-25, the FO begins his adjustment with the flank piece impacting closest to the FPF line (in this case, number 1). Creeping fire adjustment procedures must be used in danger close situations. The following is an example of the first correction.

Example
“Number 1, right 100, drop 50, over.”

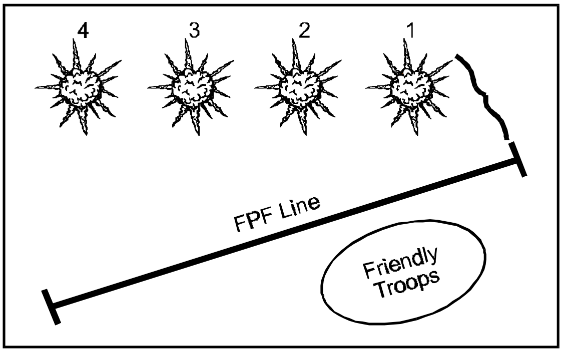


Figure 5-25. Adjustment of Final Protective Fires.

Corrections are made and fired until the FO believes that he can make a final correction to within 50 meters of the FPF line. The FO then sends a final correction, states that the weapon is adjusted, and calls for the next weapon to be adjusted. This final adjustment of 50 meters or less is computed and recorded but not fired. (See figure 5-26.)

Example
"Number 1, drop 30, number 1 is adjusted, number 2, repeat, over."

"H12 this is H18, adjust fire, over."
(FDC reads back.)
"Grid 6732 8674, altitude 710, over." (Encoded when not radio encrypted.)
(FDC reads back.)
"Final protective fire, attitude 1900, danger close, delay, over."
(FDC reads back.)
(The unit fires a battery one round with a sheaf as shown in figure 5-25. The FO observes that gun number 1 is closest to the FPF line and begins adjustment with number 1.)
"Direction 0810, number 1, right 100, drop 50, over."
(FDC reads back.)
(The unit fires the adjustment, and the FO believes that he can make a final correction to within 50 meters of the FPF line.)
"Number 1, drop 30, number 1 is adjusted, number 2 repeat, over."
(FDC reads back.)
(The FDC makes this adjustment, records the adjusted data as the priority target for gun number 1 but does not fire this adjustment, then fires gun number 2. This procedure is continued until all guns are adjusted.)

Figure 5-26. Example of Adjusted Final Protective Fires Mission with Manual Fire Direction Center.

(2) Automated Fire Direction Centers. If the artillery FDC is automated, only the center weapon will be adjusted onto the center grid of the FPF. The procedure is the same as for an adjust-fire mission. (See figure 5-27.) All corrections are automatically applied to the other weapons without firing. Note that "end of mission" ends the adjustment phase. "Cancel FPF" is used to terminate the FPF.

Example
"Right 20, drop 50, end of mission, over."

"H12 this is H18, adjust fire, over."
(FDC reads back.)
"Grid 5784 4893, altitude 475, over." (Encoded when not radio encrypted.)
(FDC reads back.)
"Final protective fire, attitude 1900, danger close, VT, over."
(FDC reads back.)
(The unit fires one round with a selected howitzer. The FO observes and corrects the round just as in adjust-fire missions. The round represents the center of the linear sheaf.)
"Direction 0810, left 80, drop 50, over."
(FDC reads back.)
(The unit fires the adjustment, and the FO believes that he can make a final correction to within 50 meters of the FPF line.)
"Right 20, drop 50, end of mission, over."
(FDC reads back.)
(The FDC processes this adjustment but does not fire. Data is then determined for all howitzers. The data is passed to all howitzers, which remain laid on the FPF when not engaged in other missions.)

Figure 5-27. Example of Adjusted Final Protective Fires Mission with Automated Fire Direction Center.

c. Nonadjusted Final Protective Fires. In some instances, the tactical situation dictates against adjusting the FPF. In these cases, it is essential for the FDC to be automated. If this is not possible, then the observer should consider the proximity of the FPF to friendly troops. The FO will then establish the FPF and give the FPF location, including altitude and attitude. (See figure 5-28.)

“H12 this is H18, fire for effect, polar, over.”
(FDC reads back.)

“Direction 3160, distance 400, down 20, over.” (encoded when not radio encrypted)
(FDC reads back.)

“Establish as final protective fire, attitude 1900, danger close, delay, over.”
(FDC reads back.)

(The FDC processes the mission and transmits data for the guns to lay on without firing.)

Figure 5-28. Example of Nonadjusted Final Protective Fires Mission.

d. Laser Final Protective Fires. Laser FPFs are nonadjusted FPFs. They are similar to laser draw missions with one major difference—unlike laser draw missions, the lased points of the FPF each represent a howitzer aim point. The number of aim points must match the number of howitzers. Note that it is possible to create gaps in the FPF “wall of steel” with a laser FPF. Each point is lased and transmitted to the FDC as polar data or converted to a grid. (See figure 5-29 on page 5-79.)

“H12 this is H18, fire for effect, laser draw, over.”
(FDC reads back.)

“Direction 1562, distance 380, vertical angle plus three, over.” (Encoded when not radio encrypted.)
(FDC reads back.)

(Direction, distance, and vertical angle to remaining points are transmitted and read back by FDC.)

"Establish as final protective fire, danger close, VT, over."
(FDC reads back.)

(The FDC processes the mission and transmits data for the guns to lay on without firing.)

Figure 5-29. Example of Laser Final Protective Fires Mission.

Section IX. Nonstandard Procedures for Artillery and Mortars

5901. Adjustment of Fires by Sound. During operations in which FO visibility is limited, fire may be adjusted by the use of sound alone. Target location may be reported to the FO by the supported unit or may be determined by the FO. If the FO can hear noises at the enemy position (e.g., weapons firing, vehicles, or troop movements), he can estimate a direction and distance from his position.

a. Procedures. The FO must alert the FDC when he is going to adjust by the use of sound. The FO must determine his location and ensure that the battery FDC has it plotted. The FO then determines the direction to the target and selects a target grid along the direction to the target. He then sends a call for fire using that direction and target grid. On hearing the burst of the adjusting round, the FO estimates the direction to the burst and compares it with the direction to the target. The FO converts the deviation to a lateral shift in meters. Distance to the adjusting point is difficult to judge; therefore, the FO may have to use creeping techniques to adjust onto the target. The FO can determine distance by measuring the time it takes for the sound of the burst to reach him and multiplying the time interval by the speed of sound (350 meters/second). To help the FO determine distance accurately, the FDC must announce the precise moment of impact, for example, “splash.”

b. Employment Considerations. The following should be considered when adjusting fires by sound:

- The FO must exercise caution in very broken terrain. In hills or mountains, the sound may travel around a hill mass before it arrives at the FO’s position and may produce a false direction to the burst.

- If the FO’s position is inaccurate, the initial round will be inaccurate. The initial round can be used to determine a resection.

- The FO may consider using a WP round with a 200-meter HOB as the first round in adjustment.

- To increase accuracy in adjustments using sound, the FDC may take the adjustments from two or more FOs.

- Aerial observers may be used to assist the ground observer in making adjustments.

5902. Multiple Missions. Contact with the enemy may be so intense that the FO must transmit two or more calls for fire and adjust all missions simultaneously. When this situation occurs, the FO should take the following steps:

- Consult the maneuver unit commander, if possible
- Consider previous guidance on target priorities and mission precedence
- Use his own judgment to determine which of several important targets should be engaged first
- Use target numbers assigned during the MTO; this will help the experienced FO with handling multiple missions.

The FO may also record the corrections determined for each target to eliminate any confusion that may arise in the heat of the battle. If other FOs are using the same COF net, then each FO should continue to use his call sign during the mission.

5903. Auxiliary Adjusting Point. To achieve surprise, the FO may decide not to adjust directly on the target but to adjust on a nearby point. This nearby point, which is the auxiliary adjusting point, must be far enough from the target (at least 500 meters) to obscure the real purpose of the adjustment. (See figure 5-30 on page 5-82.) Also, the auxiliary adjusting point must be selected so that an accurate shift to the target can be determined (preferably lateral). When the adjustment on the auxiliary adjusting point is complete, the shift to the target is made.

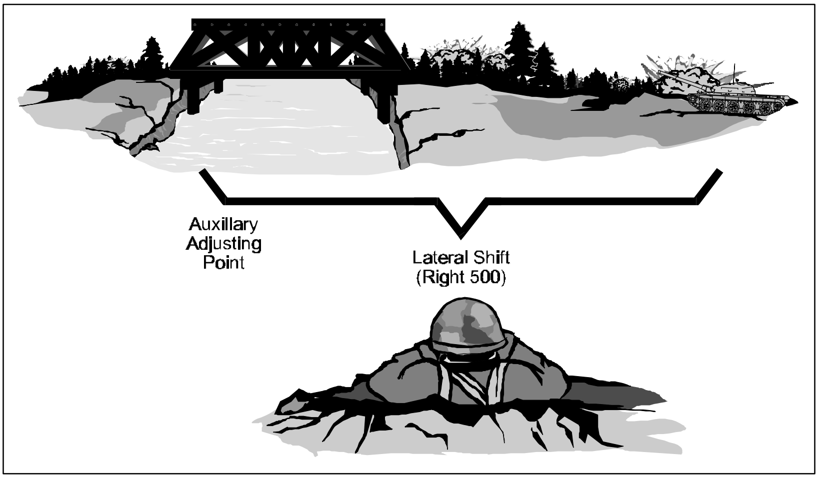


Figure 5-30. Auxiliary Adjusting Point.

5904. Disoriented Observer. Poor visibility, unreliable maps, deceptive terrain, or rapid movement through unfamiliar terrain sometimes makes it difficult for the FO to orient himself. The FO may call for marking round(s) to be fired on a known point, previously fired target, or prominent terrain feature.

Example
"Mark hill 37."

As a last resort, the FO may call for a round or rounds to be fired into the center of the target area.

Example
“Mark center of sector.”

The FO usually requests a type of projectile that is easily identifiable (such as WP), or he can request a higher burst with HE or WP. The unit may have an SOP for shell/fuze combinations. The FDC prepares data that will place the round at the point requested by the FO. If the FO fails to see the round, the FDC prepares data that will move the next round to a different point of impact or that will raise the burst higher in the air. This procedure is continued until the FO positively identifies the round. The FO then orders a shift from the point of impact (burst) of the identified round to a target or object that is permanent or semipermanent in nature, for example, a road junction or the ruins of a building. Once this point has been located by the adjustment of fire and has been plotted at the FDC, the observer may use it as a known point from which shifts can be made to subsequent targets.

5905. Irregular-Shaped Targets. When calling for fire on an irregular-shaped target, the FO must request the appropriate sheaf or describe the target in sufficient detail to allow the FDO to decide how best to attack the target. Choices include circular, linear, rectangular, and laser-drawn targets. For large targets that warrant multiple batteries or battalions, the target is segmented so that individual batteries provide coverage for a portion of the target.

a. Circular Sheafs. Circular sheafs may provide the best coverage of an irregular target area. The circular sheaf is the default sheaf for automated FDCs (100-meter radius). With a single battery, aim points are placed half the distance from the center grid and radius edge. Large targets are segmented for multiple units.

b. Linear and Rectangular Targets. Linear and rectangular targets require orientation in terms of direction. The FO sends the grid, size, and attitude of the target. The grid is the location of the center of the target. The size is the length and width of the target. The target attitude is described as a clockwise angle, in mils, measured from grid north to a line passing through the long axis of the target. (See figure 5-31.) Attitude is sent to the nearest 100 mils and is always less than 3,200 mils.

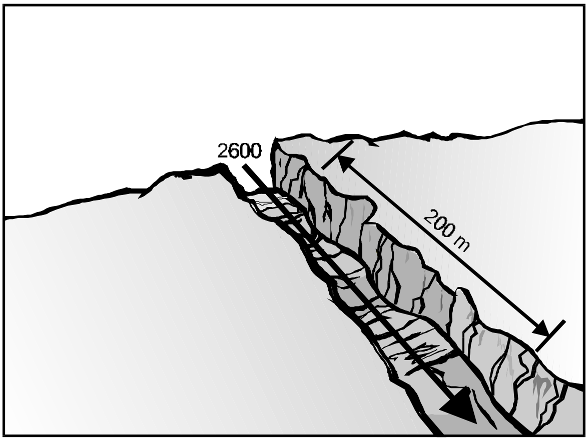


Figure 5-31. Target Attitude.

c. Laser-Drawn Targets. The MULE, or oriented BC scope with laser rangefinder, allows irregular targets to be "drawn," or traced by the observer. The BCS or Initial Fire Support Automation

System (IFSAS) then determines the best distribution to cover the target area. The number of lased points does not correspond to howitzer aim points and therefore does not need to equal the number of howitzers firing (as with the laser-drawn FPF). With a single battery, the first and last lased points are the only points that are also aim points for howitzers. All other howitzer aim points are equally distributed over the target (nonlinearly). A laser draw mission can be used to create linear or rectangular targets by simply lasing two points and announcing the appropriate width.

5906. Emergency Observer Procedures. In an emergency situation in which an FDC is not available, the FO may determine and send fire commands directly to the battery. This technique is applicable only to the experienced FO. Initial data is determined by use of the following steps.

a. Step One. Estimate the range from the battery to the target.

b. Step Two. Determine the M3A1 green bag charge by use of the following rule: Charge equals range in thousands (155 mm).

Example (155 mm)
Range 5,000 equals charge 5.

c. Step Three. Determine the deflection to the target by converting the azimuth to the target into deflection. You must know the battery azimuth of lay.

d. Step Four. Use an elevation of 240 mils (announced as quadrant 240 mils) to fire. A subsequent correction for range may need to be applied before the first round.

e. Step Five. Make subsequent corrections as required.

(1) Determine 100/R, where 100/R equals the number of mils required to move the burst laterally (deflection) or vertically (HOB) 100 meters. 100/R equals 100 divided by the range in thousands to the nearest hundred. (Range 4,600: 100/R = 100 ÷ 4.6 = 21.7 » 22.)

(2) Determine correction in deflection in relation to the GTL. Correction in deflection, in mils, equals the change in meters (divided by 100) times 100/R (left add, right subtract (LARS)). (A correction of R120 = 120 ÷ 100 = 1.2 x 22 (100/R) = 26.4 » 26 mils.)

(3) Determine the change to quadrant elevation (QE) that will give a 100-meter range change (C-factor). (See table 5-9 on page 5-87.) A change in QE is expressed in mils. Range change is expressed in hundreds of meters times the C-factor.

(4) Determine the initial fuze setting by estimating TOF during adjusting rounds.

(5) Adjust the HOB by using a C-factor of two divided by initial fuze setting for the change in HOB (up subtract, down add).

Example

Estimated TOF (fuze setting) = 16 sec; results in graze burst.
Correction up 40.
2 ÷ 16 = 0.125; 40 (HOB correction) ÷ 10 m (HOB) = 4 corrections;
up = subtraction from previous fuze setting.
0.125 x 4 = 0.5 sec subtracted from 16.0 = 15.5; announced "time 15.5."

Table 5-9. Artillery C-Factor.

Weapon	C-Factor
155 mm (M198, M109)	11 minus charge

(reverse blank)

Chapter 6

Naval Gunfire Special Situations

This chapter applies to special situations that are unique to NGF. These NGF procedures are used in conjunction with those discussed in chapter 4.

6001. Illumination. Battlespace illumination facilitates observation for both the spotter and the combat unit and restricts the enemy's freedom of movement. Illumination shells can be used to illuminate areas of suspected enemy activity, to provide illumination during adjustment of night fire missions, and to harass the enemy. There are two methods of employing illumination: continuous and coordinated.

a. Continuous Illumination. Continuous illumination will automatically be used during the fire-for-effect phase of coordinated illumination missions. It may also be used in surveillance missions. When firing continuous illumination, the ship will fire one round approximately every 15 seconds; this will result in one round bursting, one flare at midpoint of descent, and one flare near burnout. This technique should be used with discretion to avoid wasting the limited number of star shells (illumination projectiles) available in the ship's magazine.

b. Coordinated Illumination. Coordinated illumination is the common technique used by NGF spotters to adjust fire during darkness. The spotter will transmit a call for fire for a suspected target, the location of which is not sufficiently accurate to fire for effect. The ship will fire an illumination round over the initial target location. The spotter will then move the illumination by subsequent adjustments. When the flare is adjusted to provide good target illumination, the spotter will inform the ship of the moment of best illumination by transmitting the command “stand by, mark.” The ship will then compute gun data to fire the initial round for HE adjustment to impact directly under the point of illumination burst at the moment of best illumination. There will be a single salvo of illumination fire for each adjustment. When fire for effect begins, the ship will fire adequate continuous illumination to ensure that the spotter can see the target.

c. Illumination Call for Fire. The spotter uses the standard call for fire format. The spotter announces either “continuous illumination” or “coordinated illumination” in the special instructions subelement of the call for fire. The number of guns is omitted because one gun is standard. The ammunition (illumination projectile and fuze) is also omitted. The mission may require reduced charge to prevent ripped chutes, particularly when firing at ranges of less than 7,000 meters. The following is an example of a coordinated illumination call for fire.

Example
Spotter: “AIB this is C2D, fire mission, target number AF 1011, over.” Spotter: “Grid 344 677, altitude 55, direction 2680, suspected enemy activity, coordinated illumination, over.”

d. Prefiring Report. To differentiate between the illumination trajectory and the trajectory to be used for subsequent HE, the ship announces "line of fire," followed by "ready" and a TOF for the illumination projectile. The spotter must consider the path of the empty canister and its probable impact point along the line of fire. The spotter reads back the prefiring report and commands "fire."

e. Illumination Adjustment Procedures. Spottings are made to determine the location of the flare at the midpoint of descent and the height of burnout of the flare. The flare is normally corrected to position it over (behind) the target along the OTL to achieve a silhouette of the target. If the target is on a slope, the flare will normally be positioned short of the target to allow the light to shine back onto the target. The direction and speed of the wind will also affect the positioning of the flare.

(1) Deviation and Range Corrections. These corrections are given in multiples of 100 meters; the minimum correction is 100 meters. Because the illuminated area is large, bold corrections are normally used instead of bracketing.

(2) Height of Burnout. The height of burnout should be between zero (as it touches the deck) and 50 meters above the deck. Corrections are given in multiples of 50 meters, with a minimum correction of 50 meters. If the *flare burns on the deck*, the spotter counts the number of seconds that it burns, multiplies this by the rate of descent, and rounds up to the nearest 50 meters. For the five-inch illumination projectile, the rate of descent is 10 meters per second.

Example
A flare burns on the deck for four seconds. The correction is "up 50."
(4 sec x 10 m/sec = 40 (round up to 50))

If the *flare burnout is in the air*, the spotter must determine the height of burnout. This can be done by using binoculars (mils x OT factor). A second technique involves counting the number of seconds that it takes the flickering ember from the flare to reach the deck and multiplying that number by the rate of descent. After rounding down to the nearest 50 meters, a correction is given to cause the height of burnout to be between zero and 50 meters.

Example
A flare burns out in the air. The spotter counts seven seconds from the burnout until the ember touches the deck. The correction is "down 50."
(7 sec x 10 m/sec = 70 (round down to 50))

f. Continuous Illumination Procedures. The spotter will adjust the illumination as discussed above. Once the target has been properly illuminated, the spotter can then begin the fire-for-effect phase of the mission. In the fire-for-effect phase, the ship will fire illumination projectiles at a certain rate of fire to keep the target area continuously illuminated. The spotter may increase or decrease the rate of fire by ordering an interval or sustained fire. The following are examples of entering the fire-for-effect phase.

Examples

"10 salvos, fire for effect, over." (The ship determines the rate of fire.)

"Sustained fire, five minutes, fire for effect, over."

"l0 salvos, interval l0, fire for effect, over."

When the spotter desires to terminate illumination early during the fire-for-effect phase, he should transmit "cease illumination." If the spotter acquires a target during a continuous illumination mission and desires to change to coordinated illumination, he should transmit the command "coordinated illumination." This command is followed by any desired illumination corrections, target description, method of engagement, and method of control changes.

Example

"Coordinated illumination, left 200, troops in the open, fuze CVT in effect, over."

The ship will fire one illumination projectile and be prepared to mark. Coordinated illumination procedures are described below.

g. Coordinated Illumination Procedures. The spotter's request for coordinated illumination may result from acquiring a target during a continuous illumination mission or may be a part of the spotter's method of engagement in the initial call for fire. The request for coordinated illumination alerts the ship that the spotter will adjust the illumination and will subsequently request and adjust HE projectiles timed to impact at the moment of best illumination. During the illumination adjustment phase of the mission, the ship will time every illumination projectile fired and will be prepared to mark when commanded by the spotter. The spotter will adjust the illumination onto the target area by using the procedures outlined previously.

(1) Establishing the Mark. Once the illumination flare has been positioned to yield the optimal light on the target, the spotter transmits “stand by . . . mark, over.” “Mark” informs the ship of the optimal illumination. The ship will then time the firing of each HE projectile to impact at the optimal time.

(2) Adjusting High Explosive. Immediately after receiving the readback of “mark out” by the ship, the spotter will initiate the HE adjustment phase. The spotter transmits any subsequent corrections to improve the accuracy of the initial HE salvo. If no HE correction is sent, the ship will fire the initial HE projectile at the point of flare deployment, which may be positioned off the target location (for silhouette or wind purposes).

Examples
“HE left 200, drop 200, over.”
“HE repeat, over.”

(3) Prefiring Report. The ship will transmit a new prefiring report for the HE projectile. The spotter will read back and command “fire.” The ship will transmit “shot” for the illumination projectile and “splash, out” for the HE.

(4) Subsequent Corrections. The spotter must preface each command with the type of projectile to which the correction is to be applied.

Examples
"Illumination add 200, HE left 200, over."
"HE add 50, l0 salvos, fire for effect, over."

(5) Modifying the Mark. During the mission, the spotter may desire to change the timing between the illumination and the HE projectiles. To modify this interval, the spotter uses the term "advance" or "retard." The command "advance" shortens the time of firing between the illumination projectile and the HE projectile (i.e., the ship will fire the HE round sooner). The command "retard" lengthens the time of fires between the illumination projectile and the HE projectile (i.e., the ship will fire the HE round later).

Examples
"HE left 200, advance five (seconds understood)."
"HE retard five (seconds understood)."

(6) Illumination During the Fire-for-Effect Phase. During the fire-for-effect phase, the ship will automatically fire limited continuous illumination to provide adequate illumination for surveillance. The ship will fire the last illumination projectile immediately after the last impact round in fire for effect unless the spotter commands "cease illumination" sooner.

h. Illumination Projectile Malfunctions. Two types of malfunctions are unique to illumination rounds. Ripped chutes and dark star are special procedures used by ships and spotters to compensate for these malfunctions.

(1) Ripped Chutes. As a result of high muzzle velocity at shorter ranges, flare chutes may rip or separate on deployment. Should this occur, the spotter reports to the ship "ripped chute, repeat" or "ripped chute, reduced charge, repeat." The procedure used depends on how often ripped chutes occur and whether or not the target area can be ranged by using reduced charge. The spotter may also request that the ship increase the range.

(2) Dark Star. A dark star is an illumination round that fails to deploy or fails to ignite. Such malfunctions are caused by either faulty ammunition or improper fuze settings. When a dark star occurs, "dark star, repeat, over" is reported. The ship should immediately check its time fuze settings and note the time fuze lot being used. Additional dark stars may indicate a malfunction in the time fuze lot.

6002. Smoke. Ships can deliver only limited quantities of WP smoke, which produces rapid smoke buildup but has effects of limited duration. Early coordination with the ship will forewarn them to load the smoke ammunition in the gun turrets/mounts.

6003. Fresh Target Shift. At any time during a mission and before transmitting "end of mission," a spotter may desire to shift fire to a higher priority target. To do this, the spotter uses the fresh target shift technique. (See figure 6-1 on page 6-10.) The fresh target shift technique allows the ship to accomplish the shift to the fresh target more rapidly than if a call for fire with new target location data were introduced into the gunfire control computer. The fresh target shift allows the spotter to temporarily suspend the adjustment of fire for the original target, bring fire onto a higher priority target, and then resume fire on the original target, if desired.

a. Call for Fire for Fresh Target Shift. The spotter sends an abbreviated call for fire, applying a correction from the impact of the last salvo to cause the next impact to be on the fresh target. If initiated before the impact of the initial salvo, corrections are made from the target location data sent in the call for fire.

(1) Spotter Identification. Omitted.

(2) Warning Order and Target Number. Transmitted as “fresh target, target number (assign next target number).” There is no break in transmission.

(3) Target Location. Expressed as a deviation, range, and/or altitude correction from the last salvo fired. The shift is based on the original OT direction. The direction to the fresh target is not transmitted until after the first salvo of the fresh target shift has been fired and then only if it differs from the original direction by more than 100 mils or five degrees.

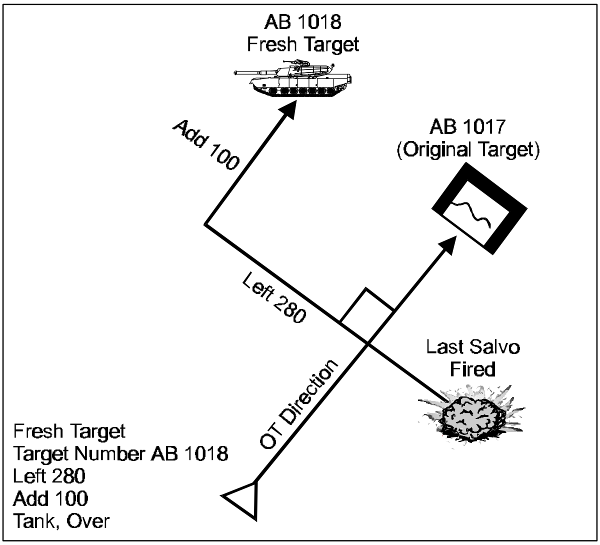


Figure 6-1. Fresh Target Shift Technique.

(4) Target Description. Must always be included.

(5) Method of Engagement. Omitted unless a change from the initial call for fire is required. Because the essence of the fresh target shift is timeliness, changes that may cause a delay, such as changes in ammunition, should be avoided. The spotter may consider using a less preferred shell/fuze combination to obtain a timely response.

(6) Method of Control. Omitted unless a change from the initial call for fire is desired. If the spotter was in the fire-for-effect phase on the original target, the fire-for-effect phase will continue unless the spotter announces, “spotter adjust, over.”

b. Adjustment for Fresh Target Shift. Once the initial salvo for the fresh target impacts, the spotter transmits a new OT direction (if required) and conducts adjustment onto the fresh target in the normal manner.

c. Termination of Firing on the Fresh Target. The spotter continues adjustment until he has achieved the desired effects on the fresh target. If the spotter desires to resume firing on the original target, he again uses the fresh target shift technique to return to the original target. The target is referred to by its original target number.

(1) Record as Target. If the spotter wants the ship to record the target for future firing, he must transmit “record as target, target number ____” after fire for effect on that target is completed.

(2) End of Mission. When the spotter is satisfied with the effects on each of the targets (both the fresh and original targets), the mission is terminated in target number sequence. Each target must be referred to by target number when reporting the damage assessment.

Example
“End of mission, target number 17 (original target), bunker destroyed, target number 18 (fresh target), tank neutralized, over.”

6004. New Target Shift. At any time during a fire mission, the spotter may wish to attack another target that is not of a higher priority. If the ship has the capability to conduct multiple missions (multiple mounts and an MK-86 gunfire control system), the spotter can send an abbreviated call for fire without interrupting the original mission. He uses a shift from the last salvo, similar to the procedure described for fresh target shift. The spotter then conducts adjustment on both targets. The difference between the fresh target shift and the new target shift is that for fresh target shift the spotter conducts adjustment for one target at a time, while for new target shift he conducts adjustment on two targets concurrently. The call for fire and adjustment procedures for the new target shift are the same as those described for fresh target shift, with the following exceptions:

- Warning order and target number are transmitted as follows: "new target, target number (next target number)." There is no break in transmission.

- The spotter must preface each correction with the target number to which it is to be applied. If confusion will not result, the spotter may use the last two digits of the target number.

- On completion of fire for effect for the first completed mission, the spotter may record the target if desired. He completes the mission by reporting "end of mission."

6005. Simultaneous Engagement of Two Targets. If the ship has the capability to conduct multiple missions (MK-86 gunfire control system), the spotter can adjust fire on multiple targets simultaneously. The procedures for the simultaneous engagement of two targets differ from those of the new target shift in that the target location will not be sent by using the shift from the last salvo. The call for fire for the second target in simultaneous engagement uses the standard six-element call for fire. The spotter must preface each correction with a target number. The ship will not transmit "splash;" this will provide more time for the spotter to transmit corrections.

6006. Firing on a Recorded Target. If fires are desired on a previously recorded target or a planned target, the spotter sends an abbreviated call for fire consisting of the following elements.

a. Spotter Identification. Required.

b. Warning Order/Target Number. Consists of the words "fire mission, fire target number." There is no break in transmission.

c. Target Location. Omitted because it is already known by the ship.

d. Target Description. Omitted unless changed from recorded description.

e. Method of Engagement. As required.

f. Method of Control. As required. When firing a recorded target from the same ship in the same firing track as when the data was recorded, a first-salvo fire for effect may be feasible.

6007. Destructive Fire. Destructive fire missions involve deliberate, accurate gunfire and normally employ a single gun against each target. This can be expensive in ammunition and can take a considerable amount of time to execute. During the mission, the gun/ammunition lot is not changed. The ship should be positioned to allow for the best conditions and orientation with respect to the GTL and the terrain in the target area.

a. Adjustment. Ship adjust should be used if possible. When the spotter conducts the adjustment, he uses normal adjustment procedures until the MPI is at the split of the l00-meter range bracket.

b. Fire for Effect. Groups of rounds, usually five for a single gun, are fired, and the average deviation and range spottings are noted. A correction is then sent based on the MPI of all the rounds. Five rounds are fired again. The correction is made to be as accurate as possible.

Example “Right 10, drop 25, repeat, over.” or “Left five, repeat, over.”

6008. Massed Fire. Massed fire is “the fire of the batteries of two or more ships directed against a single target.” (Joint Pub 1-02) On occasion two or more ships will be required to engage large or important targets simultaneously. If they have not already been tasked with a direct support mission, gunfire request procedures must be initiated. A collective call sign will be used in the request. All orders from the spotter will be read back by the senior ship. The other ship(s) will acknowledge the transmissions. The first ship to report "ready" will be adjusted onto the target in the normal manner. The other ships will be individually adjusted as they report "ready." The spotter will address individual ships (e.g., when conducting adjustment) by using each ship's call sign. Usually one or two bold corrections are used to bring the MPI into the required target area. To facilitate spotter control, "at my command" may be employed. At the completion of adjustment, the spotter will announce "cancel at my command, all guns (number) salvos, fire for effect, over."

6009. Special Naval Gunfire Commands and Reports

a. Safety Considerations

(1) Check Firing. Anyone can command "check firing" when an unsafe situation becomes apparent. This command causes the ship to instantly stop firing.

(2) Cancel Check Firing. The originator of check firing must announce "cancel check firing" for the fire mission to continue.

b. From the Spotter

(1) Spreading Fires. This is a report to indicate that fires for effect are about to be distributed over an area by corrections. The spotter announces "spreading fires," followed by a correction and the command "repeat" (pertaining to the volume of fire).

> **Example**
> "Spreading fires, right 200, repeat, over."

(2) Trend. A trend is the straying of the fall of shot from salvo to salvo. If the spotter notices a trend, he announces "trend," along with an indication of direction and distance (in meters). This is a correction to move the MPI back to the target.

> **Example**
> "Trend, southwest 100 per salvo."

(3) Check Solution. Check solution is an order transmitted by the spotter when he suspects an error in the gunnery solution for a salvo. Before transmitting "check solution," the spotter should check his target location data. The ship will respond with either "solution checks" or "neglect."

c. From the Ship

(1) Neglect. This report is sent by the ship to indicate that the last salvo was fired with incorrect data. The ship corrects the settings and transmits "ready, over" when prepared to fire.

(2) Delay. Delay is a report indicating that the ship is not ready to fire. The report is followed by an estimate of time in minutes, usually of short duration, that the ship will be unable to fire. When the ship is prepared to fire, the ship will report "ready, over."

(3) Will Not Fire. This report means that the ship will not continue the mission for a stated reason, for example, a gun mount malfunction (mount casualty) or a higher priority mission or circumstance such as counterbattery fire.

(reverse blank)

Chapter 7

Aerial Observation

7001. Aerial Observer. An aerial observer is trained to observe the battlespace from an aircraft to conduct reconnaissance and adjust artillery and NGF. An aerial observer may also perform the duties of a FAC(A) or TAC(A). Aerial observers adjusting NGF are also referred to as air spotters. Marine aerial observers operate primarily from the F/A-18D fixed-wing aircraft and the AH-1W or UH-1N helicopter. The aerial observer uses procedures and terminology for adjusting fires similar to those employed by the ground observer or spotter. Some variations are imposed by his perspective from the aircraft. This chapter will discuss the unique aerial observer procedures for calling for and adjusting artillery and NGF.

7002. Prelaunch Considerations. The aerial observer and pilot are given a thorough briefing of the current tactical situation, including the friendly and enemy orders of battle. The briefing addresses the current friendly situation, including infantry objectives, locations, front lines, zones of action, patrol plans, and coordinating measures. Additionally, the following information should be obtained during mission preparation:

- Enemy locations, organization, and equipment
- Battery positions, known points, targets, reference lines available for making corrections, suspected target areas, areas to be searched, and ordnance available

- Maps and photographs, obstacles, and checkpoints
- Communications details (frequencies, call signs, prearranged signals, and authentication sheets)
- Established operational procedures or SOPs, such as the method of fire for immediate suppression, special munitions, and SEAD
- FSAs, FSSs, NGF ship disposition and availability, and radar beacon positions
- Specific mission preparation (includes time of takeoff and return, routes, mission, check-in times, control measures, known fires and airstrikes, restrictive fire plans, weather, and relief on station)
- Message drop and pickup stations
- Panel code
- Location of ground radios
- Pulse repetition frequency (PRF) code words.

7003. Reporting In and Out. The pilot reports in and out to air control agencies when airborne or over an assigned orbit point by using the UHF radio. The aerial observer reports in and out with ground agencies by using the UHF/VHF radio.

a. Communication Nets. In addition to the division artillery air spot net or the NGF air spot net (see chapter l), the following nets may be used.

(1) Ship Air Spot Reporting In and Out Net (Ultrahigh Frequency). When arriving on station, the aerial observer must check in with the SACC or the appropriate FFCC/FSCC. For NGF, the ship air spot reporting in and out net is employed for the following:

- To assign air spotters to specific gunfire support ships and SFCPs as directed

- To direct NGF air spotters to guard other air spot frequencies, if required

- To brief spotters, as directed, on the location of targets, friendly front lines, zones of action, and so on

- To release air spot planes when relieved and return them to the tactical air traffic control (TATC) net controller or senior air observer for departure from the area. The stations on this net include parent carriers, land base(s), tactical air commanders, the commander of the landing force, and all airborne NGF spotting aircraft that report in and out.

(2) MAGTF Air Observation Net (Ultrahigh Frequency/Very High Frequency). This net provides a means for controlling air observation and for the transmission of information from landing force aerial observers to landing force headquarters and other landing force units. It may also be used for adjustment of artillery or NGF on an emergency basis. Multiple air observation nets may be required, depending on the scope of the operation. The stations on this net include the SACC, the FFCC, the FSCC(s), and the senior artillery FDC.

(3) MAGTF Artillery Air Spot Net (Very High Frequency/ Ultrahigh Frequency). This net provides the landing force headquarters, FFCC or senior FSCC, artillery regiment, artillery battalions, and liaison officers with an air spot net for conducting fire on deep and difficult targets. Stations on this net include landing force aerial observers, the force command element, GCE artillery aerial observers, and landing force artillery units, as required.

(4) Division Air Observation Net (Very High Frequency/Ultrahigh Frequency). This net provides a means for controlling air observation and for the transmission of information from division aerial observers to division headquarters and other division units. It may also be used for adjustment of artillery or NGF on an emergency basis. Stations on this net include the division headquarters, aerial observers, and subordinate division units, as required.

(5) Tactical Air Traffic Control Net (Ultrahigh Frequency/Very High Frequency). This net provides a means for the TACC/tactical air direction center (TADC), tactical air operations center (TAOC), and DASC to exercise airspace control of all tactical aircraft and itinerant aircraft in the objective area. The stations on this net include the TACC/TADC, the TAOC(s), the DASC, fixed-wing aircraft, and helicopters.

(6) Tactical Air Request/Helicopter Request Net (High Frequency/Very High Frequency). This net provides a means for the request of immediate air support from the DASC. The stations on this net include the DASC, TACP(s), FFCC/FSCC(s), the HDC, the FAC(A), the TAC(A), and the ASC(A), as required. In amphibious operations, a dedicated net (i.e., helicopter request (HF/VHF)) may be activated during ship-to-shore movement for immediate helicopter requests.

(7) Tactical Air Direction Net (Ultrahigh Frequency/Very High Frequency). This net provides a means to direct aircraft in the conduct of CAS missions and for the DASC to brief support aircraft on target information or for the DASC to assign to aircraft. There are multiple tactical air direction (TAD) nets available for assignment by the DASC to terminal control agencies (e.g., TACPs, FAC(A)s). The TAD net is not a planning net, but is a terminal control net on which extraneous traffic is to be avoided.

b. Communications Means. Table 7-1 on page 7-6 displays the radios that are available for communications by aerial observers.

Table 7-1. Communications Means Available to the Aerial Observer.

Aircraft	Communications Means

F/A-18D	Two ARC-182 transmitters/receivers with the capability to monitor any two frequencies in UHF/VHF/amplitude modulation (AM)/FM. The ARC-182 transmitters/receivers are capable of operating when covered.
AH-1W	Two ARC-182 transmitters/receivers with the capability to monitor any two frequencies in UHF/VHF/AM/FM. The ARC-182 transmitters/receivers are capable of operating when covered.
UH-1N	UHF and VHF (with the ASC-26 communications package installed—one additional UHF and two additional VHF radios with a retransmission capability). May also have HF capability.

7004. Call for Fire. The call for fire (artillery and NGF) used by the aerial observer is the same as that discussed in chapter 3. The following are special considerations for the aerial observer who is making a call for fire.

a. Marking the Target. The aerial observer may mark the target for a firing ship and use the ship adjust method of control. This technique should be used only in a low-threat environment.

b. Method of Control. The command “at my command” allows the pilot the time to position the aircraft for observation.

c. Target Location. Target location is determined by either the grid or shift from known point method. The methods are the same as discussed in chapter 2, with the following considerations or modifications. Obtaining accurate target location is difficult because targets are normally acquired by the naked eye. The use of gyrostabilized, low-light-capable binoculars facilitates accurate target location and adjustment of fire and increases aircraft survivability. (The Fujinon Stabiscope S-40 is used and available through open purchase.) Nongyrostabilized binoculars are difficult to use because of distortion caused by the windscreen and vibration of the aircraft. Hand measurements or estimations can be used to measure angular deviation. The aerial observer should seek an object to use as a yardstick for assistance in estimation.

Example

A bridge span that is measured on the map to be 200 meters can be used as a yardstick in target location and adjustment of fire.

The aerial observer's capability to determine an accurate target location may be limited by the enemy situation. Because of the enemy acquisition capability, the aerial observer may be afforded only a short exposure time. The aerial observer can offset the enemy's acquisition capability by using the forward looking infrared (FLIR) receiver. (See chapter 9.)

d. Direction. The aerial observer selects one of the types of direction based on the battlespace environment, terrain, type of aircraft, and his experience and training.

(1) Gun-Target Line. The GTL provides an effective type of direction for the adjustment of fire. In *artillery*, if the aerial observer has knowledge of the firing unit's location, he can readily use the GTL for adjustment. The FDC will assume that the GTL is being used unless otherwise specified by the observer. In *NGF*, if the aerial observer can see both the ship and the target or can clearly visualize the GTL on the ground, this type of direction can be used. The aerial observer must specify “direction GTL” if he desires to use this type of direction.

(2) Arbitrary Reference Line. The aerial observer can use visible terrain or a manmade feature as a reference line. The aerial observer uses this line or a corresponding parallel line and projects it through the target. The aerial observer must be able to see both the target and the reference line feature simultaneously from all angles of approach. Roads, rivers, power lines, and railroads are examples of good reference lines.

(3) Observer-Target Line. OT direction is excellent for an aerial observer who is observing from a helicopter. The bearing-distance heading indicator (BDHI) on the aircraft instrument panel can be used to determine OT direction in degrees magnetic. The aerial observer may have to transmit a new OT direction for subsequent adjustments. Aerial observers have a difficult time using the OT direction while performing the observation from a fixed-wing aircraft. The aircraft will not normally head directly for the target on every pass. Therefore, the aerial observer may have to estimate OT direction from the sides of the aircraft. The clock method using the nose of the aircraft can facilitate this estimation.

(4) Cardinal Direction. Cardinal direction, although less accurate, can be used for direction.

e. Summit or Maximum Ordinate. The aerial observer may desire to know the summit or maximum ordinate for use in aircraft positioning and flight-path selection. In *artillery*, the aerial observer may request the maximum ordinate from the firing unit. In *NGF*, the summit is automatically reported in the prefiring report. (See chapter 3.)

f. Time of Flight. The aerial observer is automatically sent TOF in the artillery MTO or NGF prefiring report. This allows the pilot time to position the aircraft for observation.

7005. Adjustment of Fire

a. Spottings

(1) Deviation and Range. The aerial observer determines spottings by map spot, estimation, or hand measurement depending on the aircraft positioning, the threat, and the type of aircraft.

(2) Height of Burst. The aerial observer cannot readily determine HOB. Consequently, adjustments to HOB for HE with fuze time are difficult. The aerial observer must rely on the fragmentation pattern on the ground as a means for determining spots. The use of VT or CVT eliminates this problem.

b. Corrections. Because of the aerial observer's elevated view, the one-round adjustment method is preferred. However, other methods discussed for the ground observer may be used. (See chapter 3.)

c. Adjustment Techniques From a Helicopter. When the aerial observer is adjusting from a helicopter, he may use either the stationary hover or pop-up technique for adjustment.

(1) Stationary Hover Technique. In a stationary hover, the pilot positions the aircraft behind trees or other terrain features that conceal the aircraft and still permit observation of the target.

(2) Pop-Up Technique. In the pop-up technique, the pilot will unmask the aircraft two to three seconds before impact of the round. After the aerial observer observes the burst, the aircraft returns to the hide position or moves to another hide position. The aerial observer sends his corrections as the pilot remasks the aircraft.

7006. Forward Looking Infrared Receiver. The FLIR receiver is a passive device used to detect targets by their infrared radiation. The FLIR receiver views the terrain in the vicinity of the aircraft. Infrared energy is converted into electrical signals and displayed on a terminal in the cockpits of F/A-18, F-14, AV-8B (night attack version), AH-1W, AH-64A, AC-130, F-15E, F-16, and OH-58D aircraft. The device allows for the recognition, identification, and classification of targets that would otherwise go undetected as a result of darkness or camouflage. The FLIR receiver provides the aircrew with an excellent target day or night, although it is usually better at night. The FLIR receiver in conjunction with the laser makes night adjustment of artillery, mortars, or NGF possible without illumination and the inherent time delays associated with illumination missions. The call for fire using the FLIR receiver is the same as discussed previously. (See chapter 3.)

7007. Laser Designators. The F/A-18, F-14, (laser target designator, low-altitude navigation and targeting infrared for night

(LANTIRN)-equipped) AC-130, AH-1W, and AH-64 aircraft are currently the only aircraft that have laser designators that are capable of designating for other acquisition systems or for laser-guided munitions.

(reverse blank)

Chapter 8

Suppression of Enemy Air Defenses

SEAD is that activity that neutralizes, destroys, or temporarily degrades enemy air defenses in a specific area by physical attack and/or electronic warfare. SEAD should be considered when friendly aircraft or unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) cannot complete their missions without critically exposing themselves to enemy air defenses. Although typically associated with offensive air support (OAS) missions, SEAD may be employed to protect any type of aircraft or UAV mission, including air reconnaissance, assault support, antiair warfare, and electronic warfare. When determined to be appropriate, SEAD fires are delivered during the critically vulnerable portions of friendly flight profiles. Although SEAD can be provided by various destructive and disruptive means from either ground or aviation forces, this chapter focuses on the delivery and coordination of artillery and NGF SEAD fire missions.

8001. SEAD Coordination. Because aircrews may rely largely on closely delivered SEAD fires for protection, all details of SEAD missions must be closely coordinated between aircrews, terminal controllers, spotters/observers, and fire support coordinators. *In coordinating timing for SEAD missions, everything is based on the timing of the air mission. Supporting indirect fires will be scheduled based on a specific aircraft event time, for example, CAS TOT/TTT, assault support L-hour, UAV mission area arrival time, and so on.* Coordination should ensure that aircraft are protected not only from enemy fires, but also from friendly SEAD fires. Protection from friendly fires is achieved by separating aircraft from SEAD fires by time and/or distance. Time and distance separation techniques are discussed in detail in paragraph 8005. Munition marking rounds may be incorporated into SEAD fires to aid target identification by OAS aircraft. Target marking is discussed in paragraph 8007. Depending on the type of air mission supported, SEAD fire missions are either planned or immediate.

8002. Planned SEAD Missions. Planned SEAD missions are scheduled during fire planning to support preplanned or on-call air missions. Units requesting these types of air missions must consider the air defense threat and submit requests for SEAD support as appropriate. Typically, known air defense artillery (ADA) targets will be attacked immediately; however, support for suppressing undetected systems must be planned. Planned SEAD missions are the result of coordinated planning by the air support request, or appropriate FSCCs, and the unit providing aviation or UAV support. See MCWP 3-16 for more information on the fire support planning process.

8003. Immediate SEAD Missions. Immediate SEAD missions are conducted to support immediate air missions. Because of the urgency of immediate air requests, planning and coordination for immediate SEAD missions are abbreviated. Critical SEAD decisions are made primarily by the requesting unit with supervision by the battalion FSCC. Requests for immediate artillery, mortar, or NGF SEAD fires are made as calls for fire.

8004. SEAD Decisionmaking

a. Validate Requirement for SEAD. SEAD fire missions do not guarantee safety from enemy air defenses. These fire missions divert indirect-fire weapons from other fire support tasks and may expose those weapons to enemy counterfire. Therefore, terminal controllers should first attempt to route aircraft away from enemy air defenses rather than automatically request SEAD fires. If aircraft cannot be routed away from enemy air defenses, then fire support personnel must balance aircraft vulnerability against the risk of exposing indirect-fire weapons to determine whether SEAD fires are appropriate for that air mission. The temporary diversion of fire support and the consumption of fire support resources must also be considered. Before requesting OAS that would require SEAD support, fire support personnel must first consider whether artillery or NGF could range the mission target and achieve the desired effects. If so, an artillery or NGF attack would be more efficient than an OAS attack supported by SEAD. If the mission target cannot be ranged by indirect fire or is most efficiently attacked by aircraft, OAS supported by SEAD fires may be appropriate.

b. Select SEAD Targets. Targets should be selected based on aircraft flight tactics/routing and enemy air defense capabilities. The prerequisite to selection is target location. Often, enemy ADA is not detected until aviation enters the area; therefore, observers must be able to acquire ADA based on its battlespace signature. Suppressive fires are placed as accurately as possible on enemy air defense sites that can engage aircraft.

c. Select Appropriate Weapons System and Firing Unit. Select an available weapons system and a firing unit that is capable of firing the appropriate ordnance when and where required.

Requirements include accuracy, range, ordnance availability, and state of training. The selection of a particular weapons system and/or firing unit should not adversely affect other fire support requirements. Although several indirect-fire systems are capable of delivering SEAD fires and target marks, artillery is generally most appropriate because of its range, responsiveness, ordnance, and fire direction capabilities.

d. Determine Marking Requirements. Specific aircraft missions such as CAS may require a mark to orient the aircrew onto the target. Refer to paragraph 8007. for descriptions of various marking options.

e. Select Appropriate Ordnance. Select the ordnance that will most effectively suppress the SEAD target(s) without endangering the aircrew or hindering future maneuver. When firing a munition marking round, select the ordnance that will best identify the target to the aircrew. Refer to table 8-1 on page 8-5 and paragraphs 8008. and 8009. for more information on the vulnerability of enemy air defense systems and suitability of specific ordnance.

f. Determine Method of Separating Aircraft and SEAD Fires. To prevent fratricide, aircraft must be separated from SEAD fires and trajectories. Separation may be by distance (lateral, altitude, or a combination of altitude and lateral) or by time (interrupted, nonstandard, or continuous). Distance separation permits the continuous engagement of enemy air defenses during aircraft vulnerability and thus requires less coordination. If an aircraft must fly near the effects or trajectories of SEAD fires, SEAD fires may have to be interrupted to ensure aircraft safety. This interruption of fires is time separation. Refer to paragraph 8005. for a discussion of separation techniques.

Table 8-1. Vulnerabilities of Selected Air Defense Weapons.

Weapon	Vulnerabilities
ZPU-3/ZU-23	Exposed personnel
ZSU 57-2/S-60	Optics
ZSU 23-4 2S6	Thin armor plating, optics, exposed radar and antennas
SA-7/14, SA-16	Exposed gunners
SA-9/13	Exposed missiles, optics
SA-6, SA-8	Thin armor plating, exposed radar and antennas, exposed missiles, susceptibility of radar to jamming

g. Determine Duration and Volume of Fires. Determine the duration and volume of fires required to protect friendly aircraft during vulnerable periods of flight. Consider the vulnerability, resiliency, range, and method of acquisition of the targeted enemy air defense weapon(s); number and type of friendly aircraft; aircraft flight tactics and the separation required between aircraft and SEAD fires; type of ordnance used for suppression; and vulnerability of the SEAD firing unit. If aircraft must fly near SEAD trajectories or effects, SEAD fires must be separated to prevent fratricide.

h. Timing the Delivery of Fires. Use of a synchronized clock to coordinate timing, for example, "CAS TOT 1305," is the desired means of timing fires. As an alternate method, elapsed time can be used, for example, "CAS TTT six plus zero, zero . . . stand by, hack." In selecting a synchronized or elapsed time to coordinate ground and air activities, terminal controllers and observers must allow sufficient time for all units to prepare for the mission and for FSCC coordination. Observers should send calls for fire as early as possible during aircraft routing, for example, before the aircraft departs the IP, to ensure that firing units can deliver SEAD fires on time.

i. Prepare Call for Fire and Coordinate. When all SEAD decisions have been made, prepare and transmit the appropriate call for fire and ensure that all required coordination is completed. See paragraphs 8008. and 8009. for artillery and NGF SEAD call for fire procedures.

8005. Separation Techniques. Aircraft and SEAD fires may be separated by distance (lateral, altitude, or a combination of altitude and lateral) or by time. Separation by distance is preferred because it permits the continuous attack of SEAD targets. If distance separation is too restrictive on aircraft routing, time separation may be used to protect aircraft from friendly fires. Time separation is the least flexible and often precludes suppressive fires at critical moments. Select the separation technique that requires the least coordination while still providing adequate flexibility and protection to aircraft.

a. Distance Separation

(1) Lateral Separation. Lateral separation is effective for coordinating SEAD fires against targets that are safely separated from flight routes. This technique is effective when aircraft can be routed away from SEAD trajectories and targets. (See figure 8-1.) For low-level CAS attacks, lateral separation should be used when aircraft and firing units engage safely separated targets and when aircraft will not cross GTLs. (See figure 8-2 on page 8-8.)

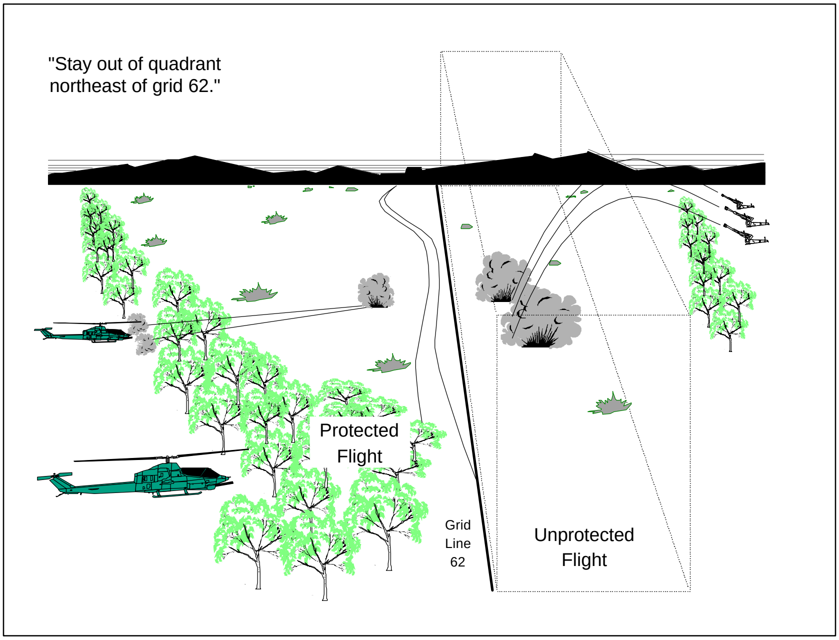


Figure 8-1. Artillery-Assault Support Aircraft Lateral Separation.

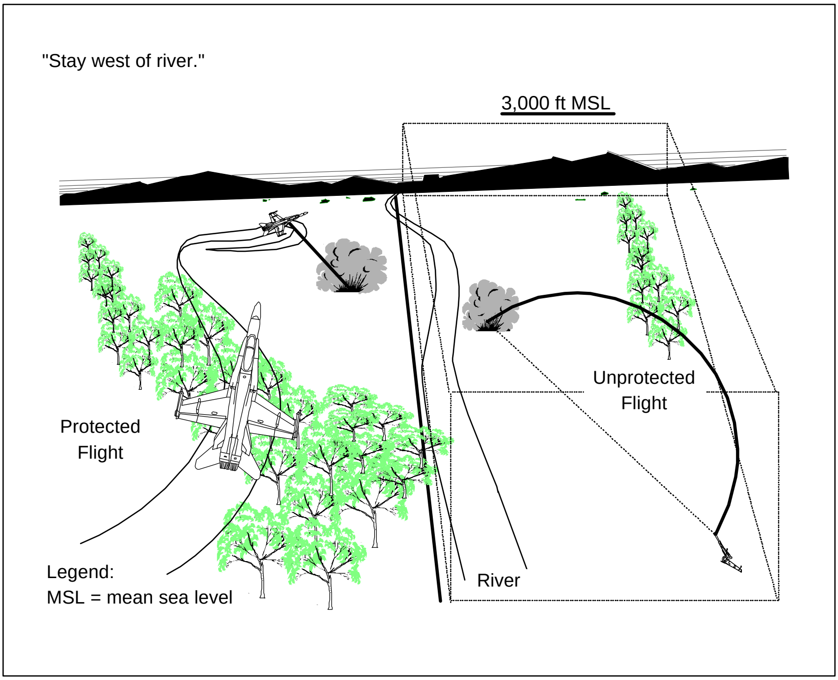


Figure 8-2. Artillery-Close Air Support Aircraft Lateral Separation.

The minimum separation distance between SEAD targets and aircraft routes varies based on SEAD ordnance and its fragmentation pattern. Terminal controllers or the FSCC must know the GTL so that they can restrict aircraft from crossing trajectories. Establishing a temporary informal ACA is one method of maintaining lateral separation, for example, “stay out of quadrant northeast of grid 6215” or “stay west of river.”

(2) Altitude Separation. Altitude separation is effective when aircraft can safely remain above or below indirect-fire trajectories. Establishing a temporary informal ACA is one method of maintaining altitude separation, for example, “stay above 3,000 feet mean sea level.” (See figure 8-3.) This technique can be used to support high-level CAS attacks. Altitude separation can also be limited to a specific area to give aircraft more freedom to maneuver, for example, “stay below 500 feet mean sea level in quadrant northeast of grid 6215.” (See figure 8-4 on page 8-10.) MCWP 3-16 discusses computation of altitudes.

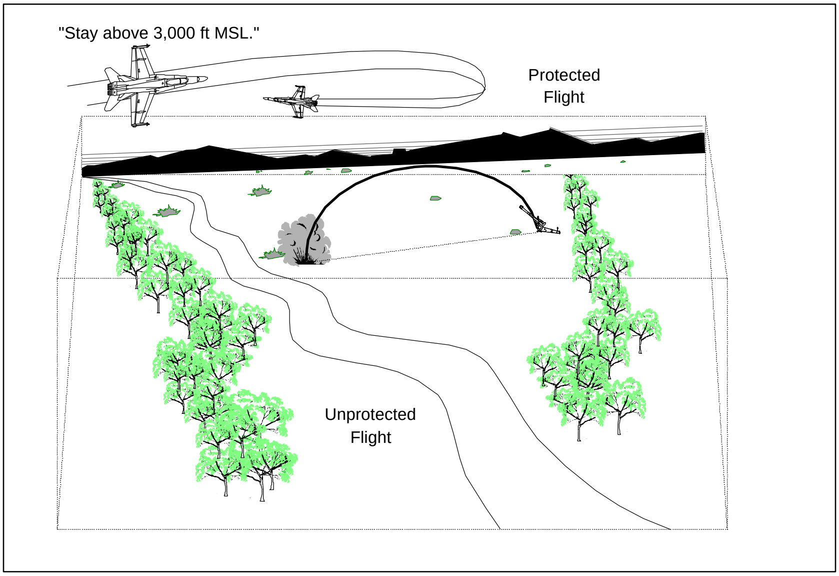


Figure 8-3. Artillery-Unmanned Aerial Vehicle Altitude Separation.

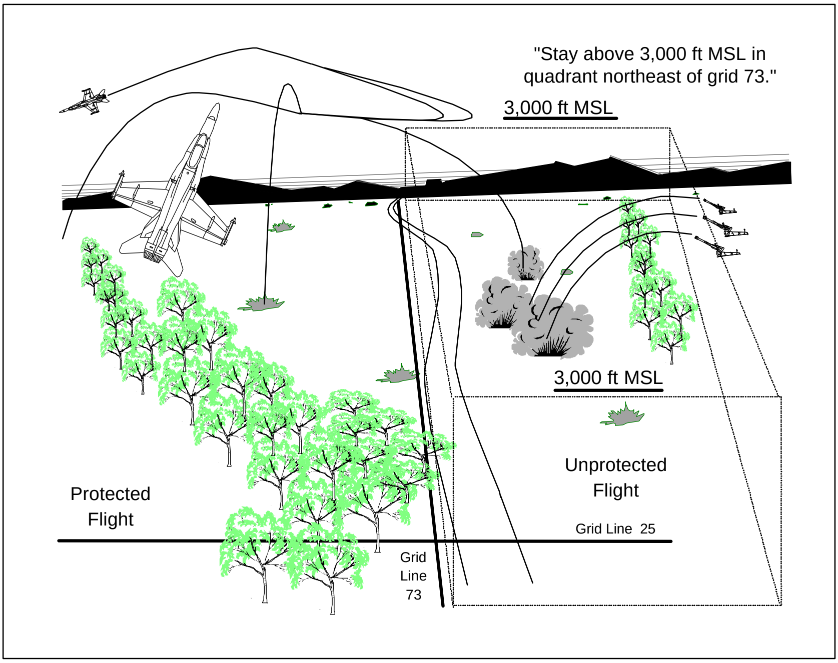


Figure 8-4. Artillery-Close Air Support Aircraft Altitude Separation.

(3) Altitude and Lateral Separation. Altitude and lateral separation is the most restrictive technique for aircraft routing but may be required when aircraft must cross the firing unit's GTL. This technique requires aircraft to remain above or below indirect-fire trajectories at certain points. For low-level CAS attacks, this technique is effective when aircraft and firing units engage safely separated targets but the CAS target requires crossing the GTL. (See figure 8-5.) This technique is also effective in protecting helicopters if they can be routed to fly under SEAD indirect-fire trajectories and away from SEAD targets. (See figure 8-6 on page 8-12.) Separation may be increased by firing high-angle or reduced charge. Establishing a temporary informal ACA is one method of maintaining altitude and lateral separation, for example, "stay below 1,000 feet mean sea level and between north-south grid lines 58 and 62."

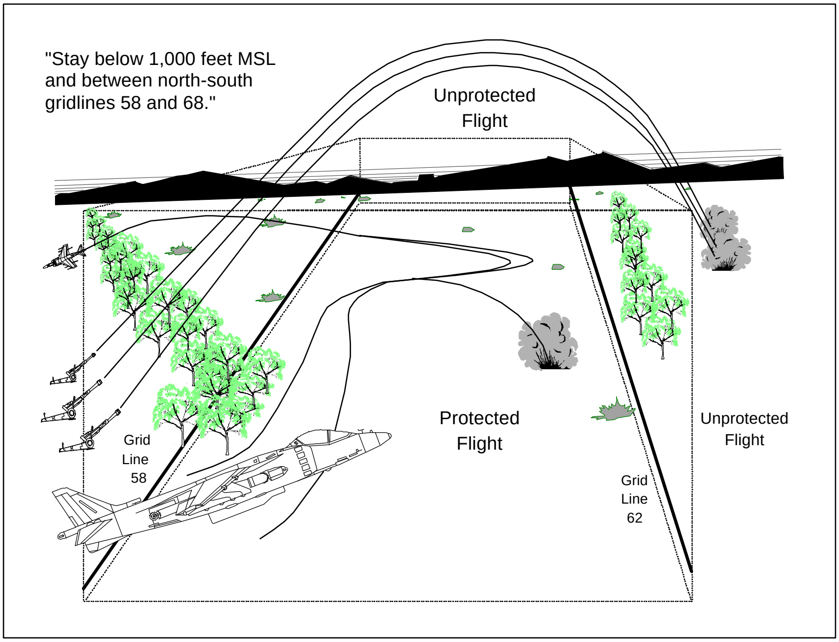


Figure 8-5. Artillery-Close Air Support Aircraft Altitude and Lateral Separation.

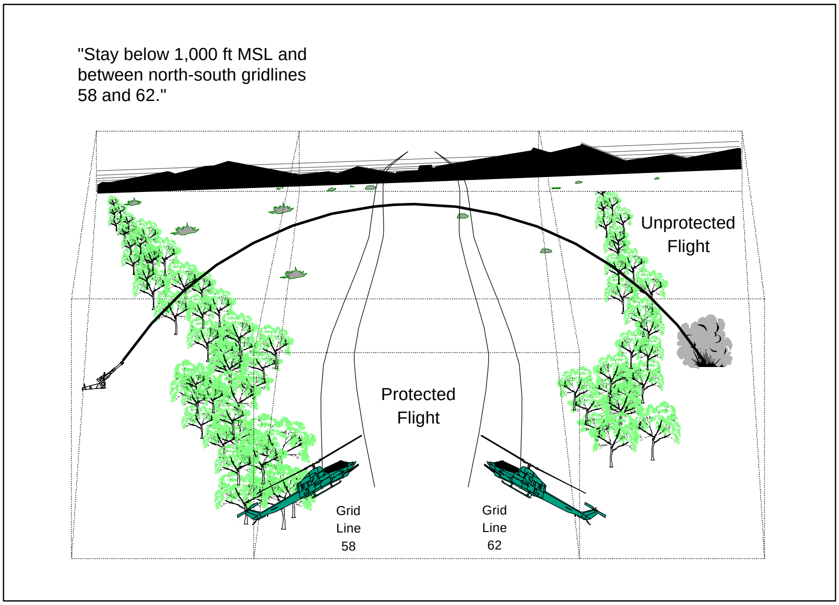


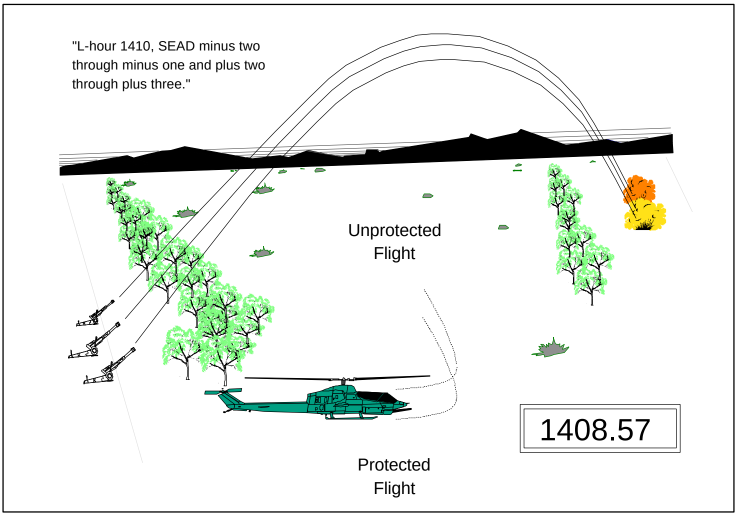
Figure 8-6. Artillery-Assault Support Aircraft Altitude and Lateral Separation.

When CAS and indirect fires engage the same target, a stay-above altitude incorporating the fragmentation effects can be determined. (See MCWP 3-16.) A lateral offset in the form of a final attack heading or cone prevents premature crossing of the GTL.

b. Time Separation. Time separation may be required when aircraft cannot be routed away from indirect-fire trajectories or SEAD targets. This technique requires the timing of SEAD fires to be coordinated with the routing of aircraft so that even though aircraft and SEAD fires may occupy the same space, they do not do so at the same time. (See figure 8-7 on pages 8-14 and 8-15.) For low-level CAS attacks, time separation can be used when aircraft are attacking targets just short of indirect fires along the GTL. (See figure 8-8 on pages 8-15 and 8-16.) All timing for SEAD fires is based on a specific aircraft event time, for example, CAS TOT/TTT, assault support L-hour, UAV mission area arrival time, and so on. In immediate SEAD fire missions, the aircraft event time becomes the zero hour or H-hour for scheduling. The preferred method for coordinating timing is the use of a previously established synchronized clock. If a synchronized clock has not been established or is not universally available, an elapsed time may be used to coordinate timing. See appendix D for instructions on establishing and communicating synchronized and elapsed times.

(1) Interrupted SEAD. The interrupted SEAD program separates aircraft and SEAD fires by halting indirect fires before the aircraft event. Interrupted SEAD fires are delivered during the first critical portion of the aircraft's approach phase, specifically from 1 minute before the CAS TOT/TTT until 30 seconds before the CAS TOT/TTT. This program is requested by stating "interrupted" as a method of fire and control.

(2) Continuous SEAD. The continuous SEAD program is used when providing suppressive fires throughout the aircraft event. Continuous SEAD fires are delivered during the critical portions of the aircraft's approach and egress, specifically from one minute before the CAS TOT/TTT until one minute after the CAS TOT/TTT. This program is requested by stating "continuous" in the method of fire and control.


"L-hour 1410, SEAD minus two
through minus one and plus two
through plus three."
Unprotected
Flight
1408.57
Protected
Flight

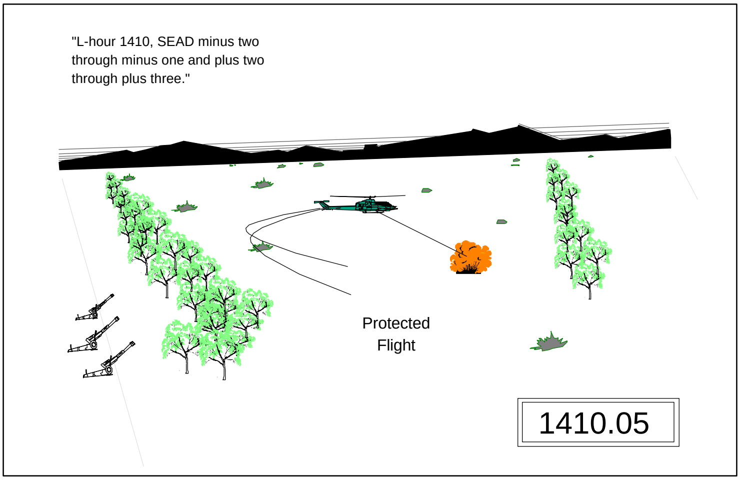

"L-hour 1410, SEAD minus two
through minus one and plus two
through plus three."
Protected
Flight
1410.05

Figure 8-7. Artillery-Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel (TRAP) Aircraft Timed Separation.

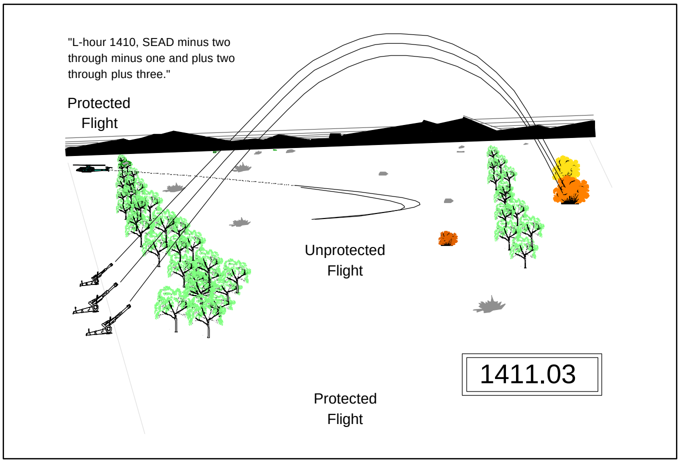


Figure 8-7. Artillery-Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel Aircraft Timed Separation (continued).

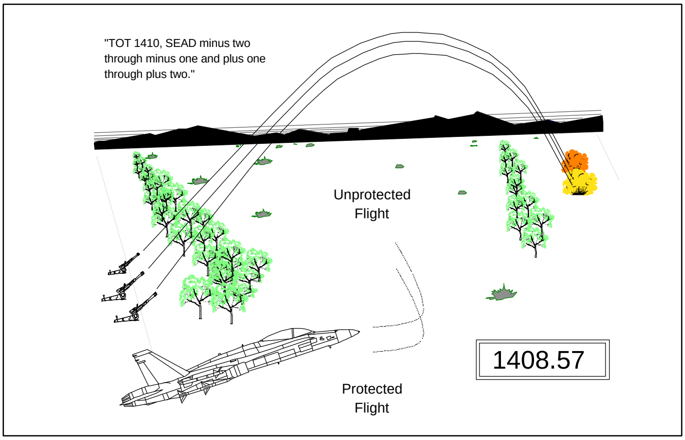


Figure 8-8. Artillery-Close Air Support Aircraft Timed Separation.

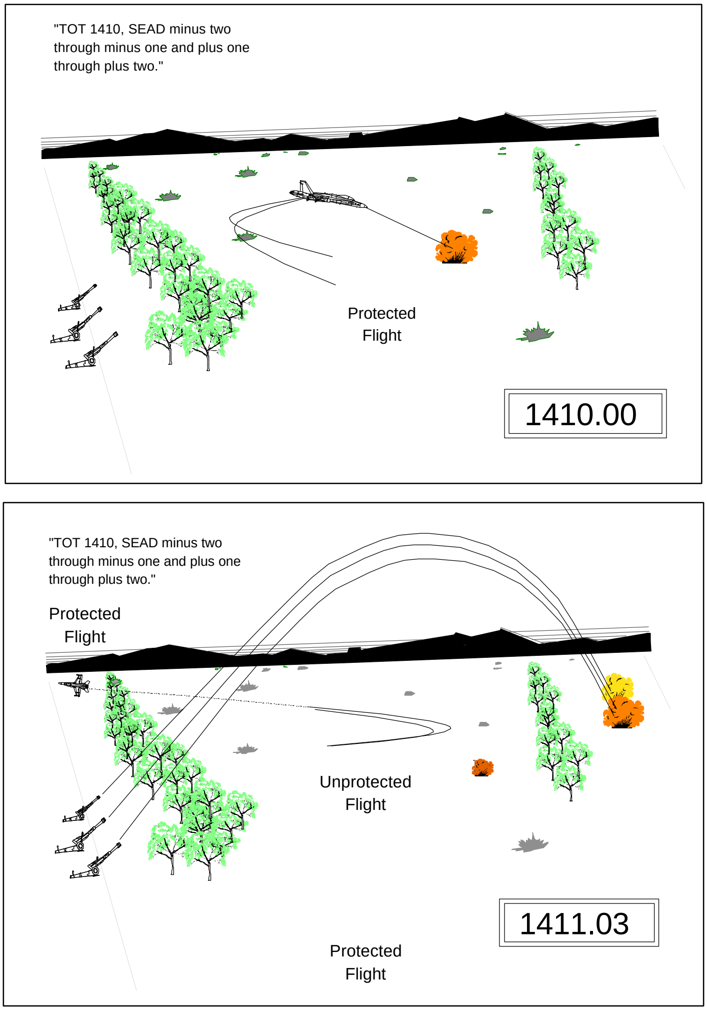


Figure 8-8. Artillery-Close Air Support Aircraft Timed Separation (continued).

(3) Nonstandard SEAD. The nonstandard SEAD program is used when suppressive fires other than interrupted or continuous are desired (specifically, for fires that begin sooner, last longer, or are intermittent). In addition to requesting “nonstandard,” desired times are specified in the method of fire and control.

> **Example**
> “Nonstandard, from minus two to plus six, additional mark at plus two.”

c. Separation Techniques. Table 8-2 summarizes appropriate separation techniques for typical CAS scenarios.

Table 8-2. Separation Techniques.

	CAS Target Same as/Near SEAD Target	CAS Target Distant From SEAD Target	CAS Crosses GTL
High-Level Attack	Altitude separation	Altitude separation	Altitude or time separation
Low-Level Attack	Time separation	Lateral separation	Altitude and lateral separation

8006. Airspace Control Measures

a. Fixed-Wing and Rotary-Wing Close Air Support. Terminal controllers, spotters, and observers must be familiar with the use of contact points, IPs, holding areas, and battle positions when coordinating SEAD fires or target marking for fixed- or rotary-wing CAS aircraft. See paragraph 4003. and MCWP 3-25/ Fleet Marine Force Manual (FMFM) 5-60, *Control of Aircraft and Missiles,* for more information on these airspace control measures.

b. Other Missions. Aircraft and UAVs conducting deep air support, air reconnaissance, assault support, offensive antiair warfare, and electronic warfare missions also use contact points and IPs. IPs are used by air reconnaissance and assault support aircraft to start a run on a reconnaissance target or landing zone. En route points and orbit points are also used by these aircraft. Aircrews use en route points to define routes of flight to and from specific areas. En route points allow specific routing of aircraft for command and control, airspace limitation, and rules of engagement (ROE) requirements. Orbit points represent geographic or electronic positions and are used to station aircraft while they await further routing instructions.

8007. Target Marking for Close Air Support Aircraft. A mark should be provided for CAS aircraft whenever possible. When one of the following marking methods is not possible, the CAS target may be identified by narrative description.

a. Laser Marking. If the CAS aircraft has a laser spot tracker, the preferred method of marking a target is by laser. The laser ensures the accurate engagement of the target by LGW but also assists the CAS aircrew in more accurately delivering unguided ordnance. Laser marks require coordinating the approach of the aircraft to correspond with the direction of the reflected laser energy.

b. Infrared Marking. Infrared pointers and other infrared devices that are now becoming available can be used by terminal controllers to mark targets at night for pilots who are wearing night vision devices. Unlike laser designators, these infrared devices cannot be used to guide or improve the accuracy of aircraft ordnance. Use infrared pointers with caution as they may expose the terminal controller to an enemy with night vision capability. Infrared marks should be initiated 20 to 30 seconds before the CAS TOT/TTT or when requested by the pilot and continue until the pilot transmits "terminate" or the weapon hits the target.

c. Marking by Indirect Fire. Artillery, NGF, and mortar munitions (specifically WP or illumination fuzed to impact on the deck) are excellent means of visually marking targets for CAS aircraft. Munition marking rounds should be delivered as close to the CAS target as possible, with WP marks timed to impact 20 to 30 seconds before the CAS TOT/TTT and illumination marks timed to impact 45 seconds before the CAS TOT/TTT. This lead time ensures that the munition marking round is in position early enough and remains visible long enough for the terminal controller to provide final control instructions and for the pilot of the lead aircraft to acquire the target. On the basis of the CAS aircraft's TOT/TTT given in the SEAD call for fire, the firing unit will determine the time to fire to ensure that the marking round impacts as required. Munition marking rounds delivered within 300 meters of the CAS target are generally considered to be effective enough to direct CAS aircraft. In case the munition marking round is not timely or is inaccurate, terminal controllers should be prepared to use a backup marking technique or rely completely on verbal instructions to identify the target to CAS pilots. If the situation requires precise marks, observers or spotters can adjust marking rounds early to ensure that accurate marks, as well as SEAD fires, are delivered to meet the CAS schedule. This may, however, alert the enemy to an imminent attack.

d. Marking by Direct Fire. Direct-fire weapons, such as the MK-19, can be used to deliver a mark. While this method may provide more responsiveness than indirect-fire marks, its use may be limited by range and the visibility of the burst in the battlespace. The MlA1 tank has no WP round and cannot be used for marking.

e. Marking by Another Aircraft. Another aircraft, such as an F/A-18D or AH-lW, can be used to deliver a marking round.

f. Backup Marks. When firing marks, backup marks should be planned. For example, artillery may be tasked to deliver the primary mark while a mortar or another aircraft may be assigned the backup mark responsibility. One consideration for planning backup marks is the difference between the TOFs of the primary and backup weapons systems. If a mortar is tasked as backup for an artillery mark, it cannot have a longer TOF than the artillery.

g. Other Means. Other means may be used to identify a target. The requesting unit may give a narrative description of the target in relation to their own position, marked by devices such as strobe lights, mirrors, or air panels, or in relation to prominent landmarks.

8008. Artillery SEAD. For artillery SEAD support of air missions, the terminal controller (e.g., FAC) coordinates aircraft routing, required suppression and marking, and timing with the artillery FO. The FO, in turn, determines the artillery firing requirements to protect aircraft from both enemy air defenses and friendly fires and passes this information to the artillery FDC in the form of a call for fire. The FSCC monitors these radio transmissions and ensures that the timing and effects of these SEAD fires are coordinated with other operations of the unit.

a. Call for Fire. The artillery SEAD call for fire is based on the standard artillery call for fire format. (See figures 8-9 through 8-12 on pages 8-22 through 8-26.) Calls for fire may include instructions for marking rounds if required.

(1) Warning Order. SEAD fire requests are identified in the warning order, for example, “SEAD,” “SEAD polar,” “SEAD laser polar,” and “SEAD shift known point.” The observer identification and the warning order constitute the first transmission of the call for fire.

(2) Target Location. Use the most accurate method of target location for the situation. The target location element of the call for fire must include the suppression target location(s) and, if required, the location for a munition marking round. Target locations are specified by stating “grid to suppress” followed by the location and “grid to mark” followed by the location. If no mark or suppression is desired, the requisite portions are omitted. The target location constitutes the second transmission of the call for fire.

Grid Example

"Grid to suppress 456 123, grid to mark 462 129, over."

Shift Example

"Suppression direction 6300, right 180, add 600, up 45, over."

Polar Example

"Suppression direction 6300, distance 2400, up 40, mark direction 6340, distance 2500, up 45, over."

Laser Polar Example

"Suppression direction 6300, distance 2413, vertical angle plus 05, over."

Immediate SEAD Decisions

Mission:	UAV high-level flight target damage assessment and reconnaissance
Targets:	One suspected ZSU 23-4; location by shift method
System/unit:	Artillery/battery one (W6T)
Mark:	None
Ordnance:	DPICM
Separation method:	Altitude
Duration/volume:	From one minute before until one minute after mission area arrival time
Timing:	TOT on synchronized clock

Immediate SEAD Call for Fire

FO:	"W6T this is D2R, SEAD, shift known point one, over."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FO:	"Suppression direction 3500, right 180, up 40, over."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FO:	"Suspected ZSU 23-4, DPICM, minus one through plus five, UAV arrival time 1430, over."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FDC:	"D2T this is W6T, platoon, 13 rounds, VT, TOF 45, over."
FO:	(Reads back.)

Figure 8-9. Example of SEAD Call for Fire Using Altitude Separation and Synchronized Clock.

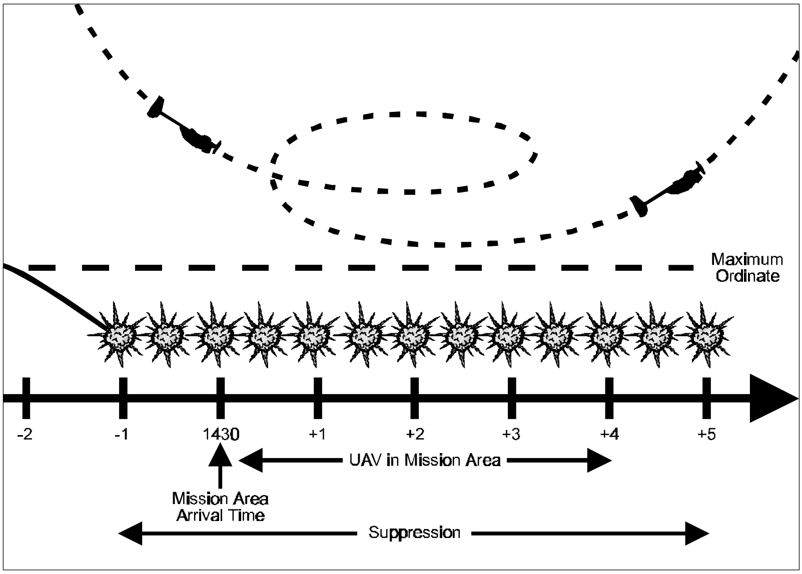


Figure 8-9. Example of SEAD Call for Fire Using Altitude Separation and Synchronized Clock (continued).

(3) Target Description. Target description is provided as in the standard call for fire. Enemy air defense positions should be identified as known or suspected to assist in developing enemy intelligence information. Target description is only given for suppression missions.

Immediate SEAD Decisions

Mission:	CH-46 assault support insert away from GTL
Targets:	One suspected ZPU-4 800 meters from landing zone; location by polar method
System/unit:	Artillery/battery one (W6T)
Mark:	None
Ordnance:	HE/VT and WP/PD
Separation method:	Lateral
Duration/volume:	From two minutes before until two minutes after L-hour
Timing:	L-hour on synchronized clock

Immediate SEAD Call for Fire

FO:	"W6T this is D2R, SEAD, polar, over."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FO:	"Suppression direction 5640, distance 3600, up 40, over."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FO:	"Suspected ZPU-4, VT and WP, minus two through plus two, L-hour 1510, over." (Reads back.)
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FDC:	"D2T this is W6T, nine rounds, VT and WP, TOF 37, over."
FO:	(Reads back.)

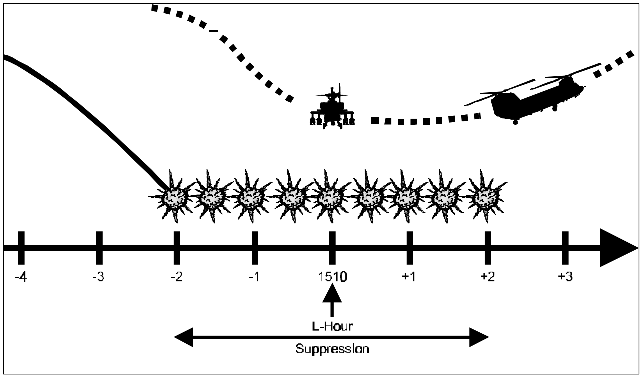


Figure 8-10. Example of SEAD Call for Fire Using Lateral Separation and Synchronized Clock.

Immediate SEAD Decisions	
Mission:	F/A-18 CAS low-level attack
Targets:	Suspected AAA site near CAS target; location by laser polar method
System/unit:	Artillery/battery one (W6T)
Mark:	Artillery
Ordnance:	SEAD HE/VT; Mark WP/PD (SOP)
Separation method:	Timing
Duration/volume:	From one minute before until 30 seconds before CAS TOT (standard interrupted SEAD program)
Timing:	Elapsed time (TTT)

Immediate SEAD Call for Fire	
FO:	"W6T this is D2R, SEAD, laser polar, over."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FO:	"Suppression direction 4170, distance 2935, vertical angle plus 07, over."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FO:	"Mark direction 4820, distance 2450, vertical angle plus 02, over."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FO:	"Suspected AAA site, interrupted, CAS TTT six plus zero, zero . . . stand by . . . hack, over."
FDC:	"Suspected AAA site, interrupted, CAS TTT six plus zero, zero, out."
FDC:	"D2T this is W6T, 92 rounds, VT, TOF 42, over."
FO:	(Reads back.)

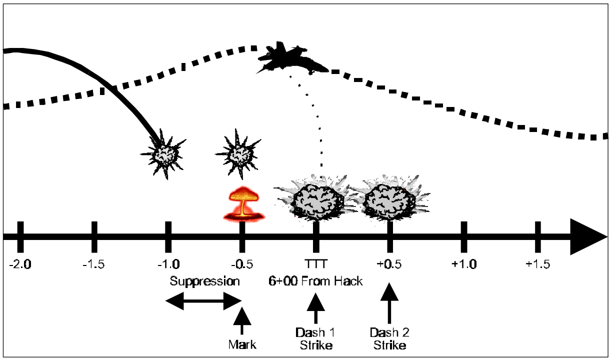


Figure 8-11. Example of SEAD Call for Fire Using Timing Separation and Elapsed Time.

Immediate SEAD Decisions

Mission:	CH-53 TRAP mission low-level flight crossing GTL
Targets:	Two suspected ZU-23s 1,000 meters beyond landing zone; location by grid method
System/unit:	Artillery/battery one (W6T)
Mark:	None
Ordnance:	HE/VT high angle
Separation method:	Altitude and lateral
Duration/volume:	From two minutes before until one minute after L-hour
Timing:	L-hour on synchronized clock

Immediate SEAD Call for Fire

FO:	
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FO:	“Grid to suppress 465 729, over.”
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FO:	“Suspected ZU-23, high angle, minus two through plus one, L-hour 1745, over.” (Reads back.)
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FDC:	“D2T this is W6T, seven rounds, VT, TOF 67, over."
FO:	(Reads back.)

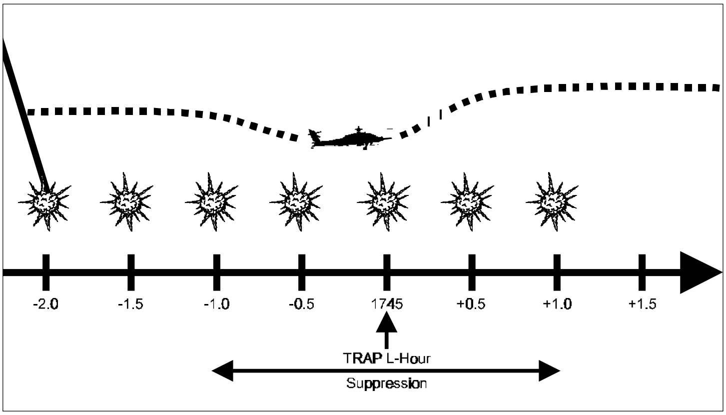


Figure 8-12. Example of SEAD Call for Fire Using Altitude/Lateral Separation and Synchronized Clock.

(4) Method of Engagement. The munition for SEAD suppression will be standardized and fired unless another shell/fuze combination is requested. Depending on the terrain and maneuver requirements, either DPICM or HE/VT will be used. Both are effective against personnel in the open (e.g., air defense gunners) and against air defense fire control and radar devices on antiaircraft artillery (AAA) and surface-to-air missiles (SAMs). DPICM is more effective in terms of size and probability of area coverage. However, HE/VT may be preferable in forested or future maneuver areas. WP/PD (fuzed to impact on the ground) is the standard munition for marking and will be fired unless another shell/fuze combination is requested. WP is a good general-purpose marking munition because it provides a reliable quick-building burst, is distinguishable from HE bursting in the battlespace, and remains visible for many seconds. Other shell/fuze combinations that may be effective in suppressing enemy air defenses and marking CAS targets include the following.

(a) Illumination. Illumination fuzed to burn on the deck is an effective mark. Illumination marks can affect FLIR systems. At night, this light is generally too intense for aircrews operating with night vision devices. Illumination can also be employed for suppression to confuse the acquisition systems of heat-seeking missiles such as the SA-7/14, SA-9/13, and SA-16. It can also produce some confusion for radar guidance systems. Illumination flares in the air during an aircraft’s ordnance delivery can confuse antiair radar and infrared-seeking missiles. The optimum HOB of the illumination flare for suppression is 300 to 400 meters above ground level in between CAS and the suspected ADA position.

(b) Smoke. Smoke can be used to hinder optical acquisition of CAS aircraft by the enemy. The use of smoke will interfere with optical acquisition systems of small arms, machine guns, and most AAA and tactical SAMs. Smoke must be positioned so as not to hinder the pilot's ability to acquire the target or marking round. If an enemy ADA unit is located well enough to obscure, it is preferable to destroy it.

(5) Method of Fire and Control. The method of fire and control includes instructions for timing and duration of SEAD fires. For immediate SEAD fire missions, the aircraft event time (e.g., CAS TOT/TTT, assault support L-hour, UAV mission area arrival time, etc.) serves as the basis, or zero hour, from which artillery fires are scheduled. Fire and control instructions include the starting and ending times for suppression fires and the aircraft event time from which fires are timed. The standard suppression times are expressed as either "interrupted" or "continuous." "Nonstandard" includes plus or minus minutes from zero hour, for example, "minus two through plus one." More than one interval of suppression fires may be specified if SEAD fires are nonstandard, for example, "minus two through minus one, plus one through plus two." Aircraft event times should be expressed as a time on the synchronized clock, for example, "CAS TOT 1305." If a synchronized clock is not available, express aircraft event time as an elapsed time, for example, "CAS TTT six plus zero, zero . . . stand by, hack," or in relation to another event, for example, "H-hour plus 10 minutes."

Refer to appendix D for instructions on establishing and communicating synchronized and elapsed times.

b. Message to Observer. The artillery unit will transmit a normal MTO. In addition, TOF should be requested to allow observers to determine that fires will impact as desired.

8009. Naval Gunfire SEAD. For NGF SEAD support of aircraft missions, the terminal controller (e.g., FAC) coordinates aircraft routing, required suppression and marking, and timing with the NGF spotter. The spotter, in turn, determines the NGF requirements to protect aircraft from both enemy air defenses and friendly fires and passes this information to the naval surface fire support (NSFS) ship in the form of a call for fire (there is no standard call for fire for NGF SEAD; the spotter tailors it for each specific mission). The FSCC monitors these radio transmissions and ensures that the timing and effects of these SEAD fires are coordinated with other operations of the unit. The NGF SEAD call for fire is based on the standard call for fire format. (See figures 8-13 and 8-14 on pages 8-30 through 8-31.) Calls for fire may include instructions for marking rounds if required.

a. Call for Fire

(1) Warning Order and Target Number. SEAD fire requests are identified in the warning order, for example, “SEAD fire mission.” The spotter identification, warning order, and target number constitute the first transmission of the call for fire.

Example

"T4R this is E3P, SEAD fire mission, target number NZ 3101, over."

Immediate SEAD Decisions

Mission:	CH-46 assault support inserted away from GTL
Targets:	One suspected ZPU-4 along flight route, one suspected AAA site 800 meters from landing zone; location by grid method
System/unit:	NGF/*USS O'Bannon* DD-987 (V4G)
Mark:	None
Ordnance:	HE/CVT (standard)
Separation method:	Lateral
Duration/volume:	First target: three minutes before to two minutes before L-hour; second target: one minute before to one minute after L-hour
Timing:	L-hour at 1510 on synchronized clock

Immediate SEAD Call for Fire

Spotter:	"V4G this is C5E, SEAD fire mission, target numbers AF 0015 and AF 0016, over."
Ship:	(Reads back.)
Spotter:	"Suppression grid 716 532, altitude 90, suspected ZPU-4, minus three through minus two, suppression grid 765 567, altitude 80, suspected AAA site, minus one through plus one, negative mark, L-hour 1510, over."
Ship:	(Reads back.)
Ship:	"AF 0015 GTL 1140, summit 1000, ready 16, over."
Spotter:	(Reads back.)
Ship:	"AF 0016 GTL 1420, summit 1100, ready 19, over."
Spotter:	(Reads back.)

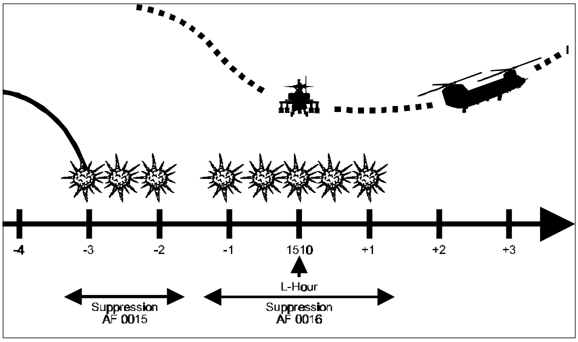


Figure 8-13. Example of SEAD Call for Fire Using Lateral Separation and Synchronized Clock.

Immediate SEAD Decisions

Mission: F/A-18 CAS low-level attack
Targets: Suspected AAA site near CAS target; location by polar method
System/unit: NGF/*USS Leftwich* DD-984 (Y2P)
Mark: NGF
Ordnance: SEAD HE/CVT; mark WP/PD (standard)
Separation method: Timing
Duration/volume: From one minute before until 30 seconds before CAS TOT (standard interrupted SEAD program)
Timing: Elapsed time (TTT)

Immediate SEAD Call for Fire

Spotter: "Y2P this is C5E, SEAD fire mission, target number AF 0017, over."
Ship: (Reads back.)
Spotter: "Suppression direction 5640, distance 3600, up 40, suspected AAA site, interrupted, mark direction 5670, distance 3800, over."
Ship: (Reads back.)
Spotter: "CAS TTT 10 plus zero, zero . . . stand by . . . . hack, over."
Ship: "CAS TTT 10 plus zero, zero, out."
Ship: "Suppression GTL 1310, summit 900 feet, ready 12, over."
Spotter: (Reads back.)
Ship: "Mark GTL 1290, summit 900 feet, ready 12, over."
Spotter: (Reads back.)

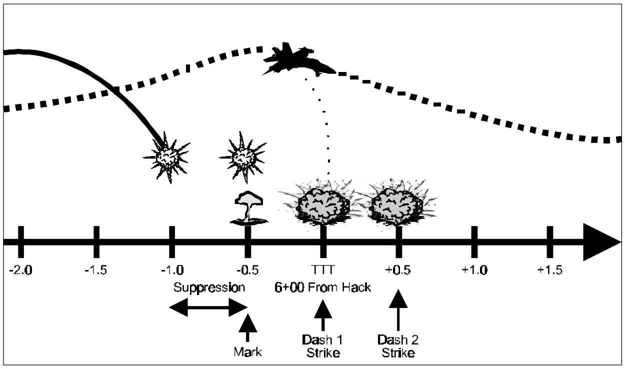


Figure 8-14. Example of SEAD Call for Fire Using Timing Separation and Elapsed Time.

(2) Target Location. Use the most accurate method of target location for the situation at hand. The target location element of the call for fire must include the suppression target location(s) and, if required, the location for a munition marking round. In the call for fire, all suppression target information, that is, target location, target description, method of engagement, and method of control, should be stated before information is given on a second suppression target or the mark target. Target locations are specified by stating "suppression" followed by the location and "mark" followed by the location or "negative mark" if no mark is desired.

(3) Target Description. Target description is provided as in the standard call for fire. Enemy air defense positions should be identified as known or suspected to assist in developing enemy intelligence information.

(4) Method of Engagement. The standard method of engagement for SEAD suppression is HE/CVT, one gun, sustained fire, interval 10 seconds for suppression. For NGF marks, the standard is WP/PD fired to impact at 20 to 30 seconds before the aircraft event time. These standards will be fired unless another method of engagement is specifically requested. The effects of NGF HE/CVT are similar to those of artillery HE/VT. Because some ships may not carry WP, illumination may have to be used as a mark. Illumination marks should be timed to burst 45 seconds before the aircraft event time and fuzed to burn on the deck. The effects of NGF illumination are similar to those of artillery illumination.

The method of engagement includes instructions for timing and duration of SEAD fires. Engagement instructions include the starting and ending times for suppression fires relative to the aircraft event time. The aircraft event time is stated in the method of control element of the call for fire. Suppression times are expressed as plus or minus minutes from zero hour, for example, "minus two through plus one." More than one sequence of suppression fires may be specified if fires on that target must be interrupted, for example, "minus two through minus one, plus one through plus two." To abbreviate the SEAD call for fire to support CAS missions, two standard programs are established for typical SEAD scenarios.

(a) Continuous SEAD. The continuous SEAD program may be used when separating aircraft and SEAD fires by distance. This program is generally effective when the SEAD target is in the vicinity of the CAS target and SEAD fires will not endanger CAS aircraft. Continuous SEAD fires are delivered during the critical portion of the CAS aircraft's attack phase and egress, specifically from one minute before the CAS TOT/TTT until one minute after the CAS TOT/TTT. This program is requested by stating "continuous" instead of desired suppression times.

(b) Interrupted SEAD. The interrupted SEAD program may be used when separating aircraft and SEAD fires by time. This program is generally effective against SEAD targets that are the same as or close to the CAS target and in which SEAD effects or trajectories may endanger CAS aircraft. Interrupted SEAD fires are delivered during the critical portion of the CAS aircraft's attack phase, specifically from one minute before the CAS TOT/TTT until 30 seconds before the CAS TOT/TTT. This program is requested by stating "interrupted" instead of desired suppression times.

(5) Method of Control. For immediate SEAD NGF missions, control instructions must include the aircraft event time (e.g., CAS TOT/TTT, assault support L-hour, UAV mission area arrival time, etc.), which serves as the basis, or zero hour, from which NGF is scheduled. Aircraft event times should be expressed as a time on the synchronized clock, for example, "CAS TOT 1305." If a synchronized clock is not available, express aircraft event time as an elapsed time, for example, "CAS TTT six plus zero, zero . . . stand by, hack," or in relation to another event, for example, "H-hour plus 10 minutes." Refer to appendix D for instructions on establishing and communicating synchronized and elapsed times.

The target location, target description, method of engagement, and method of control constitute the second transmission of the call for fire. Once instructions for a target are begun in this transmission, spotters should complete the location, description, and method of engagement for that target before providing instructions for another suppression target or a mark target, for example, "suppression" first target location, description, and method of engagement; "mark" location and method of engagement. Because of the length of this transmission, information should be transmitted as it is determined, and elapsed times (TTT and hacks) should be sent as a third transmission.

Example
"Suppression grid 765 567, altitude 80, suspected SA-6, minus two through plus two, mark grid 762 575, altitude 50, CAS TOT 1305, over."

b. Message to Observer. The NSFS ship will transmit a normal MTO including the GTL, summit, and TOF. In addition to "shot," "splash" should be transmitted to assure spotters that fires will impact as desired.

(reverse blank)

Chapter 9

Laser Designators and Laser-Guided Weapons Systems

An LGW system consists of ground and/or airborne designators used with surface- or air-delivered laser-guided munitions. These systems include laser designators/rangefinders, laser acquisition devices or seekers, laser-guided munitions, and delivery platforms. LGW systems are used by artillery FOs, NGF spotters, reconnaissance personnel, FACs, aerial observers, and aircraft pilots. This chapter will focus on the LGW systems employed by the ground observer, spotter, or terminal controller in support of the MAGTF. Additional discussion is contained in Joint Pub 3-09.1.

9001. Purpose. LGW systems provide combat units with a means of accurately locating and engaging high-priority stationary and moving point targets with first-round hit probability. They also allow for faster location and attack of the target. Artillery, ships, and aircraft can be provided with accurate target data to attack the target effectively with conventional munitions as well. The coded laser beam provides positive control between the air and the ground.

9002. Basic Requirements. The five basic requirements for using laser designators with laser acquisition devices or laser-guided munitions are as follows:

- Line of sight must exist between the designator and the target and between the target and the laser acquisition device.

- A PRF code is used for the laser designator, the laser seeker, and the laser-guided munition. Each must use the same code when operating together.

- An agreement on a direction of attack is necessary. The laser seeker or laser-guided munition must be able to sense the reflected energy from the laser designator.

- The laser designator must be designating the target at the correct time.

- The delivery system must release the munition within the specific munition delivery envelope.

9003. Laser Emission Systems. Laser target ranging and designation systems provide accurate range, azimuth, and elevation information for use in locating enemy targets or other positions. These systems vary from handheld rangefinders and pointers to aircraft-mounted designators. Laser designators provide the energy source that is reflected from a *designated* target to provide terminal guidance for laser-guided munitions. These systems emit discreet pulses of infrared energy that are invisible to the naked eye. The characteristics of these pulses are determined by a PRF code of laser energy, which can be set by a series of switches on the equipment. Laser designators/rangefinders within the Marine Corps include the MULE and the laser infrared observation set (AN/GVS-5).

a. Modular Universal Laser Equipment. The MULE (AN/PAQ-3) is a laser designator/rangefinder that is capable of designating moving targets to a range of 3,500 meters or stationary targets to 5,000 meters. Maximum range-finding capability is 9,990 meters. The MULE system has a north-seeking capability that allows self-orientation for direction, easier self-location, and readout for both grid and true azimuths. It is capable of detecting multitarget reflections. The MULE can be operated during periods of darkness or reduced visibility at slightly reduced ranges by use of the night vision set. It can interoperate directly with the digital message system. It can also be used in conjunction with the PLGR or the Position Location Reporting System (PLRS) to provide accurate observer and target location.

b. Laser Infrared Observation Set (AN/GVS-5). The AN/GVS-5 is a handheld, battery-operated laser rangefinder. It can provide only range to a target. It cannot designate targets for laser-guided munitions. The AN/GVS-5 has a 7 by 50 monocular sighting system. Accuracy is ±10 meters for distances of 200 to 9,990 meters. It can provide a maximum of 100 range readouts per battery charge. It is capable of detecting multiple target reflections.

c. Laser Target Designator/Ranger Pod. The F/A-18C/D is capable of carrying the AN/AAS-38 laser target designator/ranger (LTD/R) pod, which provides two functions. Its laser designator provides terminal weapons guidance for all laser-guided munitions and designates targets for airborne coded laser acquisition/spot trackers. The F-14 is capable of carrying the LANTIRN system. With LANTIRN, the F-14 has an accurate, autonomous designation and targeting capability for delivery of laser-guided bombs. This system is effective during the day or night and at high altitudes.

d. Night Targeting System. The AH-1W attack helicopter contains the Night Targeting System (NTS), which provides LTD/R capability, as well as FLIR visual capability and video capture. It performs the same functions as the LTD/R pod for fixed-wing platforms.

e. Illumination Devices. Handheld lasers emit infrared light for compatibility with NVGs. These devices can either flood infrared light within 1,000 meters to enhance general NVG performance or focus a small beam up to 4 kilometers to pinpoint a specific target with an infrared light beam for any weapons system employing NVGs. They are not capable of designating for a laser-guided munition.

9004. Laser Acquisition Devices. Laser acquisition devices (seekers/spot trackers) are used to acquire reflected laser energy from laser-designated targets. They are installed in aircraft for target acquisition or in laser-guided munitions for terminal guidance. Laser acquisition devices allow visual acquisition of a coded laser-designated target. They must be set to the same PRF code as the laser designator for the user to see the target being lased. There are two types of laser acquisition devices. Note that the AH-1W has the capability to use onboard HELLFIRE munitions as an improvised laser spot tracker before firing. See appendix F for all laser spot tracker-equipped aircraft.

a. Laser Acquisition/Spot Tracker Pod. The coded laser acquisition/spot tracker can be carried on the F/A-18A/C/D. Once it acquires the laser spot (target), it passes necessary ballistic information to allow FLIR or radar acquisition of the target and visual display. Desired PRF codes are in-flight selectable. It then employs LGWs or executes visual deliveries of nonlaser ordnance.

b. Angle Rate Bombing System. The angle rate bombing system (ARBS) is used on the AV-8B. It consists of a three-axis gimbaled television/laser spot tracker, which enables a view of the laser spot. It provides day or night attack and reattack information for either LGWs or nonguided bombs. The system allows in-flight selection of PRF codes but is affected by smoke or obscurants.

9005. Laser-Guided Munitions. These munitions home in on reflected laser energy during the terminal portion of the attack. Such munitions are part of the precision-guided munitions (PGM) family, which includes Copperhead, HELLFIRE, Maverick, and laser-guided bombs.

a. Copperhead. Ground or airborne designators can designate Copperhead targets. The best use of the Copperhead is against high-payoff targets outside the range of maneuver direct-fire weapons (more than 5,000 meters from the ground observer). Single or multiple targets may be engaged within a Copperhead engagement area. The Copperhead is a 155-mm cannon-launched, antitank, laser-guided projectile. The body of the projectile contains fins and wings, which deploy in flight to allow the projectile to maneuver. The Copperhead is fired in either the ballistic or shaped-trajectory mode. Upon reaching a point on its descending trajectory, the projectile acquires the reflected laser energy from the designator and maneuvers to the designated target. It has a maximum range of 16,800 meters and a minimum range of 3,000 meters. It requires at least 13 seconds of laser designation to acquire and maneuver to the target.

b. Maverick. The Maverick is an air-launched, air-to-ground missile that is available in a laser-guided variant and an infrared-seeker variant. It can be employed on the AV-8B, A-10, F-15, F-16, and F/A-18 aircraft. It can be used against field fortifications, SAM sites, and armored vehicles. The missile requires lock on before launch and continual designation during flight. Once the Maverick is launched, the aircraft can break away or launch another missile. The PRF code is cockpit selectable.

c. Helicopterborne Fire and Forget Missile. HELLFIRE is an air-launched, laser-guided, antiarmor missile launched from the AH-lW, AH-64, and OH-58D aircraft. It can be employed in indirect (lock-on after launch) or direct (lock-on before launch) fire methods. HELLFIRE can be launched in four firing modes: one missile (single), two or more missiles on the same code (rapid), two or more missiles launched on different codes using multiple laser designators (ripple), or multiple codes and designators used in a combination of rapid and ripple fire. The PRF code is cockpit selectable.

d. Laser-Guided Bombs. The MK-82, MK-83, and MK-84 are designations for the 500-, 1,000-, and 2,000-lb bombs that can be converted to the GBU-12, GBU-16, GBU-10, GBU-22, GBU-23, and GBU-24 laser-guided bombs. These bombs use common laser guidance and control subassemblies with only the aerodynamic surfaces changed to match the particular size of warhead. They can be employed in a standoff capacity. The PRF codes must be set before aircraft launch.

9006. Laser Energy Reflectivity. Laser energy is reflected in various ways, depending on the nature of the reflecting surface, the angle at which the laser energy strikes the target surface, and the laser beam divergence. This information is important in determining where the laser acquisition/tracking device or seeker needs to be to acquire and home in on the reflected energy spot.

a. Laser Spot Size. The laser energy or beam increases in size at a constant rate from its source. This spreading is a function of the designator itself and the distance to the target being designated. This is called beam divergence. Figure 9-1 on page 9-8 shows the effect of distance on spot size. For the MULE, the laser energy spot size can be estimated for any distance by using the following rule of thumb: spot size is equal to three inches plus eight times the OT distance (in thousands of meters).

Example
OT distance = 3,000 m
MULE spot size = 27 in (3 in + (8 x 3) = 27 in)

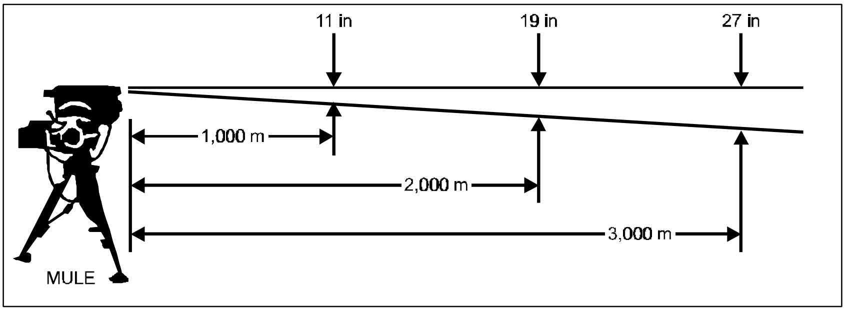


Figure 9-1. Modular Universal Laser Equipment Spot Size.

b. Target Surface Reflectivity. Targets contain a combination of mirrorlike (e.g., windshields, windows, and shiny metal) and low-reflectivity surfaces. Mirrorlike surfaces should not generally be designated because the reflective energy does not spread sufficiently to allow the seeker to acquire it. Certain materials are better reflectors of laser energy than others. Targets with greater reflectivity increase the probability of a laser seeker picking up the laser spot. Attack headings for air-delivered munitions should be outside the safety zone—the area 10 degrees (180 mils) on either side of the laser designator. LGWs launched within the 20-degree (360-mil) safety zone could receive false target indications and acquire the designator. The safest acquisition area for an LGW is more than 10 degrees (20 mils) but less than 60 degrees (1,100 mils) off the laser target line. This provides a 50-degree (900-mil) cone to either side of the laser target line for an ideal attack heading as shown in figure 9-2 on page 9-9. Terminal controllers employing laser designators must provide aircrews with an attack heading within that cone.

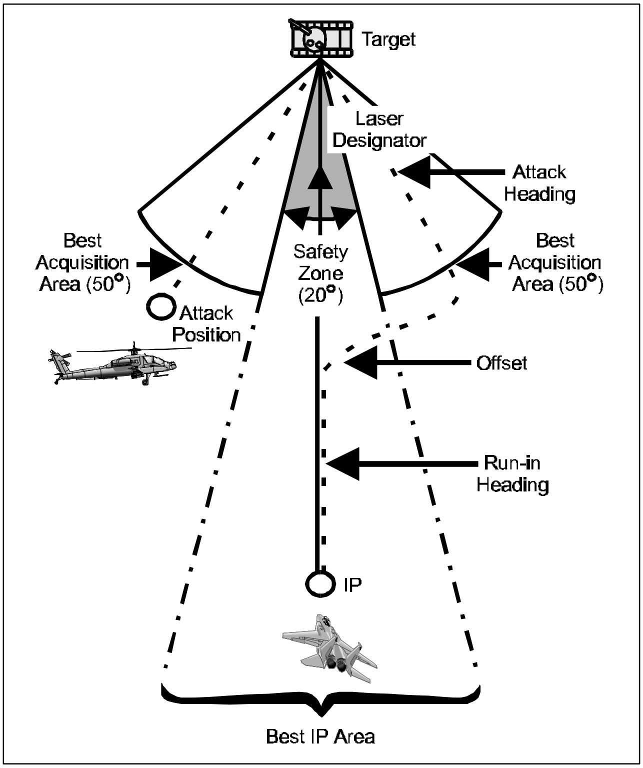


Figure 9-2. Safety Zone and Optimal Acquisition Area for Delivery of Laser-Guided Weapons.

The best results are normally obtained when designated targets reflect the beam upward and toward the incoming seeker or munition. The amount of laser energy that is reflected from a target is difficult to determine and is material dependent. (See table 9-1 on page 9-10.)

Table 9-1. Energy Reflection.

Material	Reflectivity Percentage
Brick	55 - 90
Vegetation	30 - 70
Unpolished aluminum	55
Olive drab metal (dirty)	2 - 30
Asphalt	10 - 25
Concrete	10 - 15
Water	2

c. Energy Reflection on Various Surfaces. A brief description of how the energy is reflected from various types of surfaces follows.

(1) Mirrorlike Reflections. The laser energy reflects in a narrow path from flat, bare, shiny metal as well as glass surfaces as shown in figure 9-3 on page 9-11. Any seeker looking for this laser energy would have to be in this narrow area of reflection to acquire the spot. These surfaces are not suitable for laser designation.

(2) Scattered Reflections. Laser energy scatters in a large spherical arc from flat, low-reflectivity surfaces. (See figure 9-4 on page 9-11.) These surfaces are suitable for laser designation.

(3) Spillover. Laser energy spillover occurs when the laser spot is larger than the target. It is usually caused by beam divergence but may be caused by a careless designator operator. Reflections from objects near the target may occur. (See figure 9-5 on page 9-12.) When this happens, the seeker may acquire the wrong spot.

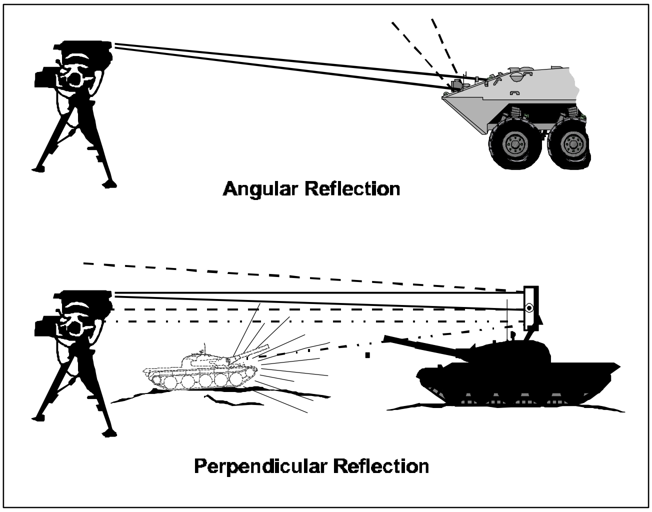


Figure 9-3. Mirrorlike Reflections.

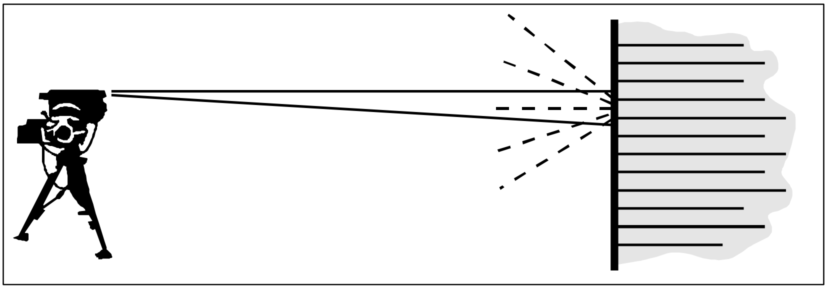


Figure 9-4. Scattered Reflections.

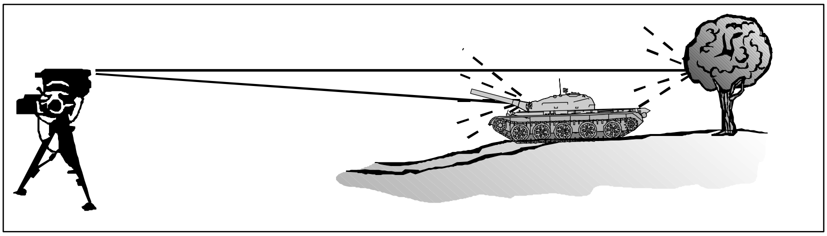


Figure 9-5. Laser Spillover.

(4) Blocked. If the seeker is not in the proper position, laser energy reflections from the target can be blocked from the seeker by intervening objects or by the target itself. (See figure 9-6.)

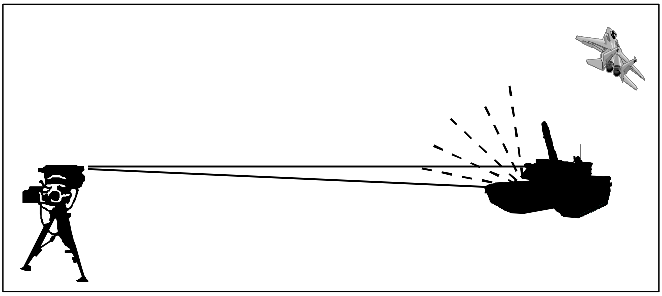


Figure 9-6. Blocked Reflection.

(5) Absorbed. Aiming the designator into tunnels and other targets causes laser energy to be absorbed. Instead, the operator must aim the designator slightly above a tunnel opening; this would allow a munition to impact at that critical point. For munitions like laser-guided bombs that tend to impact short of the point being designated, this type of designation could guide the bomb into the tunnel opening. (See figure 9-7.)

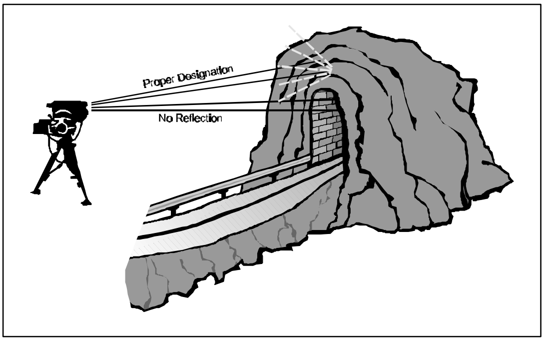


Figure 9-7. Concave Targets.

9007. Laser-Guided-Munition Planning

a. Laser Designator Planning Factors. Based on the commander's guidance, the observer must consider the following factors when employing the MULE:

- Environmental conditions
- Designator location relative to target and delivery system
- Laser designator aiming points
- Communications
- Mobility.

b. Mission Execution/Employment Factors. In addition to the five basic requirements established in paragraph 9002., the observer must also consider the following key factors when employing laser-guided munitions.

(1) Enemy Countermeasures. Judicious use of laser target designators will limit the enemy's countermeasures capability.

(2) Battlespace Obscuration. The effects of smoke, dust, and debris can impair the use of laser-guided munitions. The reflective scattering of laser light by smoke particles may present false targets. The operator can use night sight, alternate positions on higher ground, and alternate designators to reduce smoke effects.

(3) Terrain/Vegetation. Irregular terrain and vegetation will affect line of sight.

(4) Weather. Rain, snow, fog, and low clouds can prevent effective use of laser-guided munitions. Heavy precipitation can limit the use of laser designators by affecting line of sight. Snow on the ground can produce a negative effect on the accuracy of laser-guided munitions. Extreme temperatures (below 32 degrees) can affect MULE battery life and may require the use of an external power adapter. In low temperatures, placing the battery close to the body under heavy clothing will help to preserve its life. Fog and low clouds will block the laser-guided-munition seeker's field of view, reducing the guidance time. This reduction may affect the hit probability.

(5) Darkness. Targets are more difficult to locate, range, and designate during periods of poor visibility.

(6) Target Shape. Poorly defined targets such as caves and tunnels may absorb the laser spots.

(7) Seeker/Laser Designator Alignment. The direction of attack/GTL must be within the allowable mission attack angle. Laser-guided, air-launched munitions should attack the target within 60 degrees (1,100 mils) to either side of the designator target azimuth. (Some munitions may require a smaller angle.) The closer the weapon approach angle is to the designator target azimuth (provided it is at least 10 degrees (180 mils)), the greater the probability of target acquisition and hit. Copperheads require an angle of no greater than 45 degrees on either side but do not require an exclusion, or safety, zone.

(8) Communications. Positive communications between the terminal controller/observer and the delivery aircraft/unit are required to coordinate the proper PRF code, the seeker/laser designator alignment, and target designation timing.

(9) Safety. The invisible laser beam is intense infrared radiation, which can cause serious eye damage and blindness.

(a) During *peacetime*, the use of laser-guided munitions imposes strict safety requirements during training exercises. Operators must adhere to range and unit safety SOPs when employing laser-guided munitions.

b) During *combat*, the operator must take care to avoid friendly casualties from indiscriminate laser designation. Caution should also be taken in designating specular surfaces, which can cause dangerous reflected beams. The use of binoculars and similar optical devices during airborne or ground lasing greatly increases the possibility of eye damage. Ground troops in the target area should use safety goggles when working with aircraft that can designate targets. The terminal controllers must be aware of friendly front lines when planning the attack heading for aircraft ordnance delivery.

c. Seeker Lock-on to Designator. Laser seekers may occasionally lock on to the designator instead of the target. Intervening grass or leaves, for example, could reflect sufficient laser energy to cause seeker lock-on. To prevent seeker lock-on to the designator position, the designator should be masked from the seeker's field of view by terrain, vegetation, or a temporary screen such as blankets or a tarp. When the seeker's progress indicates a seeker lock-on to the designator, it may be possible to prevent a mishap by aborting the aircraft's bombing run or by turning off the designator.

d. Pulse Repetition Frequency Codes. Laser coding permits the simultaneous use of multiple laser designators and laser-guided seekers/weapons. Laser designators and seekers use a PRF coding system to ensure that a specific seeker and designator combination works in harmony. By setting the same code in both the designator and the seeker, the seeker will track only the target that is designated with that code.

(1) Code Description. The system uses either a three- or four-digit numeral system, depending on the type of laser equipment. Three-digit settings range from 111 to 788, and four-digit settings range from 1111 to 1788. All three- and four-digit designators/seekers are compatible. When employing three- and four-digit designators/seekers, the first digit of the four-digit code must always be set to one. The remaining digits of the two systems must then match. For example, a four-digit code of 1657 would be compatible with a three-digit code of 657.

(2) Code Allocation and Assignment. LGW system codes are controlled and coordinated. At the MAGTF level, different blocks of codes are assigned to artillery, air, and NGF to prevent interference between supporting arms activities. Each supporting arm then assigns codes to its subordinate units for individual missions. It also changes codes periodically as the situation requires. Subordinate FSCCs provide positive coordination of the code settings through the various fire support representatives. For individual missions, the munition delivery system (artillery, ships, aircraft) employs the codes. For CAS, codes are ultimately assigned to each flight so that no two flights are in the air at the same time with the same code. When an aircraft is on station, the pilot passes the code to the terminal controller. The terminal controller then coordinates with the MULE operator to ensure that the MULE is set to the same code as the aircraft. Individual aircraft may carry LGWs with different preset codes to accommodate multiple aircraft attacks or multiple weapon releases or to allow variation in codes used on consecutive attacks.

(3) Security. PRF codes are handled in the same manner as other classified material. Secure means should be used, if available, when the codes are passed between laser designators and the munition delivery unit/aircraft. However, the absence of compatible secure means should not normally dictate the termination of a laser-guided munition attack. In certain situations, codes will be prebriefed.

e. Effect on Mission. The adverse effects of the mission execution/employment factors can often be overcome by skillful employment of the designators. Enemy countermeasures can be minimized by aiming the laser designator at an object near the target instead of directly on target (offset designation). Laser-guided munitions can be employed against high-priority targets early in the battle before smoke and dust obscure the battlespace. Targets downwind can be attacked first if priorities permit. Use of preplanned aiming points and laser-guided munition *footprints* can help to overcome effects of obscuration, weather, vegetation, and terrain. Use of a night sight on the designator will overcome the effects of darkness and can assist during periods of poor visibility and inclement weather.

9008. Methods of Employment. Laser-guided munitions are employed in the ground and airborne modes.

a. Ground Mode. Ground laser designators identify targets for artillery, NGF, and aircraft-delivered munitions. MULE-equipped teams can employ laser-guided munitions from all delivery means requiring laser designation. Standard calls for fire are used, but the laser code must be exchanged between the ground designator and the firing unit or the aircraft.

b. Airborne Mode. Airborne laser designators identify targets for artillery, NGF, and aircraft-delivered munitions. Airborne designator systems operating in support of ground maneuver forces have the ability to employ all types of laser-guided munitions. Standard calls for fire or requests for air support are used, but the code being used must be exchanged.

9009. Employment Considerations

a. Designator Aiming Point Considerations. The range, size, shape, reflectivity characteristics, location, and motion of a target all have a bearing on the technique of employing a laser designator. When lasing a target by using a night sight device, the operator must be trained. As an example, the operator should know that the infrared signature of a target will be at the highest concentration of heat. In the case of a moving vehicle, this heat concentration will be slightly behind the designated lasing point of the target. Generally speaking, a flat surface is the most favorable surface for designation because it is perpendicular to the direction of the incoming ordnance. If there is not a flat surface, then a curved or irregular surface facing the direction of the incoming ordnance will generally be a satisfactory aiming point.

b. Technique. The distance from the laser to the target determines the size of the laser spot. To reduce spillover, the MULE should be aimed so that the spot projects partially in front of the target with the remainder on the target.

(1) Target and Laser Spot Size. If the target is larger in size than the laser spot, a point on the target should be selected at which to place the spot. The point selected should optimize conditions for spot tracking and weapon guidance. The direction from which the attack will be made and the shape, angular relationship, and reflectivity of the target surface must be considered. In situations where the laser spot is quite small, care must be taken not to aim the laser into an opening because the opening will absorb the reflected energy.

(2) Masked or Obscured Targets. If the operator suspects that the target may be partially masked from the view of the incoming seeker, he should aim the laser at a point on the target that he believes will be within line of sight of the seeker. In situations where the target is concealed, it may be necessary to aim the laser spot at some overhead or nearby object. For example, in designating a vehicle under a tree, the laser spot can be positioned in the foliage overhead.

(3) Moving Targets. In tracking a moving target, the operator may have to designate a point near the target and wait until the target moves into the designated spot. If the target moves out of sight during lasing, the laser spot may be shifted to another target in the vicinity. If the laser spot tracker or laser-guided ordnance has already locked on, the spot should be moved slowly to the new location to avoid interrupting the laser output.

(4) Survivability. For observer survivability, designation time should be minimized. Minimizing the designation time will reduce the time available for the enemy to detect, locate, and suppress the designator. The operator may lase a spot a distance away from the target and walk the spot to the target for the terminal portion of the attack. This technique is called offset laser designation. It minimizes laser on-target time and requires that the operator be advised of the progress of the attack to ensure that the spot is on target at the proper time. The operator must not move the spot through any location that is masked from view by the attacking aircraft or guided ordnance.

(5) Power Sources. Designation time should also be minimized to conserve MULE battery life. The life span of recharged batteries is variable and often short. A fresh battery should be installed when preparing to designate targets. Likewise, even under vehicular power, it is possible to damage MULE components by continuous lasing; the duration of continuous designation should not exceed one minute.

c. Designator Operator Positioning Considerations. The MULE operator selects his position based on line of sight, cover and concealment, maximum coverage of operations, and communications requirements. Next, the MULE operator determines the standoff distance. Standoff distance must be properly used when observing enemy avenues of approach and chokepoints. The vulnerability of the designators must be considered when designating point targets such as tanks, BMPs, and guns. Although standoff may increase survivability of the designator, the operator must be aware that the beam divergence at long standoff ranges could preclude effective point-target designation. The operator should select positions that are near expected locations of high-priority targets while minimizing risks to friendly forces. The site(s) must be coordinated with the positioning of other antiarmor weapons, such as the tube launched, optically tracked, wire command link guided missile (TOW) and Dragon. All antiarmor weapons, including the MULE, must be deployed to ensure mutual support and coordination. To increase survivability of the MULE, the observer should consider hardening the site, for example, with a pit similar to a machine gun horseshoe pit. Deployment of the MULE can be accomplished by manpack, vehicle, or helicopter.

9010. Copperhead Engagement Characteristics. The capabilities of the Copperhead are coupled with certain delivery requirements. These do not negate the effectiveness of the Copperhead, but are important in planning Copperhead engagements. Factors that must be considered for a successful Copperhead mission include:

- Visibility requirements
- Engagement footprint
- Target mobility.

a. Minimum Visibility Requirements. Visibility requirements include the observer's laser visibility of the target and the Copperhead's visibility of the reflected laser energy. The maximum effective range for designating stationary targets with the MULE is

5,000 meters; for moving targets, the range is 3,500 meters. Airborne platforms can designate from greater distances; however, the munition itself has a minimum visibility requirement of 5,000 meters. The operator can use the MULE to range the farthest visible terrain feature and determine its distance. If the distance measured is 5,000 meters or greater, the minimum visibility requirement is met. Minimum visibility should be updated periodically and transmitted to the FDC.

b. Time of Flight/Angle T. The Copperhead's additional visibility requirements are based on the TOF, angle T, and cloud height. During the last 13 seconds of the Copperhead's flight, the round acquires the laser energy reflected from the target and begins maneuvering toward it. The target, or offset aim point, must be continuously lased during this period. The minimum range from gun to target of 3,000 meters guarantees the minimum 13-second TOF needed to acquire and maneuver to the target. The angle T between the observer and GTL must be 800 mils or less. This ensures an adequate angle for the Copperhead to acquire reflected laser energy. There is *no* requirement for a 20-degree exclusion zone with the Copperhead. TOF and angle T are provided in the MTO for Copperhead missions. The other factor affecting Copperhead visibility is cloud height.

c. Observer Cloud Height. Target cloud height significantly affects the performance of the Copperhead round. Cloud ceilings that are too low will not allow the Copperhead round enough time to lock on and maneuver to the designated target. Besides reporting his location to the FDC, the operator must report the cloud height from his position whenever Copperhead munitions are available. The FDC uses the reported observer cloud height to compute the best trajectory for acquiring the target. If the observer believes that the cloud coverage has changed significantly, he should update the FDC. The following procedures are used to determine operator cloud height.

(1) Elevate the MULE to a vertical angle of +300 mils toward the area of responsibility. Select the range mode on the rangefinder and measure the slant range to the cloud base.

(2) Express the slant range to the nearest 100 meters (for example, 2,570 meters = 2,600). If the slant range is greater than 6,300 meters, the operator reports "operator cloud height greater than 1,890 meters." (1,890 meters cloud height corresponds to a range of 6,300 meters.) If the slant range is equal to or less than 6,300 meters, the operator uses the cloud height table in table 9-2 on page 9-25 to determine the cloud height.

(3) Enter the table on the left side with the nearest listed value less than or equal to the slant range. Note the difference between the entry range and the expressed range. For example, for an expressed range of 2,600, enter the table on the left side at 2,500. The difference is 100 meters.

(4) Enter the table from the top, using the difference between the entry range and the expressed range resulting from step 3. Using the example in step 3, the table would be entered in the column labeled "100."

Table 9-2. Operator Cloud Height.

Range (m)	0	100	200	300	400
1,500	450	480	510	540	570
2,000	600	630	660	690	720
2,500	750	780	810	840	870
3,000	900	930	960	990	1,020
3,500	1,050	1,080	1,110	1,140	1,170
4,000	1,200	1,230	1,260	1,290	1,320
4,500	1,350	1,380	1,410	1,440	1,470
5,000	1,500	1,530	1,560	1,590	1,620
5,500	1,650	1,680	1,710	1,740	1,770
6,000	1,800	1,830	1,860	1,890	1,920

Notes:

1. A similar table is on the cover card of the Copperhead footprint template set. Do not use that table because it was designed for the ground/vehicle laser locator designator's maximum elevation of +350 mils, which the MULE cannot reach.
2. The operator should report cloud height as soon as possible after occupying a position. He should then report changes only when the change in operator cloud height exceeds 100 meters.
3. An increase or decrease of 300 meters in measured slant range corresponds to an approximate 100-meter increase or decrease in cloud height.

(5) Extract the operator cloud height. Using the example in step 3, the operator cloud height would be 780. The operator would report the observer cloud height as "operator cloud height 780 meters, over."

d. Engagement Footprint. The ground surface area in which the round can successfully maneuver is limited. The optimal limit of engagement of the Copperhead round is called a footprint. The outer boundary of the footprint represents 50 percent of the hit probability, whereas the center of the footprint has a probability substantially higher than 50 percent. Footprints are roughly oval in shape and form around the target location sent in by the operator. Although a round can maneuver to the outside limits of the footprint, the greatest chance of hitting the target is when it is at or near the target location sent to the FDC. The greater the target location error, the lower the probability that the round will hit the target. The size and shape of the footprint are affected by the type of trajectory flown by the round, the target cloud height, and the gun-target range. Knowing the limits of the Copperhead maneuverability (footprint), the observer can determine which target to lase within the footprint boundary while the projectile still has time to maneuver.

e. Copperhead Footprint Template. The operator can use a Copperhead footprint template to map out or visualize the Copperhead footprint. (See figure 9-8 on page 9-27.) The template consists of a cover card and 13 template cards. The cover card contains an operator cloud height table on one side and minimum cloud height information on the other. The template cards are clear plastic graphical devices (1:50,000 scale). Each card has the shape of the footprint partially cut into the card. Also, each card is marked with the footprint letter code, the type of trajectory, the gun-target range, the interval, the average TOF, a center line, a target location pinhole, and an angle T scale. This information is automatically provided in the digital MTO.

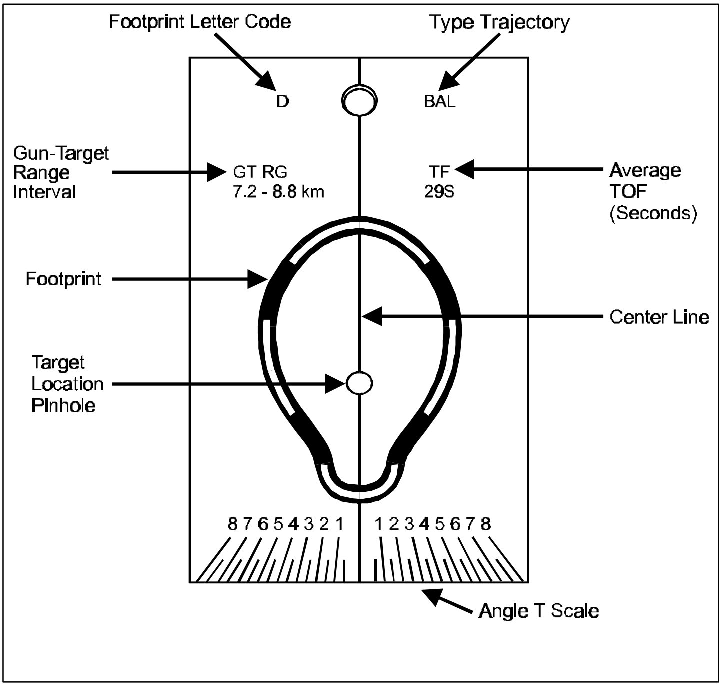


Figure 9-8. Example of Copperhead Footprint Template Card.

(1) Footprints A - D. Footprints A - D are ballistic-mode footprints. The blue color code on these sets indicates that the minimum target cloud height requirement is 10 percent of the actual gun-target range.

(2) Footprints E - I. Footprints E - I are glide-mode footprints. The blue color code indicates that the minimum cloud height requirement is 600 meters. The green color code indicates a 750-meter minimum target cloud height, and the black color code indicates a 900-meter minimum. Footprints F and H show two footprints. The smaller (blue) footprint is for a target cloud height of 600 meters. The larger (green) footprint is for a target cloud height of 750 meters or greater. For target cloud heights between 600 and 750 meters, the operator should draw both footprints and visually interpolate the size of the footprint between these two target cloud heights.

(3) Footprint L. Footprint L is a high-angle footprint. The red color code indicates a minimum cloud height requirement of 2,120 meters.

f. Selecting and Orienting the Template Card. During target planning, the operator selects the appropriate footprint on the basis of the expected gun-target range and location of the battery with which he habitually operates. For refinement, if the operator does not have the required information to orient the footprint on occupation of the OP, he should contact the battery FDC and request the needed information or the MTO for the target.

(1) Orienting the Template. To orient the template card, the pinhole appearing within the footprint is centered over the planned target location. The center line is aligned with the OTL. Using the OTL as an index, the angle T is set off to the right or left by using the angle T scale at the bottom of the template card. The center line should now be aligned with the GTL. If the operator does not have the battery location or the angle T and guns left or right of his location, he may request the Copperhead MTO from the FDC. After the template card has been properly oriented, the footprint can be drawn by inserting a pencil or other marking device into the openings on the card. The drawing is completed by removing the card and connecting the broken lines.

(2) Visualizing the Footprint. The operator can use the MULE to help him visualize the footprints on the ground. Once the operator has drawn the footprints on his map, he selects several points around the edges of the footprints and determines the direction and distance to them. He then locates these points on the ground by using the MULE. By visually connecting the points, the operator can determine the shape of the footprints on the ground. The ability of the operator to visualize Copperhead footprints on existing terrain is essential to effective Copperhead target planning. The operator uses the Copperhead footprint template and his ability to construct a visibility diagram for the areas of likely enemy activity to help him in fire planning.

(3) Estimation. Visualizing the Copperhead footprint is as important to the successful engagement of targets of opportunity as it is for planned targets. However, visualizing targets of opportunity is more difficult because of the lack of time to draw a footprint on the map. Instead, the operator estimates the dimensions of the footprint in the general vicinity of the target of opportunity. If planned target footprints have not been established, the operator selects an average footprint based on the gun-target range or TOF and visualizes it on the ground.

(4) Target Mobility. Although static targets such as command posts are not a concern, vehicles, when attacked or lased, will attempt to maneuver out of the Copperhead engagement area. The mobility of the vehicles, whether or not they have laser countermeasures, the terrain, and other factors (obstacles, etc.) will affect the amount of time and the number of targets that will be available within the desired Copperhead engagement area. Trigger selection criteria also depend on target mobility and are discussed below.

9011. Copperhead Call for Fire. The following call for fire formats are used for Copperheads. Priority planned targets provide the greatest responsiveness from the FDC, followed by planned targets and, last of all, targets of opportunity. The FDC must have the observer's PRF code, as well as visibility and cloud height of the target area, to determine accurate firing data. This information should be reported regularly, as when reporting position. Copperhead missions, like conventional missions, can be fired on either planned targets or targets of opportunity.

a. Planned Targets. Planned targets are either priority targets or on-call targets with firing data already computed. Because of its relatively short response time, the Copperhead planned target is the preferred method for employing Copperheads.

(1) Number of Rounds. The criteria for determining the number of rounds include the planned number of targets (to a maximum of six rounds), Copperhead footprint size, target mobility, and the longevity of the laser designator. Unless otherwise requested, the FDC plans two rounds per Copperhead target. The second round is prepared as "do not load" and available by requesting "repeat." The number of rounds fired may vary from the planned request depending on the situation. Based on target mobility, the number of rounds does not have to equal the number of target elements. If the target is expected to remain in the engagement area, the observer may request one or more rounds to be fired sequentially.

(2) Planned Target Call for Fire. The observer requests "Copperhead" in the target's initial call for fire or target list worksheet. When a target is detected and is predicted to move within one of the preplanned footprints, the observer calls for fire on his predetermined aim point. The observer may request up to six rounds to be fired at intervals (30 seconds unless otherwise specified). On notification from the FDC, the observer lases the first element until the round impacts. If the FO obtains a kill, he realigns the MULE on another target and lases the next round. When longer firing intervals are employed (e.g., 30 seconds or more), the observer should not continually designate while acquiring the next target. If a target is missed, it can be redesignated for the next round. (See figure 9-9 on page 9-32.)

b. Targets of Opportunity. When planned target locations are not available, the operator engages the target as a target of opportunity.Calls for fire for Copperhead targets of opportunity follow the same format as the standard call for fire. Normally, the observer uses “at my command” or “by round at my command.”

> “A58 this is A71, fire target AY 4781, over.”
> “Three tanks, three rounds, at my command, over.”
>
> or
>
> “This is A71, fire target AY 4781, over.”

Figure 9-9. Copperhead Calls for Fire on Planned Target.

> **Example**
> “A57 this is A71, fire for effect, laser polar, over.”
> “Direction 1800, distance 3450, vertical angle plus five, over.”
> “Two tanks, Copperhead, two rounds, by round at my command, over.”

If a moving target is detected outside a preplanned footprint but is within engagement range, the observer uses the MULE to estimate its speed and direction and predicts an intercept point. The intercept point is reported to the FDC by using polar plot data from the MULE (preferred), shifting from the target or a known point, or using grid coordinates. At my command is the recommended method of control when attacking moving targets of opportunity. When requested, the battery fires the Copperhead rounds at intervals of 30 seconds after the operator gives the command to fire the first round. When by round at my command is requested, the operator controls the firing of each round.

9012. Message to Observer. After the call for fire is received by the FDC and the mission processing is started, the MTO is sent. For single-element targets with one round planned and one round "do not load," the number of rounds is announced as one. The elements of the Copperhead MTO, in addition to normal elements, include the PRF code, angle T, gun-target range, TOF, and howitzer right or left of OT line. This allows for template orientation. When planning targets, this information will not be available until both battery and observer are in position.

Example
"QUEBEC, three rounds, code 241, angle T 400, range 7000, TOF 25, right of OT line, over."

9013. Trigger Points. To ensure that a moving target and a Copperhead round arrive at the planned target location/intercept point at the same time, the operator determines a trigger point. (See figure 9-10 on page 9-34.) A trigger point is a point on the ground at which the operator will command the battery to fire when the target passes over or near it.

In choosing a trigger point, the operator must consider the intended path of the target, the target speed, the Copperhead TOF, the transmission time, and the size and shape of the footprint. His first step is to determine the distance from the planned target location/intercept point to the trigger point. This is done by adding the transmission time (an average of five seconds) to the TOF received in the MTO. Multiplying this sum by the speed of the target gives the distance to the trigger point.

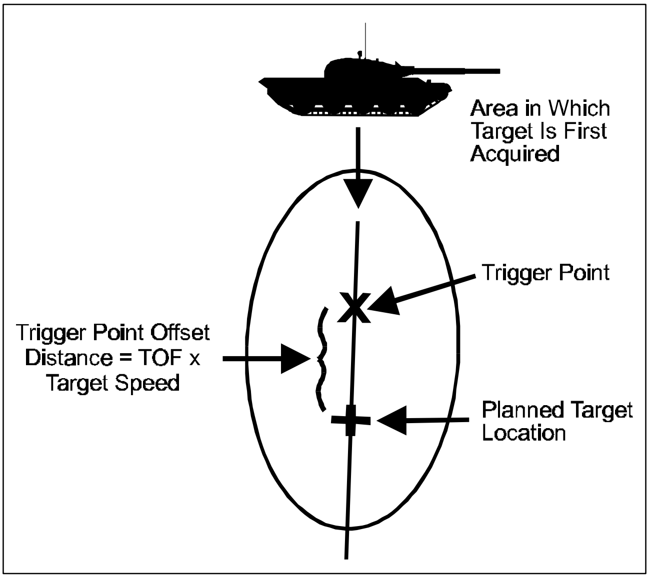


Figure 9-10. Trigger Point for Planned Target.

After acquiring the target, the operator follows it until he is sure of the direction in which it is moving. As the target moves, the operator can use one of two methods to determine its speed. First, he can estimate the speed as “slow” (three meters per second/seven miles per hour), “medium” (five meters per second/11 miles per hour), or “fast” (eight meters per second/18 miles per hour). Second, he can use the MULE to measure the distance that the target moves during a certain time interval. As the target moves, the operator lases it and converts the polar data to grid locations. By using the two locations, he determines how far the target has moved. He divides this number by the time interval between those locations to determine the target's speed (in meters per second) and the direction in which it is moving.

Example
Transmission time = 5 sec
TOF = 25 sec
Target speed = 5 m/sec
(5 sec + 25 sec) x 5 m/sec = 150 m (distance from trigger point to target)

The trigger point is determined by setting off the distance to the trigger point from the planned target location/intercept point along the intended path of the target.

With a planned target, the target may not travel over the initial planned target location. Therefore, the operator should select his trigger point so that the target will be as near as possible to the planned target location when the Copperhead round arrives.

If the target passes the trigger point before the battery reports "ready" but is still within the footprint when "ready" is received, assess the situation. The footprint represents a 50-percent probability of a hit. Determine how far the target will travel out of the footprint should the operator fire the round immediately. (See figure 9-11 on page 9-36.)

If the target has passed through the footprint before the battery reports "ready" or will have by the time the round arrives, the operator should make a bold shift to a new target location. Data for the new target location should be sent to the FDC immediately. When the operator does not intend to request "by round at my command," the trigger point becomes the point at which he initiates his call for fire. Therefore, mission reaction time must be included when determining the distance to the trigger point. Normal mission reaction times are as follows:

- Priority targets—30 seconds plus TOF
- On-call targets—90 to 120 seconds plus TOF
- Targets of opportunity—180 seconds plus TOF.

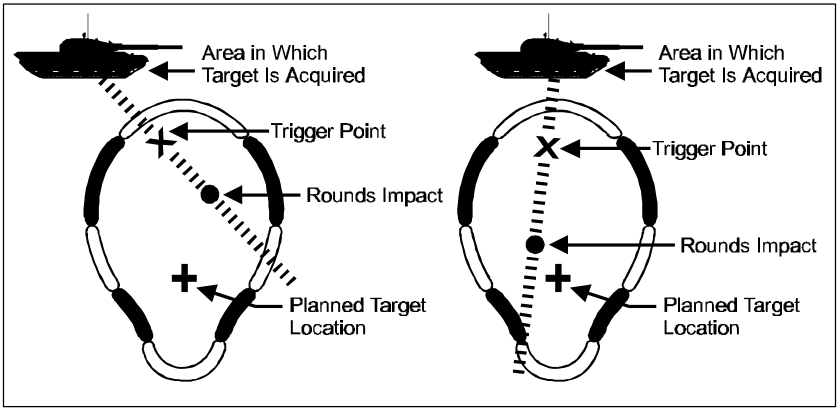


Figure 9-11. Trigger Points for Target Not in Center of Footprint.

9014. Copperhead Engagement Commands

a. Shot. As soon as the first Copperhead round is fired in a mission, the operator receives “shot” from the FDC. If he specified “at my command” or omitted the method of control in the call for fire (battery fires when ready), he receives “shot” only once. The subsequent rounds will be fired at intervals of 30 seconds without notification (the exact interval will be set by unit SOP). If the operator specified “by round, at my command,” he receives “shot” for each round fired. If an operator fails to acknowledge “shot” for a given round, it will not be retransmitted because the operator’s timing will be affected.

b. Designate. The next and most critical engagement command is “designate.” When the operator receives the command “designate” from the FDC, he begins designating the target with the MULE. The command is sent 20 seconds before impact. If the TOF is 20 seconds or less, “shot” and “designate” are sent in the same transmission. “Laser on” is used for voice transmissions.

(1) The operator must designate the target during the last 13 seconds of the TOF. Once the operator has received “shot,” he should begin his own countdown by using the TOF received in the MTO. If for some reason he has not received a “designate” message, he should begin designation when 13 seconds are left in his countdown.

(2) If the battery is firing the Copperhead rounds automatically at 30-second intervals, the command “designate” is sent only for the first round. The operator either continues designating for the subsequent round or, if designating for more than two rounds, releases the trigger while moving the laser spot to the next target.

(3) If "shot" is given for each round or if the firing interval is greater than 30 seconds, "designate" is given for each round.

c. Designate Now. If an operator fails to acknowledge the "designate" command, the command "designate now" is sent by the FDC until the operator acknowledges or until the TOF of the round elapses. If the operator fails to acknowledge the "designate now" command, "shot" and "designate" are sent on the next round fired, regardless of the method of control.

d. Rounds Complete. The FDC reports "rounds complete" after the engagement commands for the last round are transmitted and acknowledged. If the operator wants to terminate firing before the last round is fired and the FDC is controlling the firing of subsequent rounds, he sends either "cease loading" or "check firing, cancel check firing, end of mission." If the operator is controlling the firing of subsequent rounds, he sends "cease loading" then "end of mission" to terminate the mission.

e. Requests for Additional Rounds. If additional rounds are required to engage the target array, the operator may request them in one of two ways. For single-round missions, the observer simply requests "repeat" for the remaining round in "do not load" status or, after the last Copperhead round is fired, he may send, "(number) rounds repeat."

9015. Survey Control. If elements of survey (grid location, direction, and altitude) are not available, laser designators and rangefinders can be used in conjunction with the digital message system or BCS to provide the observer, or other observers, with accurate grid location and direction. The same procedures can be used during position improvement to improve firing accuracy and to extend accuracy into the target area. The most important factor in considering the accuracy of observer location and direction is the source. The ideal source for all survey is the supporting artillery battalion (common survey). The following self-location procedures are predominantly based on using known points or the observer's own directional control. If a known point is a burst or is located by map spot or if direction is obtained by compass, errors exist and will be passed on to the observer's grid and direction. Always use the most accurate means available to obtain survey control.

a. MULE North-Finding Module. The MULE's north-finding module provides the ability to locate true north and/or grid north with an accuracy of ±2 mils. The north-finding module is also capable of calculating grid convergence when location has been entered. The north-finding module has a 6,400-mil capability and can find north in less than two minutes from positions of up to 66.5 degrees latitude and in less than four minutes from positions between 66.5 degrees and 75 degrees latitude. The north-finding module will store the location even with the power off and has a built-in test for the electronics and display. For further information and procedures for the north-finding module and the MULE, see TM 08579A-12/1, *Operators Manual for AN/PAQ-3 MULE*.

b. Self-Location. The procedures for self-location use different elements of survey to orient the observer. Self-location can also be employed during position improvement to improve firing accuracy. Once established, these accuracies can be passed to other observers in the area of operations. The different procedures have different requirements and provide different elements of survey. Either a digital message system or BCS can perform all computations. Likewise, a BC scope with a laser rangefinder can be used to perform the same procedures as a MULE without a north-finding module.

(1) Trilateration. Trilateration requires the distances and vertical angles to two known points. The known points should be at least 300 mils apart and accurately located. Trilateration provides grid location and direction to the observer. It can be performed with a MULE or laser rangefinder. The observer locates himself by determining accurate distances to two known points. The observer can report these distances to the FDC or enter them into his digital message system, which, in turn, computes his location. The observer always specifies the point on his left (lase and announce first). (See figure 9-12 on page 9-41.)

(2) Resection. Resection requires the direction, distance, and vertical angle to one known point. A back azimuth is determined from the polar information to provide a grid location to the observer. Because he is using only one point, the observer must have accurate directional control and common survey with the FDC for the known point, if desired. If not, these errors will be translated into location error. (See figure 9-13 on page 9-42.)

Observer:	"A16 this is A23, perform trilateration, known points one and two."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
Observer:	"Known point two on left: distance 3180, vertical angle +10. Known point one: distance 1230, vertical angle -10."
FDC:	(Reads back.)
FDC:	"Grid 45867 32339, altitude 422. Direction to known point two: 3,095 mils."
Observer:	(Reads back.)

Figure 9-12. Self-Location by Using Trilateration.

(3) Triangulation. Triangulation requires directions to two known points (known points should be at least 300 mils apart) and provides a grid location without the altitude. If vertical angle is included in the data, the determined altitude must be verified (at least by map spot). It can be performed by a BC scope. In this procedure, the observer sends the directions and vertical angles (optional) for two known points to the FDC or enters them into his digital message system. The FDC determines the observer location and provides an altitude. (See figure 9-14 on page 9-43.)

c. Self-Location by Using One Known Point and One Burst. If only one known point is available, the second prearranged point may be established by a planned burst of an HE or WP round. The natural dispersion in terms of probable errors in range and deflection for the projectile will transfer survey errors to the observer's location. The operator should plan the location of the burst so that it is separated from the known point by at least 300 mils. Graze bursts should be used. By using the MULE, the operator ranges the known point and the burst to determine the required direction, distance, or vertical angle for each of the two points. He reports these to the FDC or enters them into his digital message system. The FDC computes the MULE location and corrected azimuth to the known point and sends the information to the operator. The accuracy of the computed MULE location and reference azimuth are affected by the accuracy of the firing data and must include accurate altitude to the burst point. The FDC should use the most accurate data available.

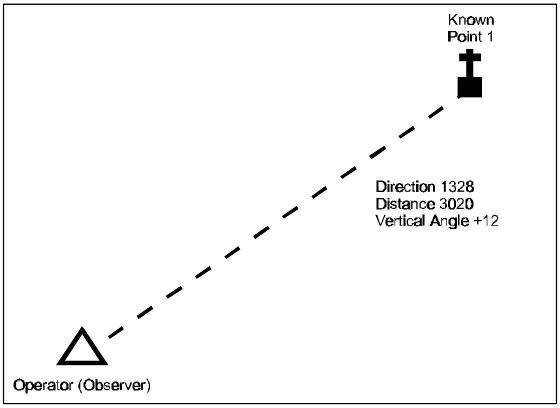


Figure 9-13. Self-Location by Using Resection.

d. Second-Observer Assistance. An observer who has been accurately located and oriented through survey or through self-location can help other observers to locate themselves. This second MULE operator can establish known points for another operator to use in self-location or can perform a simultaneous observation with the other MULE operator on two illumination rounds. FDC(s) can refer observers requiring self-location to observers with survey control to coordinate assistance.

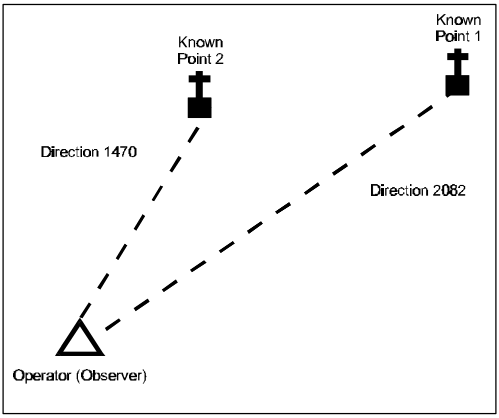


Figure 9-14. Self-Location by Using Triangulation.

e. Establishing Known Points for Other Operators. There will be times when an operator emplacing a MULE or BC scope will have no preestablished known points and no readily identifiable terrain feature that can be measured from a map. A second operator with an accurately located and oriented MULE can use it to establish known points for the other operator. To do this, both operators must be able to see a common area well enough to identify and locate objects to serve as known points for self-location. These points should be separated from each other by at least 300 mils as observed from the observer position being located. Once mutually agreeable points have been identified, they can be established as known points as outlined below.

Example

An observer (A23) has no survey control or known points in his area. The FDC (A16) instructs a nearby observer with a MULE (A47) that is accurately located and oriented to assist in establishing known points in his area. Mutually agreeable points have been identified.

FDC: "A47 this is A16, establish known points for A23, over."
Observer: "Known point four tower at grid 45627 78953, direction 0832, distance 5740, vertical angle minus nine. Known point five burned tank at grid 45752 74452, direction 0947, distance 6370, vertical angle minus 11, over."

With two known points established, the observer can now locate himself by using self-location techniques. Any error in the oriented observer's survey will be transferred to the obtaining observer's survey.

f. Location by Simultaneous Observation. An operator with an accurately located and oriented MULE can help to determine the location of another observer by performing a simultaneous observation on two illumination rounds with that observer. (See figure 9-15 on page 9-45.) The accuracy of survey obtained by the observer is based on the accuracy of the contributing observer's survey. This technique is especially useful during periods of limited visibility (darkness). Both operators must be able to see and lase the illumination rounds. Also, these illumination rounds should be separated by at least 300 mils as seen by the observer position being located. Thorough prior coordination between the two operators must take place for effective use of this technique. The observer of the accurately located MULE acts as the controlling station and initiates the illumination call for fire as outlined in the example.

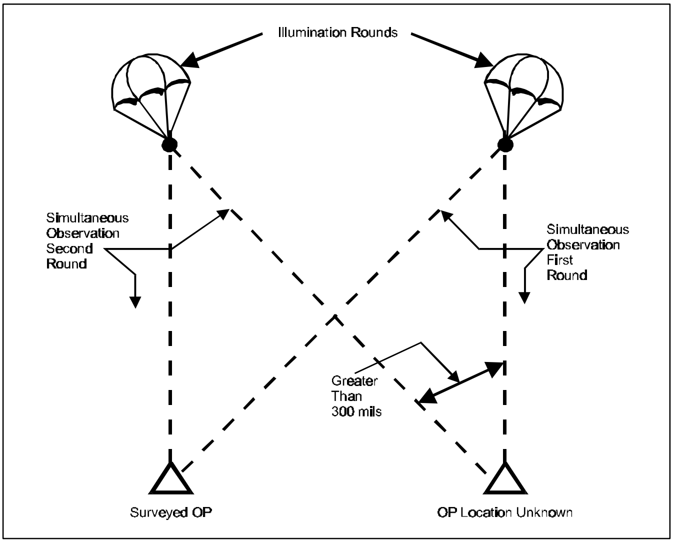


Figure 9-15. Locating Second Observation Point by Simultaneous Observation.

Example

A47 is the operator of the accurately located MULE. A23 is the operator of the MULE being located. A16 is the battery FDC. Coordination between A47 and A23 has already taken place.

"A16 this is A47, simultaneous observation with A23, over."
"One round, grid 391 516, one round, grid 374 522, over."
"Illumination, by round at my command, over."
"A47 this is A23, ready to observe, over."
"A47 this is A16, ready, over."
"A16 this is A47, fire, over."

As the illumination round descends, the operator with the accurately located MULE coordinates simultaneous lasing on the flare. He begins tracking the descending flare and has his radio operator transmit "tracking, tracking, tracking . . . lase." Once the command "lase" is given, both operators lase/range the flare's parachute simultaneously, record the data, then repeat the process with the second illumination round. The operators must use their judgment to determine whether they have received an accurate return from the flare's parachute. If one of the operators feels that he has an inaccurate return, the tracking phase should be immediately repeated before any data is sent to the FDC. The controlling observer sends his data to the FDC either as polar data or a converted grid. The FDC establishes the data as grid locations. The obtaining observer then sends his data to the FDC by using one of the self-location techniques. He can also use a digital message system once he has been provided with the grid locations from the controlling observer's data.

"A16 this is A47, point one, direction 6377, distance 4120, vertical angle plus 23, over."
"Point two, direction 6205, distance 2090, vertical angle plus 45, over."
"A16 this is A23, conduct triangulation, points one and two, over."
"Point one, direction 4095, point two, direction 4835, over."
"A23 this is A16, location 3751 4832, over."

(continued)

g. Directional Control. If the obtaining observer does not have directional control, he can still perform the procedure by trilateration. He must establish a reference point before the procedure and record the number of mils indicated on his device to that point. When conducting the simultaneous observation, he must record the number of mils to the left-most illumination round at the time of lasing. When the FDC provides direction to the left-most illumination point, he compares the two numbers, obtains a correction factor, applies it to his reference point, and reorients his observation device.

Example

Observer reference point: direction 2010
Observer direction to left-most illumination point: direction 4095
FDC direction to left-most illumination point: direction 4090 FDC direction minus observer direction: 4090-4095 = -5 (correction factor) Correction factor applied to reference point: 2010 + (-5) = 2005 Mule or BC scope reorientation to reference point: direction 2005

h. Observer Actions After Being Located. As soon as the operator knows his accurate location, he should record his location on the map and, if provided with direction, adjust the azimuth to his reference point as described in the procedures above. He should then determine polar plot data to several prominent points around his position for future use. (See figure 9-16 on page 9-48.) The digital message system or BCS can determine the grids to these points for the operator, and they can be established as known points. The MULE can also assist the observer in preparing a visibility diagram by ranging objects along selected azimuths. Defilade areas can then be marked on the map. Once the observer's position is known to the FDC and he has accurate directional control, the observer can fire for effect on targets from his location. This assumes that the firing-unit FDC is firing accurately.

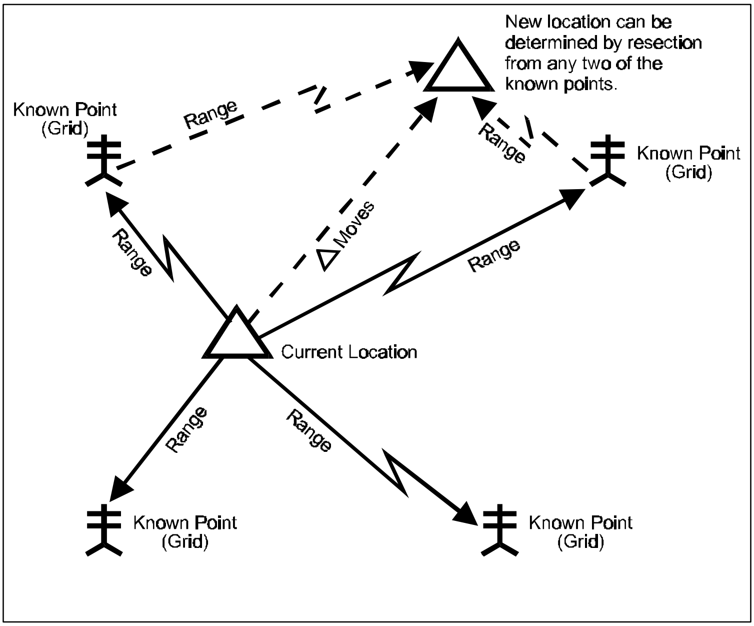


Figure 9-16. Using a Laser To Determine Known Points and New Location.

9016. Laser Polar Missions. An accurately located and properly oriented MULE, or oriented BC scope with laser rangefinder, has accurate enough target location for the first-round fire-for-effect missions. However, some of the requirements for accurate first-round fire for effect may be lacking at the battery. If the operator is not sure that he can achieve first-round fire for effect on the target, he should adjust fire by using laser polar data. If the MULE is correctly oriented, then it gives him the capability to fire for effect on the subsequent round. The laser polar adjust-fire mission is processed differently from other missions.

a. Fire Direction Center-Computed Shift. The operator sends the laser polar plot data of the burst (equivalent to a spotting) to the FDC, which computes the shift (equivalent to a correction) and, normally, fires for effect. The observer's data is transmitted as direction, distance, and vertical angle or is converted to grid coordinates. If the burst dissipates before it can be lased, the observer transmits "lost burst" to the FDC.

Example
"Burst direction 5872, distance 4350, vertical angle minus 11, fire for effect, over."

b. Observer-Computed Shift. If the supporting FDC is not automated, then the operator can compute his own subsequent correction or have the FDC process it manually. (See table 9-3 on page 9-50.)

Table 9-3. Calculation of Shift by Observer.

Procedure	Example
Compute the operator-burst (OB) distance factor. Express to the nearest 1,000 meters.	OB distance 3,480 OB factor 3
Determine the deviation shift. Multiply the angular deviation by the OB factor.	25 x 3 = 75 (left 80)
Determine the range shift (OT range - OB range). Express to the nearest ten meters.	Distance to target 3,680 Distance to burst - 3,480 Difference 200
Compute a vertical shift (if it exceeds 30 meters). Determine the vertical angle difference between the burst and the target, then multiply by the OB factor. Express to the nearest ten meters.	Vertical angle to target +2 Vertical angle to burst (-) -1 Vertical angle difference +3 3 x 3 = 9 m (10 m)
Note: The observer's correction would be "left 80, add 200, fire for effect, over."	

Example

"H24 this is H58, new target, direction 0220, distance 3680, vertical angle plus two, over."

"Battalion assembly area, ICM in effect, over."

9017. Target Shifts. Laser polar missions have the capability to conduct large shifts much like an NGF fresh target. If a new target is located, or a shift from an auxiliary adjusting point is employed, the observer prevents the FDC from applying the new location as a correction to the previous round by announcing "new target." If this is not announced, the FDC will apply the difference between the previous burst and new location in the opposite direction.

9018. Registrations with MULEs. The MULE may be used to accurately determine data for HB, MPI, or precision registrations. When the accuracy of the operator's location meets the standards for an HB or MPI registration, the HB/MPI is the preferred method of conducting a registration. If the location or direction for the MULE is doubtful, it may still be used to help conduct a precision registration. Use of a MULE in conducting registrations does not lessen the number of fired rounds required for the FDO to achieve assurance of validity.

a. High-Burst/Mean Point of Impact Registration. The FDC either requests that the observer lase an orienting point or provides the operator with orienting data through an MTO. The operator uses the MULE to determine laser polar plot data for the burst of each round fired during the registration and sends the data to the FDC. If operating with a digital message system, the observer should convert the polar data to grid. Before conducting an HB registration, the operator should ensure that safety restrictions do not prevent lasing the burst if it is above the skyline.

b. Precision Registration. In a precision registration, the operator uses the MULE to determine accurate burst locations and transmits them to the FDC for subsequent corrections. The observer is still responsible for controlling the phases and number of rounds and for recording registration points. During the time phase, the observer uses the MULE to spot all bursts but determines and transmits subsequent corrections and refinements.

c. Abbreviated Registration. In an abbreviated registration, the registration is conducted with less than the optimal number of rounds. The operator lases the burst of the first adjusting round as outlined for adjusting fire by using the MULE. The FDC computes new firing data and fires a second adjusting round. The operator lases the burst of the second round as well. This process is continued until the lased burst is within 50 meters of the designated registration point. If a time portion has also been requested, two air bursts are fired to establish the mean HOB. The operator sends corrections to adjust the mean HOB to 20 meters.

Example

"A23 this is A16, message to observer, abbreviated registration, known point quick and time, over."

"A16 this is A23, direction 6216, over." (First adjusting round is fired.)

"Direction 6327, distance 3140, vertical angle minus 11, over." (Second adjusting round is fired.)

"Left 30, add 50, record as registration point, time repeat, over." (One HE/time round is fired.)

"Down 25, two rounds, repeat, over." (Two time rounds are fired. Note that an air burst must be achieved.)

"Up five, record as time registration point, end of mission, over."

9019. MULE Employment by the Naval Gunfire Spot Team. The spot team in each SFCP is equipped with a MULE. However, there are no laser-guided munitions presently available for NSFS ships. The spot teams employ their MULEs for purposes of range finding, target location, and self-location.

9020. AN/GVS-5 Laser Rangefinder Employment. The AN/GVS-5 is a lightweight, handheld laser rangefinder that can determine the range of a target quickly and accurately. The device emits a laser burst and detects its return when the burst is reflected from a distant object. The time lapse between the emission of the beam and its return is converted to meters and displayed in the eyepiece on the range-to-target display. When accurately aimed, the AN/GVS-5 provides a range that is accurate to within 10 meters of the target. However, clutter in front of or behind the target may cause false readings in the AN/GVS-5. To ensure accurate data, the observer should associate the displayed range with a terrain-map analysis and his own range estimate to decide whether the reading is accurate. When, in the observer's opinion, all of these figures do not correlate, he should consider the following.

a. Multiple Firings. Three consistent readings generally indicate that the observer has aimed in the same place each time.

b. Minimum Range Set. Although the emitted laser beam is relatively narrow, it is wide enough to reflect from more than one target or object. The AN/GVS-5 is equipped with a multiple target warning light inside the eyepiece that illuminates when more than one return signal is received. When multiple target readings are indicated, the range displayed is the range to the first object from which the beam is reflected.

(1) To prevent false readings from an intermediate object between the observer and the target, the AN/GVS-5 is equipped with a minimum range set. Ranges to the nearest 10 meters and up to 5,000 meters may be set on the minimum range set. The range set indicates the range within which the AN/GVS-5 will not register a return. This option eliminates receiving false readings from intermediate objects.

(2) The observer adjusts the minimum range set by correlating the range displayed and his own range estimate based on map and terrain analysis. On the minimum range set, the observer can save time by establishing the maximum range beyond which he is certain the target lies before he begins ranging a target. On completion of a mission, the minimum range set should always be set back to zero.

c. Adjustment of Fire. Lateral and vertical shifts in the adjustment of fire are computed by using the mil relation in the same way as for adjustment of fire using binoculars. Range adjustments are made by using the difference in range between the target and the burst and making the correction in the appropriate direction.

d. Target Location. The distance provided by the AN/GVS-5 should always be used with the most accurate available direction to the target and a quick, but thorough, map analysis. The observer should remember that the AN/GVS-5 is designed to help him refine distances. Therefore, the distances determined by the device should always be correlated with known information before target location is produced.

Appendix A

Target Analysis and Munitions Effects

1. Observer Responsibilities. As the eyes of indirect-fire supporting arms, artillery FOs, mortar FOs, and NGF spotters must properly describe the target to the firing unit. Additionally, FOs must recommend and NGF spotters must decide on the best method of attack based on the size, type, and posture of the target.

2. Target Analysis. A target must be analyzed to determine its weak points. The decision as to where the target is most vulnerable and what fires will best exploit its weaknesses is influenced by the degree of damage desired. On the basis of the commander's guidance, the observer must determine the degree of effects needed. In analyzing a target, the observer should consider the following. (See tables A-1 and A-2 on pages A-2 through A-4.)

3. Effects Sought. In analyzing the target, the observer must consider the effects sought. The three categories of target effects sought are suppression, neutralization, and destruction.

a. Suppression. Suppression of a target limits the ability of enemy personnel to perform their mission. This type of fire is used against likely, suspected, or inaccurately located enemy units where time is essential. It can be delivered by small delivery units. Various munitions can be used to cause suppressive results, such as HE or smoke. The effect of suppressive fires lasts only as long as the duration of fires and does not damage the target.

Table A-1. Target Characteristics and Considerations.

Target Characteristics	Considerations
Composition	Indicates achievable destructive or incendiary effects.
Size and shape	May require special sheaf, multiple aim points.
Vulnerability	Affects weapon selection.
Mobility	May affect weapon/ammunition selection because of required response time.
Resiliency	May affect decision to engage.
Location	May affect weapon selection because of proximity to friendly forces; accuracy will affect volume of fire to achieve desired effects.

Table A-2. Environmental Characteristics and Considerations.

Environmental Characteristics	Considerations
Weather	Restricts/prohibits use of some weapons/munitions. For example, clouds and fog may affect the use of lasers and some aircraft/ordnance. Wind affects attacking targets with smoke, ICM, FASCAM, or illumination projectiles.
Terrain	Rugged terrain reduces vulnerability of targets and increases volume of fire for desired effects. Overhead vegetation reduces effectiveness of some munitions and requires delay fuze action. Orientation of terrain features in the target area may require repositioning of firing units or high-angle fires.

Urbanized areas	ICM and HE/VT should be reserved for firing at personnel on rooftops and targets in the open. High-angle fires should be employed for targets in defilade. HE/Q or concrete piercing (CP) is effective for rubbling and covered targets. HE/delay is not effective for mortar or brick penetration. (Use HE/Q or CP.) Are conducive to illumination and incendiary munitions. Allow use of FASCAM to close routes.
Mountainous areas	Require high-angle fires to attack defilade targets. Increase lethality of HE in hard, rocky surfaces. Reduce effectiveness of WP, ICM, and FASCAM in deep snow and wooded areas. Make unobserved fires less accurate in changing atmospheric conditions.
	Enhance air bursts on reverse slopes. Allow use of FASCAM to compartmentalize or close routes. Are conducive to rock slides. Offer opportunity for CAS to attack targets on reverse slopes and steep slopes.

Jungle areas	Reduce effects of most munitions because of vegetation. Restrict employment of bomblet submunitions (ICM, CBUs) because of overhead cover. Promote fires in proximity to friendly forces.
Desert areas	Reduce effectiveness of unobserved fires due to target dispersion. Increase use of smoke for screening; however, atmospheric conditions reduce duration of smoke screens.
Arctic areas	Slow rates of fire. Cause ICM, FASCAM, and HE/Q to be less effective because of deep snow and mud. Allow the best results for air bursts. Reduce smoke effectiveness. Cause resupply of ammunition expenditure to be controlled because of difficulty of resupply.

b. Neutralization. Neutralization of a target, in addition to suppressing it, knocks the target out of the battle temporarily. Personnel casualties or weapons systems damages of 10 percent or more are considered to neutralize a unit. A damaged weapons system has significantly degraded performance until repairs are made. Examples include a firepower kill, such as a destroyed main sight or gun, or a mobility kill from a damaged engine or tread. The unit or target can become effective again when the casualties are replaced and the damage is repaired. The assets required to neutralize a target vary according to the type and size of the target and the weapon/ammunition combination used.

c. Destruction. Destruction requires a target to be completely reconstituted or replaced. It is defined differently for units and individual weapons systems. In terms of units, it is a larger amount of casualties or damage. Casualties or system damages of 30 percent (as defined in mobility, firepower, and crew-kill neutralization) inflicted during a short time span are considered to render a unit destroyed. Destruction of an individual weapons system occurs when it suffers both a firepower and mobility kill, a crew kill, or a catastrophic kill. With precision destruction missions, direct hits are used to destroy hard materiel targets.

4. Ammunition and Its Effects. This paragraph discusses ammunition for indirect-fire weapons. (Ammunition for CAS is discussed in chapter 4.)

a. Projectiles

(1) High Explosive. The HE projectile is a hollow shell filled with trinitrotoluene (TNT) or Composition B. When detonated by a PD, delay, VT, or mechanical time fuze, bursts cause fragmentation and blast over a wide area. It is most often used by the observer in adjustment. Shell HE is effective against personnel, vehicles, and material. HE/VT from artillery and NGF is also effective against stationary armored vehicles. Shell HE is fired by mortars, artillery, and NGF.

(2) White Phosphorus. The WP shell is a burster-chemical-type projectile. Its hollow shell bursts on impact by an internal charge that expels burning WP over a limited area. This shell is used for marking, screening, obscuring, and incendiary effects. It is used against vehicles; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) and ammunition storage areas; and enemy observers. The WP shell is most commonly fired with an impact fuze. However, it may be fired with fuze time to obtain an air burst. It cannot be fired with fuze VT. The WP shell can be fired by mortars, artillery, and NGF.

(3) Illumination. This is a base-ejecting-type projectile. A canister containing burning illuminant is ignited and expelled in a small parachute. This projectile is used for battlespace illumination or marking. Illumination can be fired by mortars, artillery, and NGF.

(4) Hexachloroethane Smoke. Shell smoke is a base-ejection projectile that is filled with canisters that emit smoke. The smoke projectile is more effective than WP in screening because it has less of a tendency to pillar. This projectile can be fired from all artillery weapons except the eight-inch howitzer.

(5) Felt-Wedge Smoke. The HC smoke projectile has been replaced with the M825 improved smoke round. The M825 is a base-ejection projectile that uses felt wedges impregnated with WP to create uniform dispersion of smoke over an area. The M825 provides 5 to 10 minutes of smoke over a large area. Unburned wedges can cause a hazard to friendly forces; therefore, caution must be exercised when operating in these areas. The M825 is delivered by 155-mm artillery weapons.

(6) Family of Scatterable Mines. FASCAM artillery shells are used to deliver antipersonnel (ADAM) or antitank mines (RAAMS) against an enemy force. The FASCAM shells are delivered by 155-mm artillery weapons.

(7) Copperhead. The Copperhead is a cannon-launched guided projectile. It consists of a 14.5-pound shaped charge that is capable of penetrating most armor and destroying point targets. (See chapter 9.)

(8) Improved Conventional Munitions. The ICM shell is a base-ejection projectile that consists of a mechanical time fuze and a body assembly containing grenades. When the fuze functions, the grenades are dispersed over a large area. There are two types of ICM: dual purpose and antipersonnel. APICM is no longer in production. The DPICM is produced in two artillery munitions, M483A1, called ICM, and M864, called base burn ICM. It is very effective against exposed troops and vehicles. It is also effective against armored vehicles. ICM projectiles can be fired by artillery and rocket systems.

(9) High Capacity. The high-capacity projectile is a fragmenting round that can also produce penetration effects. The projectile may have multiple fuzes, including a nose fuze. The fuzes are a nose plug; a PD or mechanical time fuze; an auxiliary detonating fuze, which is an intermediate detonating device to magnify the explosion of the nose fuze; and a base detonating fuze with a delay arming action. The high-capacity projectile is fired by the five-inch naval gun.

b. Fuzes. See figure A-1 on page A-9 for examples of fuze actions.

(1) Fuze Quick. Fuze quick is a PD fuze that functions on impact. It is fired from all indirect-fire weapons (artillery, mortars, NGF) with the HE projectile (most commonly in adjustment) or WP projectile. Fuze quick loses its effect if troops are in trenches, on uneven ground, or on earthworks. It is used against personnel who are standing, personnel who are prone on the ground, armored vehicles, and light material.

(2) Fuze Delay. A fuze delay is a 0.05-second delay that can be set on the quick fuze to allow either ricochet fire or penetration. The observer should use fuze delay for penetration if he wants to fire into dense woods or against light earthworks or nonmasonry buildings. Fuze delay is not effective against concrete or brick (use CP or quick). Fuze delay can be used in conjunction with a ricochet. A ricochet causes a low air burst when there is a small angle of impact on a hard surface. Ricochets are particularly common when firing high charges in artillery or when firing NGF.

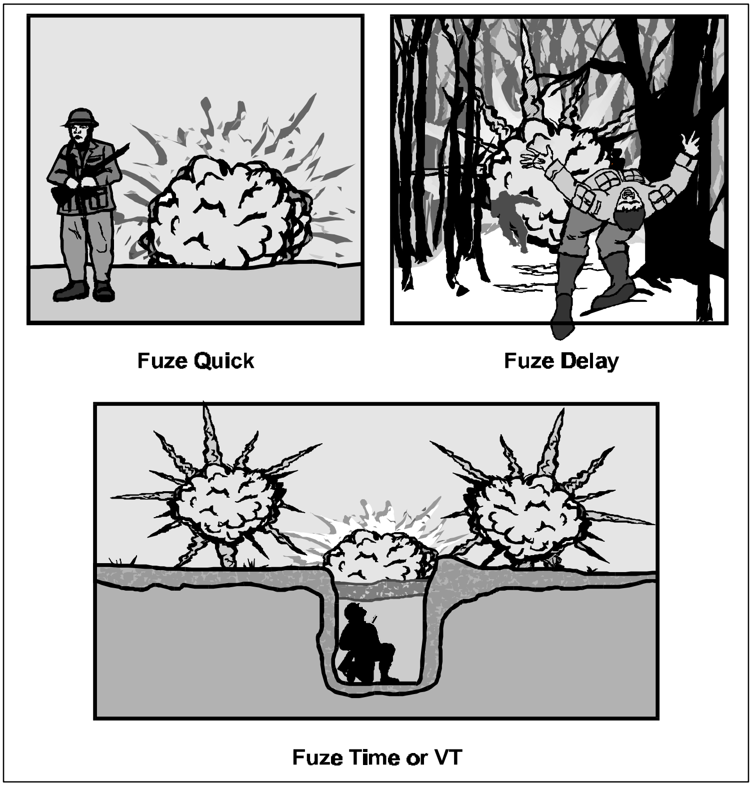


Figure A-1. Fuze Actions.

(3) Mechanical Time Fuzes. The time fuze functions in the air at a given time along the trajectory. It requires adjustment to achieve the proper 20-meter HOB when used with HE or WP. Therefore, another shell/fuze combination should be considered if time is critical and air bursts are desired. Fuze time should never be used for high-angle missions. Time fuzes are used with HE and WP against troops in the open, in trenches, or in fighting holes; vehicles; and materiel. It can be fired by all artillery weapons and NGF. Time fuzes are also used for payload munitions such as illumination, smoke, M825 smoke, and ICM projectiles.

(4) Proximity Variable Time Fuzes. Proximity VT fuzes are radio activated for detonation at a seven-meter HOB. A VT fuze provides a more effective air burst than fuze time and does not have to be adjusted. It is an excellent fuze to fire with shell HE for fire-for-effect missions, unobserved fires, or high-angle fires. It should be used in missions conducted by an aerial observer when an air burst is desired. It is used against all targets that can be attacked with fuze time. Fuze VT can be fired with HE projectiles by all artillery weapons, mortars, and the five-inch naval gun. Various proximity fuzes exist in the NGF inventory.

(5) Controlled Variable Time. CVT fuzes have an adjustable arming feature that prevents the fuze from arming until the set time has elapsed. Therefore, it provides more safety when firing over friendly troops. The CVT fuze is available for NGF HE projectiles. It is the preferred proximity fuze for NGF.

(6) Other Variable Time Fuzes. Other versions of the VT fuze exist in the NGF inventory, for example, variable time-radio frequency (VT-RF) and variable time-infrared (VT-IR).

(7) Concrete-Piercing Fuze. CP fuzes are used with artillery and NGF HE projectiles for attack of concrete structures or earth- and log-reinforced emplacements. The two types of CP fuzes are nondelay and delay. Nondelay is used primarily for spotting or for clearing rubble and shattering concrete. Delay is used to destroy the concrete target.

Table A-3 provides a guide for selecting weapons to attack various targets.

Table A-3. Guide for the Attack of Targets.

Target	Weapon/Ordnance
Personnel: In the open	Mortar—HE/Q or VT Artillery—HE/Q, VT, or time; DPICM NGF—HE/Q, time, or VT Air—general purpose, fuel air explosive, cluster, firebombs, guns
In fighting holes	Mortar—HE/VT Artillery—HE/VT or time NGF—HE/VT or time Air—fuel air explosive, general purpose, cluster
Under light cover	Mortar—HE-delay Artillery—HE-delay or HE/Q/VT mix NGF—HE-delay Air—general purpose, rockets, guns, cluster
Under heavy cover (concrete bunkers)	Artillery—HE-CP, HE/Q, Copperhead NGF—armor piercing or HE-delay Air—general purpose, guided weapons
Armored vehicles:	Mortar—HE/Q or VT Artillery—HE/Q, VT, or time; DPICM; Copperhead NGF—HE/Q or delay Air—guided weapons, general purpose, rockets, guns, cluster

Field artillery:	Artillery—DPICM, HE/VT, WP, FASCAM NGF—HE/Q or VT, WP Air—cluster, guided weapons, general-purpose bombs
Antiaircraft artillery: Automatic	 Mortar—HE/VT, WP Artillery—DPICM, HE/VT, WP, smoke NGF—HE/Q or VT, WP Air—cluster, guided weapons, general-purpose bombs, firebombs, guns
Self-propelled	Same as armored vehicles
Missile launchers:	Mortar—HE/VT Artillery—DPICM, HE/VT NGF—HE/Q or VT Air—missiles, guided and cluster weapons, general purpose, firebombs
Radar installations:	Mortar—HE/Q or VT Artillery—DPICM, HE/Q or VT NGF—HE/Q or VT Air—missiles, guided/cluster weapons, general purpose, fuel air explosive, guns, rockets
Field fortifications:	Mortar—HE-delay, WP Artillery—HE-CP or delay, DPICM, WP NGF—HE-CP or delay, HE/Q, WP Air—general purpose, guided bombs, rockets
Supply depots/dumps:	Mortar—HE/VT, WP Artillery—HE/VT or time, DPICM, WP NGF—HE/VT or time, WP Air—cluster, firebombs, general purpose, guided bombs, rockets
Land transportation: Roads	 Mortar—HE-delay Artillery—HE-delay or CP, FASCAM NGF—HE-delay or CP Air—general-purpose bombs

Trucks	Mortar—HE/Q or VT, WP Artillery—HE/Q or VT, DPICM, WP NGF—HE/Q or VT, WP Air—guided missiles and cluster weapons, general purpose, guns, rockets
Buildings:	Mortar—HE-delay, HE/Q or VT, WP Artillery—HE-CP or delay, HE/Q, WP NGF—HE-CP or delay, HE/Q, WP Air—guided bombs and missiles, general purpose

(reverse blank)

Appendix B

Crater Analysis

1. General. Whenever and wherever hostile cannon, missile, or mortar shelling is detected, it must be reported without delay to the appropriate S-2. The S-2 can then evaluate and act on such information. When counterfire agencies are provided with sufficient information, they can implement immediate operational objectives to ensure the successful attack of hostile weapons. Observers and liaison personnel should be capable of conducting crater analysis.

Shelling reports (SHELREPs) form the basis for effective counterfire action. The most reliable, accurate, and informative SHELREPs are visual or electronic observation supplemented by crater analysis and fragment identification.

2. Procedures for Crater Analysis. The observer can determine the direction of fire of an enemy projectile with reasonable accuracy by analyzing its crater or ricochet furrow. The observer can obtain weapon location by plotting the intersection of the back-azimuth rays from two or more widely separated craters caused by projectiles fired from the same weapon. Essentially, crater analysis involves determining the axis of the crater, marking the axis, and measuring the azimuth of the axis to the weapon.

The initial step in crater analysis is to locate a suitable crater for use in determining the direction to the hostile weapon. The crater should be clearly defined on the ground and should be reasonably fresh.

Because the crater is the beginning point for plotting direction to the enemy weapon, the observer should determine grid coordinates of the crater as precisely as the time and the method used will allow. The observer must collect shell fragments to identify the type and caliber of the weapon. The observer must determine direction to the firing weapon by using one of the methods described below.

3. Artillery Shell Craters

a. Fuze Quick Craters. The detonation of a projectile causes an inner crater. The burst and momentum of the shell carry the effect forward and to the sides, forming an arrow that points to the rear (toward the weapon from which the round was fired). The fuze continues along the line of flight, creating a fuze furrow (groove in the ground). There are two methods of obtaining a direction to a hostile weapon from this type of crater. The observer can obtain the best results by determining a mean or average of several directions from both methods.

(1) Fuze Tunnel and Center of Crater Method. In this method, one stake is placed in the center of the crater and another is placed in the furrow at the point where the fuze was blown forward to the front of the crater. (See figure B-1 on page B-3.) A direction-measuring instrument is set up in line with the two stakes, and the direction is measured to the hostile weapon. There are five steps of the fuze tunnel and center of crater method:

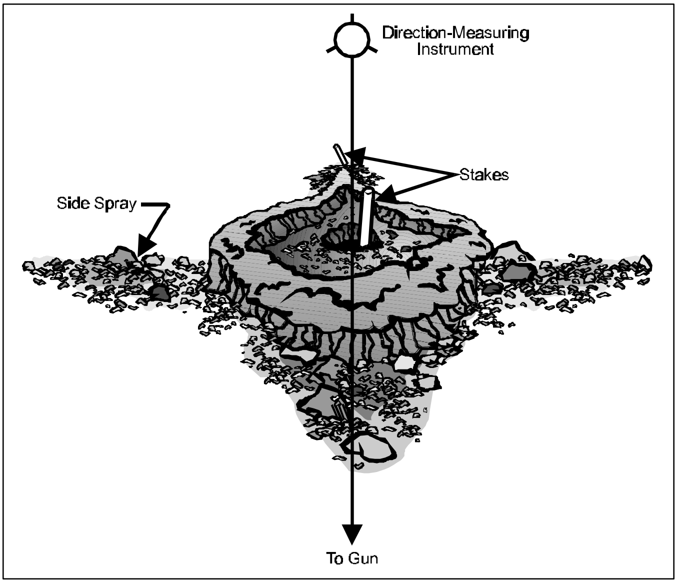


Figure B-1. Fuze Tunnel and Center of Crater Method.

- Step one—Place a stake in the center of the crater.
- Step two—Place a second stake in the fuze furrow.
- Step three—Set up a direction-measuring instrument (i.e., compass, aiming circle) in line with the stakes and away from fragments.
- Step four—Orient the instrument.
- Step five—Measure the direction to the hostile weapon.

(2) Variation of the Fuze Tunnel and Center of Crater Method. A variation of this method is to place a stake where the shell entered the ground instead of in the center of the crater and determine the direction in the same manner. However, this is rarely possible because indications of the point of entry are usually destroyed by the explosion of the shell.

(3) Side Spray Method. The side spray method involves bisecting the angle formed by the lines of the side spray by striking arcs. (See figure B-2.) The seven steps in measuring the direction of a fuze quick crater by the side spray method are as follows:

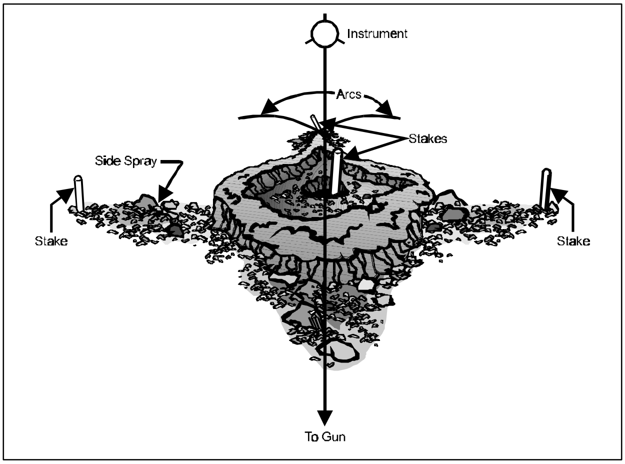


Figure B-2. Side Spray Method.

- Step one—Place a stake in the center of the crater.

- Step two—Place two stakes, one at the end of each line of side spray, equidistant from the center stake.

- Step three—Hold a length of WD-1 wire to each side-spray stake, and strike an arc forward of the fuze furrow.

- Step four—Place a stake where these arcs intersect.

- Step five—Set up a direction-measuring instrument in line with the stake at the intersection of the arcs and the center stake.

- Step six—Orient the instrument.

- Step seven—Measure the direction to the firing weapon.

b. Fuze Delay Craters. There are two types of fuze delay craters—ricochet and mine action.

(1) Ricochet. The projectile enters the ground in a line following the trajectory and continues in a straight line for a few feet, causing a ricochet furrow. The projectile normally deflects upward and at the same time changes direction. The change in direction usually is to the right as a result of the spin or rotation of the projectile. The effect of the air burst can be noted on the ground. (See figure B-3 on page B-6.) Directions obtained from ricochet craters are considered to be most reliable. The five steps in determining direction from a ricochet furrow are as follows:

- Step one—Clean out the furrow.

- Step two—Place stakes at each end of a usable straight section of the furrow.

- Step three—Set up an instrument in line with the stakes and away from the fragments.
- Step four—Orient the instrument.
- Step five—Measure the direction to the weapon.

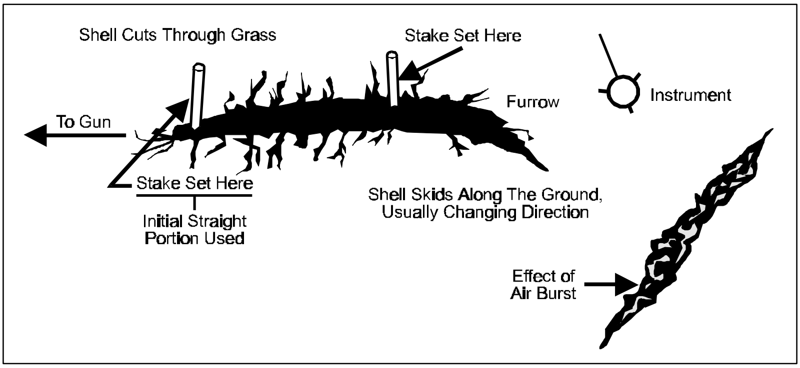


Figure B-3. Ricochet Furrow Method.

(2) Mine Action. Mine action occurs when a shell bursts beneath the ground. Occasionally, such a burst will leave a furrow that can be analyzed in the same manner as the ricochet furrow. A mine action crater that does not have a furrow cannot be used to determine the direction to the weapon.

4. Mortar Shell Craters. In a typical mortar crater, the turf at the forward edge (the direction away from the hostile mortar) is undercut (cut beneath with a portion left overhanging). The rear edge of the crater is rid of vegetation and grooved with splinters.

(See figure B-4.) When fresh, the crater is covered with loose earth that must be carefully removed to disclose the burnt inner crater. The ground surrounding the crater is streaked by splinter grooves that radiate from the point of detonation. The ends of the splinter grooves on the rearward side are on an approximately straight line. This line is perpendicular to the line of flight when on level ground or on slopes with contours perpendicular to the plane of fire. (See figure B-5 on page B-8.) A fuze tunnel is caused by the fuze burying itself at the bottom of the crater in front of the point of detonation. Three methods may be used to determine direction from a mortar shell crater—main axis, splinter groove, and fuze tunnel.

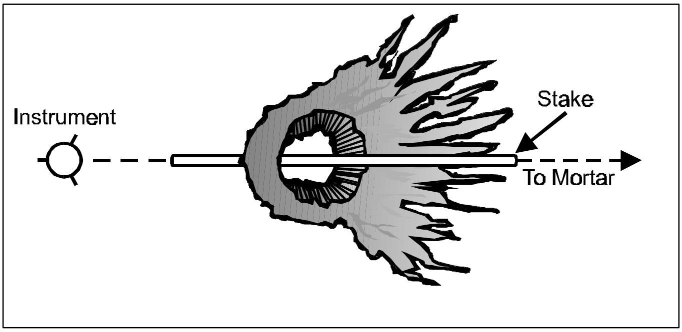


Figure B-4. Main Axis Method.

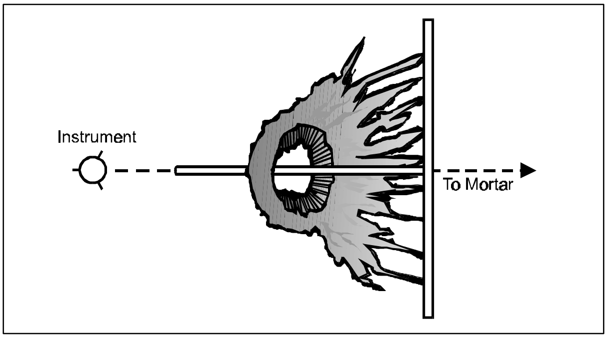


Figure B-5. Splinter Groove Method.

a. Main Axis Method. There are four steps used in determining direction by the main axis method when a definite and regular crater is formed:

- Step one—Lay a stake along the main axis of the crater, dividing the crater into symmetrical halves. The stake points in the direction of the mortar.
- Step two—Set up an instrument in line with the stake and away from fragments.
- Step three—Orient the instrument.
- Step four—Measure the direction to the weapon.

b. Splinter Groove Method. The five steps in determining direction by the splinter groove method are as follows:

- Step one—Lay a stake along the ends of the splinter grooves that extend from the crater.

- Step two—Lay a second stake perpendicular to the first stake through the axis of the fuze tunnel.

- Step three—Set up an instrument in line with the second stake and away from fragments.

- Step four—Orient the instrument.

- Step five—Measure the direction to the weapon.

c. Fuze Tunnel Method. The four steps in determining direction by the fuze tunnel method are as follows (see figure B-6 on page B-10):

- Step one—Place a stake in the fuze tunnel.

- Step two—Set up an instrument in line with the stake and away from fragments.

- Step three—Orient the instrument.

- Step four—Measure the direction to the weapon.

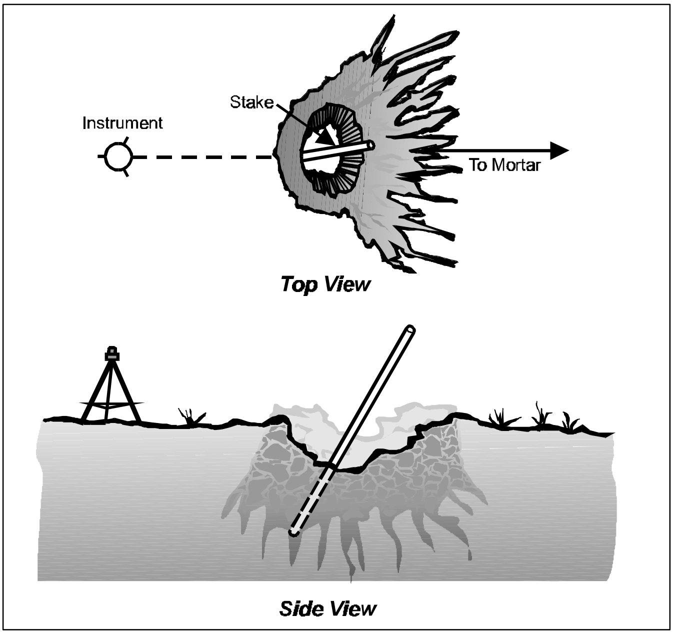


Figure B-6. Fuze Tunnel Method.

5. Rocket Craters. A crater resulting from a rocket impacting with a low or medium angle of fall is analyzed in the same manner as an artillery crater resulting from a projectile armed with fuze quick. However, if the rocket impacts with a high angle of fall, the crater is analyzed in the same manner as a crater resulting from a mortar round. The tail fins, rocket motor, body, and other parts of the rocket may be used to determine caliber and type of rocket fired.

6. Shell Fragment Analysis. The type and caliber of a hostile weapon can be determined by analysis of shell fragments. Dimensions of the parts, as well as of the complete shell, vary according to the caliber and type of shell. (See figure B-7 on page B-12.) The fragments must contain one or more features that can be matched with technical specifications of the shell. Such features are mortar fin assemblies, rotating bands, and fuze wells. Also, the curvature and thickness of large shell fragments can aid in identification. The observer should make sure that the data on munitions suspected to be in the area are disseminated through intelligence channels. Fragments from hostile shells that cannot be identified should be tagged and sent to the S-2 concerned. To be of maximum value, the tag for the fragment should show the following:

- The date and time at which the shell impacted
- The accurate location of the crater
- The direction from which the shell came and the method used in determining this direction (survey of crater, sound, flash, etc.)
- The name and organization of the person reporting
- A reference to a previously submitted SHELREP, if appropriate.

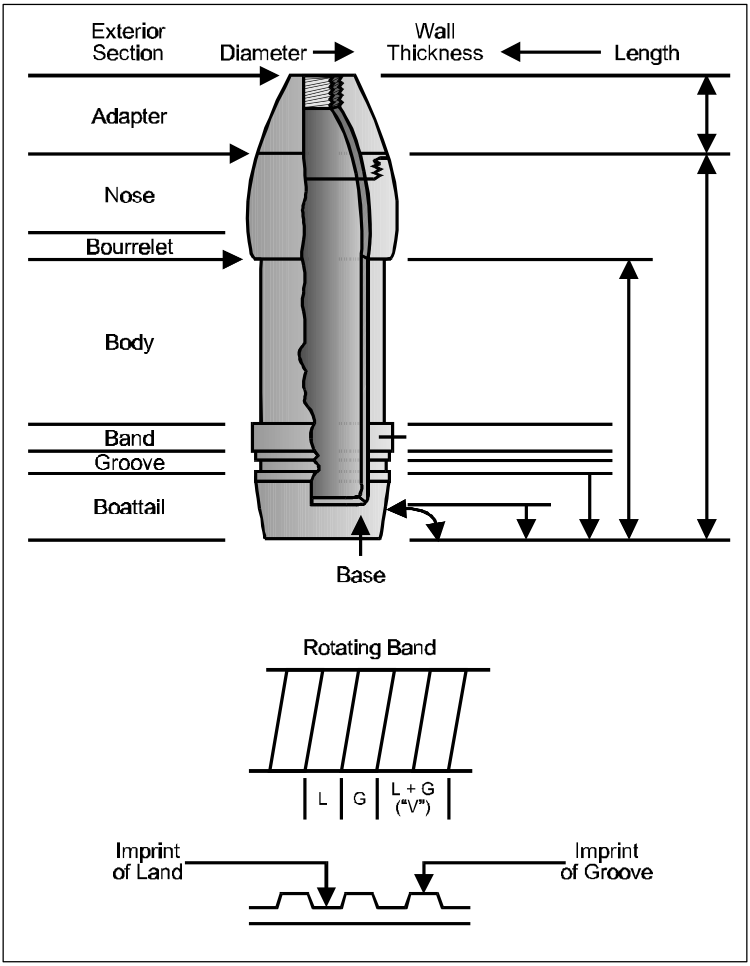


Figure B-7. Typical Shell Showing Critical Measurements.

a. Duds and Low-Order Bursts. Logically, a dud would provide the best identification of the caliber of a weapon. However, because a dud may not always be available (or, if available, may be too dangerous to handle), a low-order burst would provide the next best means of identification. When the explosive filler is incompletely detonated, a low-order burst occurs and large shell fragments result. The observer can use these large pieces to identify thread count, curvature, wall thickness, and so on.

b. High-Order Bursts. A high-order burst will normally form into small, deformed fragments. These fragments are useless for identification purposes unless they include a section of either the *rotating band* or the *rotating band seat*. Fragments of either of these sections positively identify the shell because each shell has its own distinctive rotating markings. (See figure B-8 on page B-14.)

c. Rotating Bands and Band Seats. The observer may identify a shell as to caliber, type, and nation or other place of origin from the following:

- Pattern or rifling imprints
- Width, number, and size of rotating bands
- Dimensions and pattern of keying or knurling (ridges) on the band seat
- Dimensions and pattern of keying and knurling impressed on the rotating bands.

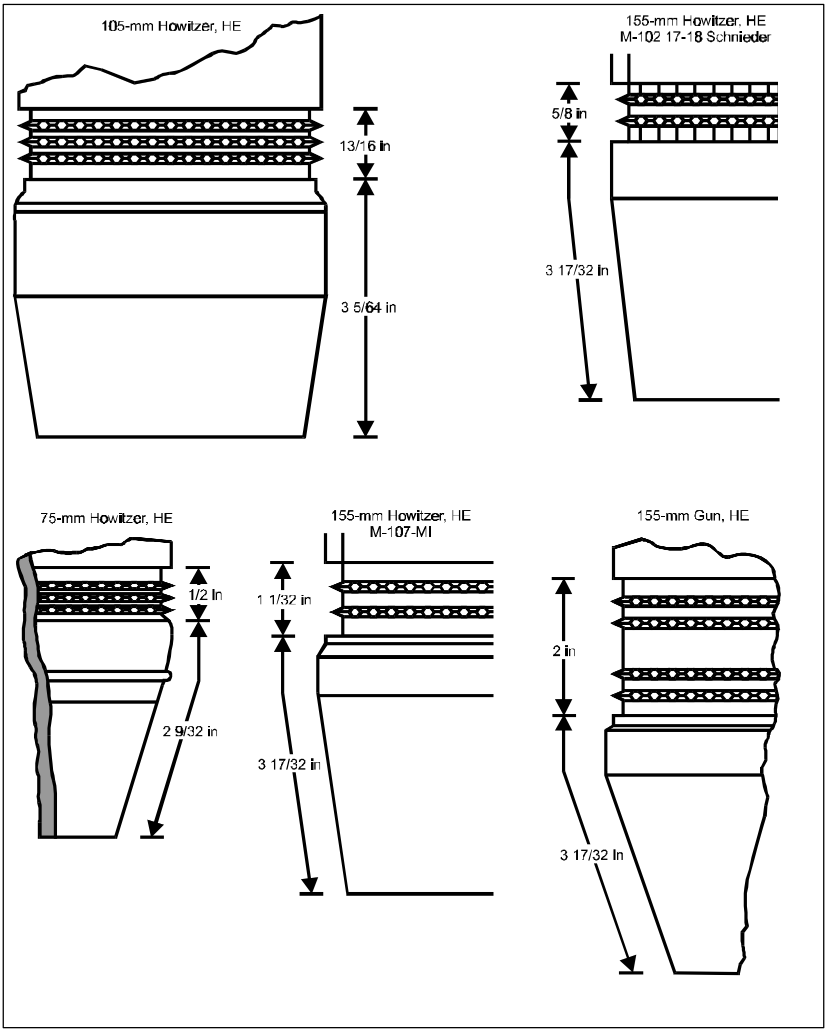


Figure B-8. Shell Fragment Identification, U.S. Ammunition.

d. Tail Fins. The observer may identify a mortar from the mortar shell fragments and tail fins; the latter is the best indication of the type and caliber. (See figure B-9 on page B-16.) A mortar that is not fin stabilized may be identified from pieces of the projectile on which rifling is imprinted. Tail fins are often found in the fuze hole of the crater.

> **Note**
> With the exception of rotating bands and band seats on the tail fins, different types of shells may be identical in one dimension, such as wall thickness, but seldom will be alike in two or more dimensions. Therefore, it is possible to make positive identification from two or more dimensions.

e. Fuzes. Because the same type of fuze may be used with several types of projectiles, it is impossible to establish the type and caliber of a weapon by examination of the fuze.

f. Other Common Artillery and Mortar Rounds. Some other common artillery and mortar rounds are shown in figures B-10 through B-13 on pages B-17 through B-19.

7. Determination of Caliber by Geometric Analysis of Fragments. The geometric method of determining projectile caliber is based on the problem of circumscribing a circle about a triangle. For accurate results, the following considerations apply:

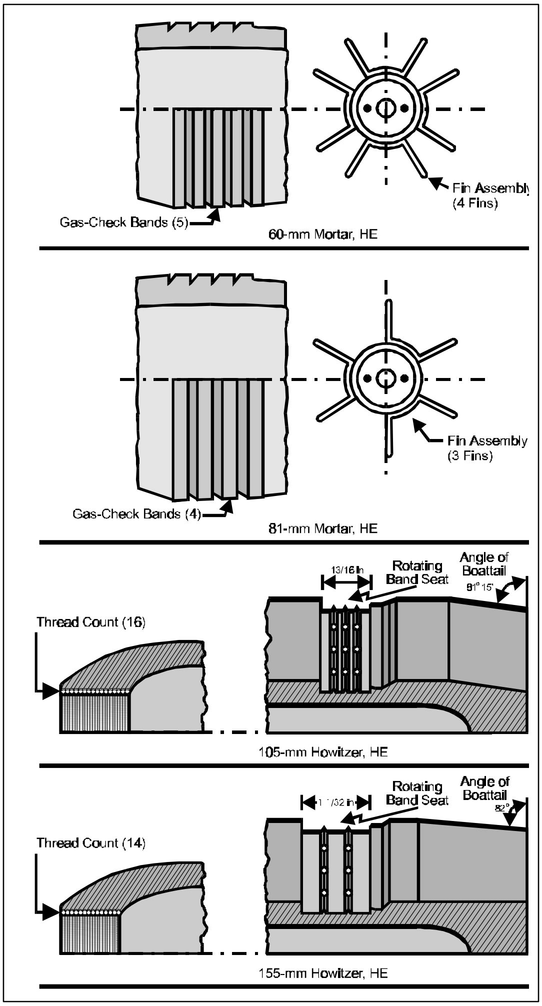


Figure B-9. Shell Fragment and Tail Fin Identification, U.S. Ammunition.

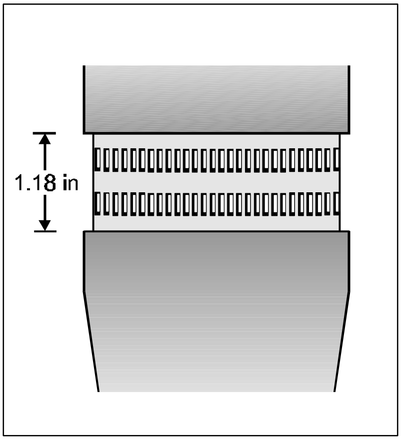


Figure B-10. 122-mm-Gun Projectile.

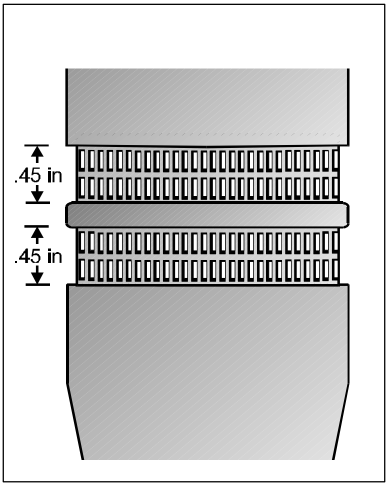


Figure B-11. 85-mm Projectile.

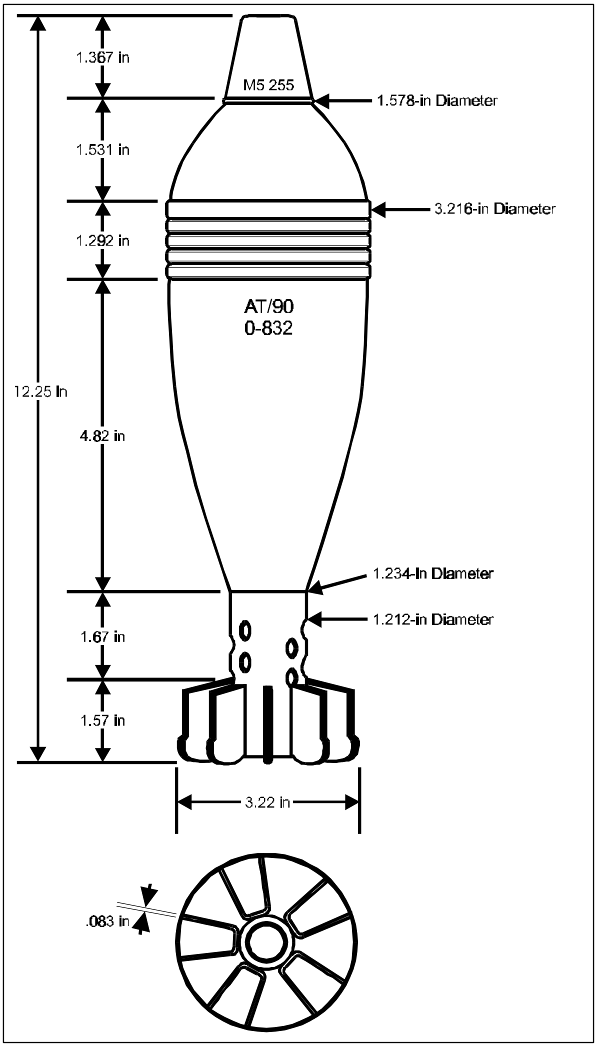


Figure B-12. 82-mm Mortar Round, 5 Fins.

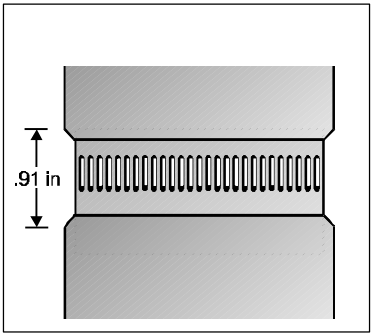


Figure B-13. 152-mm Projectile.

- The fragment selected for use should be the largest available. It should include an arc of the projectile circumference ranging in size from a minimum of one-half inch for a small-caliber weapon (37 mm) to a minimum of two inches for a large-caliber weapon (10 in).

- The fragment must be from that portion of the projectile located between the rotating band and the bourrelet. In the case of a nonboat tail (square base) projectile, the fragment may be from any portion located between the bourrelet and the base.

- The fragment should not be distorted. However, if the fragment is only slightly distorted, the results will be fairly accurate and will give a close approximation of the caliber.

The approximate caliber of a suitable fragment that meets the above conditions can be determined by using the following procedures (see figure B-14 on page B-20):

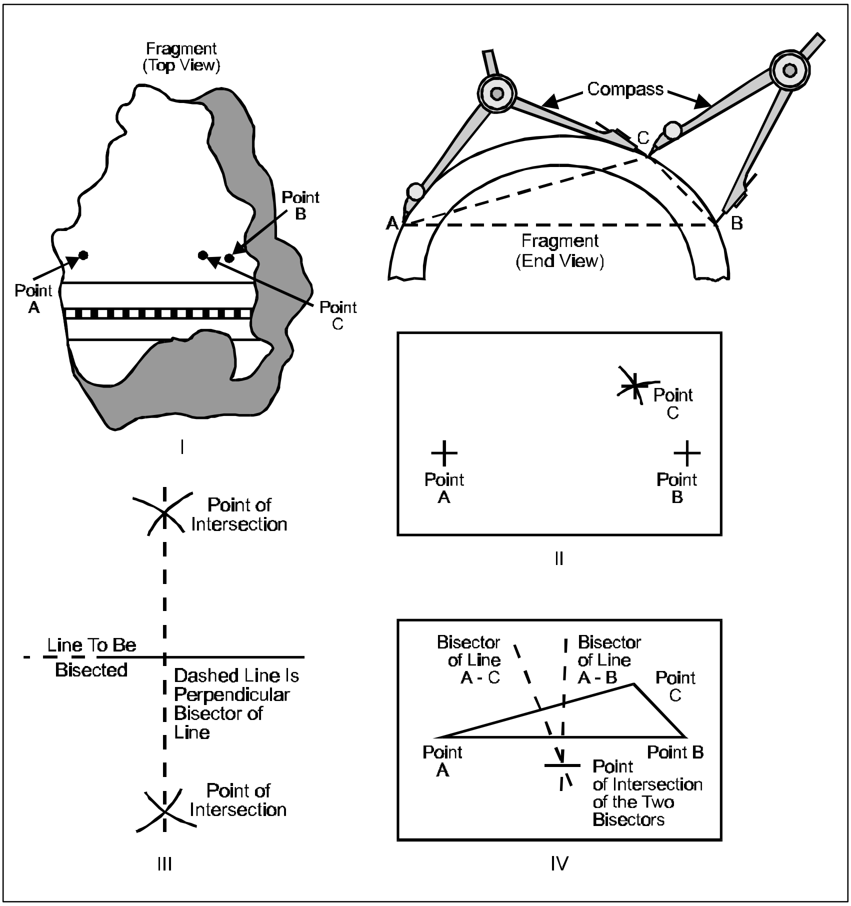


Figure B-14. Determination of Projectile Caliber by Geometric Analysis of a Fragment.

- Select two points (in this case, A and B as illustrated in the “I” portion of the figure), and place them as far apart as possible on the circumference of the projectile fragment.

- Measure the chord (straight line segment) distance between points A and B with dividers or any other suitable instrument, and plot this measurement on paper (I and II).

- Select a third point C, on the arc fixed by A and B, and measure the distance from point A to point C. Using this distance as the radius, strike an arc about point A on the paper (II).

- Measure the distance on the fragment from point B to point C. Using this distance as the radius, strike an arc about point B on the paper. Mark the intersection of the two arcs. This is the plot of point C.

- Draw a triangle, using points A, B, and C as the vertexes. Erect perpendicular bisectors to the sides of the triangle (IV). To construct a perpendicular bisector of a line, set off a radius greater than one-half the length of the line. Using this radius, strike arcs (one on each side of the line) from each end of the line and draw a line connecting the two points of intersection of the arcs. This line is the perpendicular bisector (III).

- Measure the distance from the point of intersection of the perpendicular bisectors to one of the vertexes of the triangle, and multiply this distance by two. The result is the diameter of the projectile that produced the fragment.

8. Shelling Reports. A SHELREP is "any report of enemy shelling containing information on caliber, direction, time, density, and area shelled." (Joint Pub 1-02) The information obtained from a crater should be forwarded by the most rapid means available. The information is transmitted by using the standard SHELREP, which corresponds to lines a through k of the form depicted in figure B-15 (Department of the Army (DA) Form 2185-R, *Artillery Counterfire Information Form (ACIF)*). Regardless of how little information has been obtained, do not hesitate to forward the information. Fragmentary or incomplete information is often of value in supplementing or confirming existing information.

Items a, b, and k—unit of origin, position of the observer, and friendly damage incurred—are encoded for security reasons. The current call sign or code name for the unit is in item a, and codes used to transmit the information are included in items b and k. Item b is not applicable when this form is used for crater analysis.

Because three elements—direction, dimensions, and curvature—must be measured for crater analysis, the following equipment is required:

- Measuring instrument—an aiming circle or compass
- Dividers and a ruler
- Curvature template—used to measure the curvature of the fragment and so determine the caliber of the shell (See figure B-15 on page B-23.) (The template can be constructed of heavy cardboard, acetate, wood, or other appropriate material.)
- Ammunition data sheets on commonly encountered munitions.

ARTILLERY COUNTERFIRE INFORMATION (FM 6-121)										
RECEIVED BY R			FROM D/2/10			TIME 260605		NUMBER 3		
SECTION I - BOMREP, SHELREP, MORTREP (Cross out items not applicable.)										
UNIT OF ORIGIN	POSITION OF OBSERVER	DIRECTION	TIME FROM	TIME TO	AREA BOMBED, SHELLED, OR MORTARED	NO. AND NATURE OF GUNS	NATURE OF FIRE	NO., TYPE, AND CAL.	TIME OF FLASH TO BANG	DAMAGE
(Current call sign, address, group, or code name.)	(Encode if headquarters or important OP or column F gives information on location.)	Measured clockwise from GRID NORTH in degrees or mils (state which) of FLASH, SOUND, or GROOVE of SHELL (state which). (Omit for aircraft.)			(Grid reference in CLEAR) or (direction to impact in degrees or mils, distance in meters).	(Mortar, rocket launchers, aircraft, or other methods of delivery.)	(Registration, bombardment, harassing, etc.)	(State whether measured or assumed) of SHELLS, ROCKETS, MISSILES, or BOMBS.	(Omit for aircraft.)	(Encode if required.)
a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k
PINE BOX 25	NA	4,810 MILS (GROOVE)	260545	206547	3932 8402	1/122/H	HARASSING	4 HE	—	WIA

Figure B-15. Artillery Counterfire Information Form.

(reverse blank)

Appendix C

Observation Post

An OP is "a position from which military observations are made, or fire directed and adjusted, and which possesses appropriate communications; may be airborne." (Joint Pub 1-02) The selection of an OP is critical to the ability of the observer or spotter to effectively call for and adjust fire, as well as to his survivability. This appendix will discuss considerations for the selection and preparation of the OP.

1. Selection of Observation Posts. Above all, when the observer selects an OP, the OP must permit observation of the area of operation of the supported unit. The observer must coordinate the selection of his OP with other observers' OPs and maneuver OPs to prevent/minimize gaps or dead spaces. Visibility diagrams should be constructed, as time permits. The following should be taken into consideration when selecting OPs:

- The observer must make sure that the OP is not vulnerable. OPs may be identified by aerial observers or in aerial photographs by loose dirt, wire lines, paths and approaches to the position, and communications (excessive radio traffic or detection of antennas).

- The observer should select an OP that can accommodate the establishment and maintenance of communications.

- When practical, the selection of the OP should facilitate the adjustment of fire, for example, angle T.

- The OP can enhance survivability through concealment. Concealment is practically the only protection available in the early stages of occupation. As time permits, the observer should improve the OP because the observer must be able to function in the most violent of situations.

- The OP should have routes of entry and exit without arousing the suspicion of the enemy. The edges of woods and villages can be used as entries and exits.

- The observer can use elevated points for OPs, such as crests, trees, and so on. The observer should avoid landmarks and prominent terrain features because these are probably targeted. When selecting an OP, the observer must consider the characteristics of the forward slope versus those of the reverse slope.

a. Forward Slope Position (Military Crest). The following characteristics of forward slope position should be taken into consideration:

- This position affords a better view of the front and flanks.

- Fires impacting on the topographical crest will not neutralize the position.

- This position aids in concealment because the hillside provides background.

- Occupation during daylight is difficult without risking disclosure of the position.

- Radio communications may be difficult. It may be necessary to remote antennas to the reverse slope.

- This position does not provide cover from direct fire.

b. Reverse Slope Position. The following characteristics of reverse slope position should be taken into consideration:

- This position may be occupied in daylight.

- It allows greater freedom of movement.

- The position facilitates installation, maintenance, and concealment of communications equipment.

- The position affords protection from direct fire.

- It often affords only a limited field of view to the front.

- This position causes the OP to be neutralized when enemy fire is adjusted on the topographical crest.

2. Preparation of the Observation Post. The preparation and improvement of the OP must allow sufficient space for the observer/team and his equipment, for example, the MULE. If the OP is on the ground, a trench usually is the first means of protection. Later, the OP may be improved by emplacing a cover of logs and earth. As time permits, the OP can be fortified with sandbags. Care must be taken to conceal the work by using both the natural cover afforded by the ground and camouflage. The observer must remove the signs of fresh digging. Special precautions must be taken to camouflage cover and openings. Figures C-1 through C-3 on pages C-5 through C-7 provide illustrations of improved OPs.

3. Tactical Occupation of an Observation Post. When conducting a deliberate occupation of an OP, the observer's defensive posture will be relatively permanent and will allow the use of many procedures that would normally be omitted during offensive operations. Many of the procedures used below are time intensive but are extremely valuable techniques that are only possible during static operations, such as establishing a deliberate OP. One technique that the observer may use is represented by the acronym SLoCTOP, which stands for *s*ecurity, *lo*cation, *c*ommunications, *t*argeting, *o*bservation, and *p*osition improvement.

a. Security. The following steps should be taken during the security phase:

- Before occupying the OP, establish a security patrol around the surrounding area.

- Ensure that the security patrol covers a 6,400-mil area with a 500-meter radius around the tentative OP location.

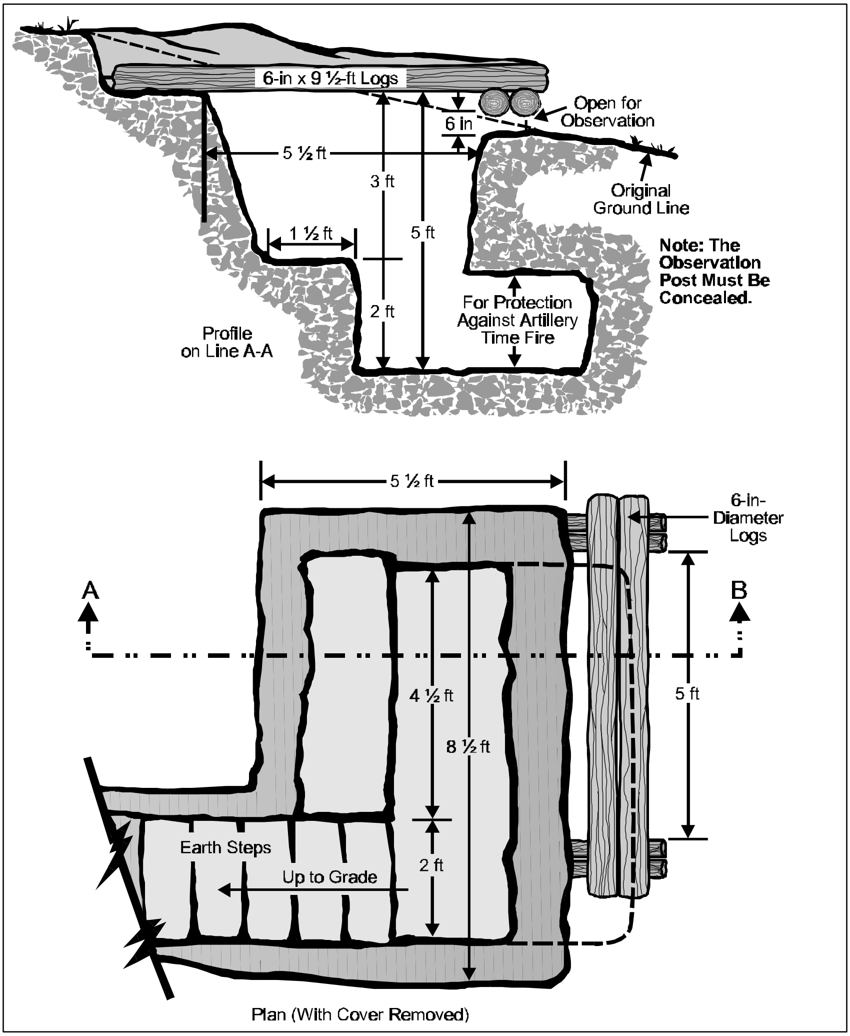


Figure C-1. Observation Post with Cover.

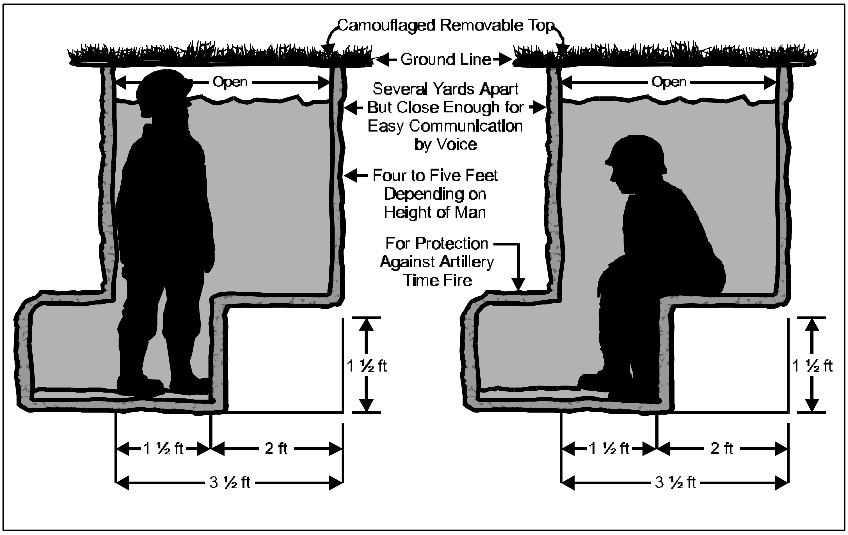


Figure C-2. Observation Post Using One-Man Fighting Holes.

- The security patrol should consist of one portion of the FO team (task oriented), with the remainder of the team remaining in a holding position to monitor radio nets.

- Scouts must ensure that they do not silhouette themselves during the patrol. They should exercise camouflage and noise and light discipline during all phases of the OP occupation.

b. Location. The following steps should be taken during the location phase:

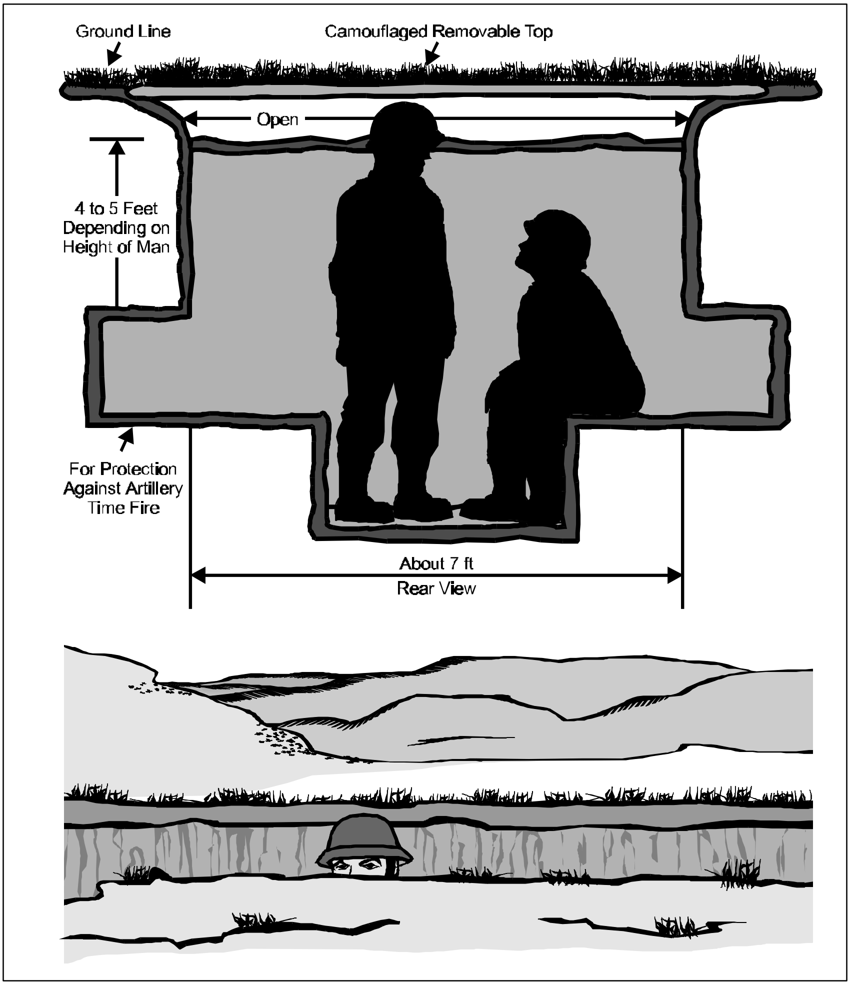


Figure C-3. Observation Post Using a Two-Man Fighting Hole.

- While the security patrol is being conducted, the FO should be finalizing the exact observation site. Degree of accuracy for self-location is 100 meters.

- The position should not be skylined or easily identifiable as an OP (military crest, i.e., 2/3 up, on nondescript high ground).

- The location should offer sufficient observation into the enemy operational area or likely enemy avenues of approach.

- The FO should prepare an OF fan for use, begin a terrain sketch by using reference points that are easily identifiable, and develop a visibility diagram in accordance with appendix E of this publication.

- The FO should ensure that the current situation map is accurate and contains all current friendly units, known/suspected enemy positions, and graphical control measures.

c. Communications. The following steps should be taken during the communications phase:

- Communication is the number one priority for the FO team. Communications *must* be established with all required stations during the security and location phases of SLoCTOP.

- Communication is the most valuable resource for developing situational awareness during occupation. It is critical for the radio/telephone operator (RTO) to record all information that is transmitted (i.e., other missions, position updates, SALUTE reports, etc.) to assist in the smooth transition from a mobile to a static observation posture.

- If communications cannot be established or are distorted, measures must be taken to establish/improve them (e.g., change location, check batteries, improve antenna, etc.). Because of this necessity, the FO should include procedures for field-expedient antennas in his handbook.

- Ensure that higher headquarters (both maneuver and supporting arms agencies) are updated with the most current observer location and other relevant information, such as enemy situation.

d. Targeting. The following steps should be taken during the targeting phase:

- The FO should always locate targets by using the most accurate and expedient means available. Furthermore, he should include these target locations in his terrain sketch.

- Ensure that the MULE is well concealed and that both the MULE and AN/GVS-5 are operated within safety parameters.

e. Observation. The following steps should be taken during the observation phase:

- Ensure that all team members are proficient in friendly/enemy forces recognition.

- The FO should constantly refine company targets and those assigned by higher headquarters.

- The FO should identify trigger points and target reference points (TRPs), review engagement criteria, and ensure that information is understood by all team members.

- The FO should ensure that there is a well-implemented plan to sustain 24-hour operations.

f. Position Improvement. The following steps should be taken during the position improvement phase:

- As time permits, the FO should dig in his position, including a parapet. Through the use of foliage and items organic to the area, he should ensure that there is a natural look to his position. (A good technique to ensure that the position is concealed is by viewing it from the enemy's point of view.)

- The FO should continually improve camouflaging (erect a net if available).

- Units should have an SOP established for the conduct of an OP, including a rotation schedule, placement of the head, and eating procedures.

- Position improvement is continuous. Specific areas for concentration are security, communications, noise and light discipline, camouflage, and weapons and equipment maintenance.

Appendix D

Timing the Delivery of Fire Support

An important aspect in requesting (and coordinating) fire support is the ability to time the delivery of fires. The intent of this appendix is to provide a description of each of the techniques to time the delivery of fires that are used in Marine Corps operations. The techniques are synchronization (PLGR/synchronized clock), elapsed time, and event. Other techniques and terminology for timing the delivery of fire support (e.g., the running clock) should be avoided because they are difficult to establish and often create confusion.

1. Synchronization (Using the AN/PSN-11 PLGR). Synchronization is a technique of placing all units on a common time. The AN/PSN-11 PLGR is the preferable device for synchronizing because it is the easiest and most accurate electronic device available to establish common time. The PLGR must be able to track at least one satellite. An unencrypted PLGR, encrypted PLGR, and time cube will all display the exact same time expressed in seconds.

2. Synchronization (Synchronized Clock). The synchronized clock uses a specific hour/minute based on either local or the universal (ZULU) time zone (as dictated by OPORD or unit SOP, for example, “1505.”) The synchronized clock requires all units to be placed on an established time and requires periodic time checks. Once established, the synchronized clock significantly streamlines the coordination of timing. The synchronized clock is established by the senior command element/headquarters and is disseminated to all units. It is most easily disseminated electronically by automated communications systems but can also be disseminated from unit to unit by voice time checks or be acquired as needed from the Naval Observatory. The voice transmissions for establishing a synchronized clock are as follows.

Example

Sender: "T7Y (unit or collective call sign) this is V8P, stand by for time check in two minutes, time will be 1505, over."

Receiver: "V8P this is T7Y, roger, out." (If collective call sign, each unit responds.)

Sender: "T7Y this is V8P, stand by for time check . . . five-four-three-two-one-hack, time is 1505, over."

Receiver: "V8P, this is T7Y, time 1505, out."

Note

Specify time zone if different from SOP/OPORD, for example, "time 1505 SIERRA."

a. Local Time. A local time zone (e.g., "ROMEO time zone") may be used to establish the synchronized clock. The use of the local time zone on the synchronized clock may cause confusion if the unit or supporting forces (e.g., aircraft) are operating over more than one time zone.

b. Universal Time. Universal time is based on the ZULU time zone. Use of universal time facilitates timing of actions across time zones and is the preferred basis for establishing a synchronized clock. If required, units/agencies can independently access the Naval Observatory, which provides an automated, continuous broadcast of time. Units/agencies can acquire universal time from the Naval Observatory on HF radio frequencies of 5.000, 10.000, 15.000, 20.000, or 25.000 MHz or by telephone at DSN 762-1401/1069 or commercial 202-762-1401/1069. Universal time is particularly advantageous when operations involve joint forces and/or aircraft operating from remotely located airfields.

c. Definition of Universal Time. Universal time is "a measure of time that conforms, within a close approximation, to the mean diurnal rotation of the Earth and serves as the basis of civil timekeeping. Universal Time (UT1) is determined from observations of the stars, radio sources, and also from ranging observations of the Moon and artificial Earth satellites. The scale determined directly from such observations is designated Universal Time Observed (UTO); it is slightly dependent on the place of observation. When UTO is corrected for the shift in longitude of the observing station caused by polar motion, the time scale UT1 is obtained. When an accuracy better than one second is not required, Universal Time can be used to mean Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). Also called **ZULU time.** Formerly called Greenwich Mean Time." (Joint Pub 1-02)

3. Elapsed Time. The delivery of fires may be timed by specifying a number of minutes (and seconds as required) to elapse from a stated countdown reference or "hack." Elapsed time is best used when timing the delivery of fires in an immediate or time-critical situation, when a synchronized clock has not been established, or when a synchronized clock's accuracy is doubtful. Elapsed time is difficult to disseminate when several units/agencies are involved, for example, during a coordinated attack of a target by aircraft, artillery, and NGF.

Elapsed time is expressed in relation to the transmission of "hack." In starting an elapsed time, hack is always transmitted by specifying the number of minutes and seconds to elapse before ordnance is to impact on the target. The hack is used in transmitting the TTT for immediate or on-call CAS.

Example
"Eight (minutes understood) plus zero, zero (seconds understood) . . . hack."

The term "hack" is now used for all supporting arms and replaces "mark" for use in initiating or establishing time.

4. Event. The timing of fires may be in relation to a specific event, for example, H-hour or H-5. However, precautions should be taken to ensure that all concerned agencies know the correct H- or L-hour.

Appendix E

Construction of the Visibility Diagram

The observer constructs the visibility diagram in overlay form and drawn to map scale. The completed visibility diagram is formed by the systematic alignment of terrain profiles. A terrain profile is an exaggerated view of a portion of the Earth's surface along a line between two points, such as the line between the OP and point A in figure E-1. The observer can construct a terrain profile from any contour-lined map.

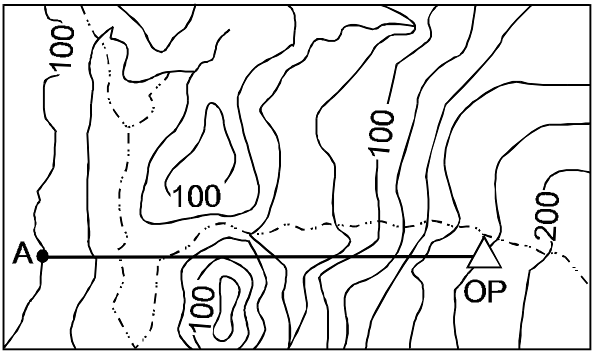


Figure E-1. A Profile (Line OP-A) Constructed on a Contour Map.

1. Step One—Drawing Radial Lines from the Observer's Location. The observer does the following:

- Locates and plots his position on the map

- Constructs radial lines from the OP to the limits of his visibility. Each adjacent pair of radial lines should form an angle of no more than 100 mils. (See figure E-2.) Each radial line from the OP represents a line of vision. The OF fan fulfills this function when placed on the map and oriented.

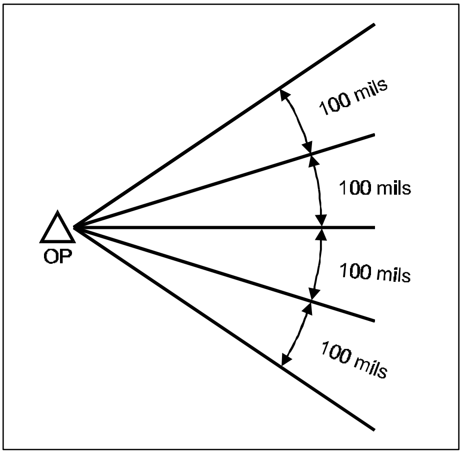


Figure E-2. Radial Lines (Lines of Vision) Ranging Out From the Observation Post.

2. Step Two—Constructing the Profile. The basic element of the visibility diagram is a terrain profile. A terrain profile is an exaggerated side view of a portion of the Earth's surface along a line between two points. Each of the radial lines represents a terrain profile, and each profile must be constructed. For example, the most common way of indicating elevation and relief on maps is by contour lines. A contour line is a line representing an imaginary line on the ground along which all points are at the same elevation. Starting at sea level, normally at zero contour, each contour line is the contour interval, and the value of this interval is listed in the marginal data on a map.

Starting at zero elevation, every fifth contour line is drawn so that it is heavier than the other contour lines. These heavier lines are index contours, and at some place along each index contour the line is broken and the elevation listed. The contour lines falling between index contours are called intermediate contours. The observer can determine the elevation of any point by doing the following:

- Determining the contour interval (from the map or marginal data)
- Finding the numbered contour line nearest to the point for which elevation is sought
- Determining the direction of slope from the numbered contour line to the desired point
- Counting the number of contour lines that must be crossed to go from the numbered line to the desired point and noting the direction (up or down). The number of lines crossed multiplied by the contour interval is the distance above or below the starting value.

Along a radial line, determine the value of the highest contour line and the value of the lowest contour line. (See figure E-3.) On a blank sheet of paper, draw equally spaced horizontal lines. Draw the lines so that there will be one line representing each contour value crossed by the profile line from the OP. Number each line on the paper by assigning the top line a value equal to one contour interval higher than the highest contour line determined along the radial line. Number the rest of the lines in sequence down by contour interval to the bottom line. Give the bottom line a value of one contour interval lower than the lowest contour line determined. A sheet of lined tablet or notebook paper will be suitable in most cases for this purpose.

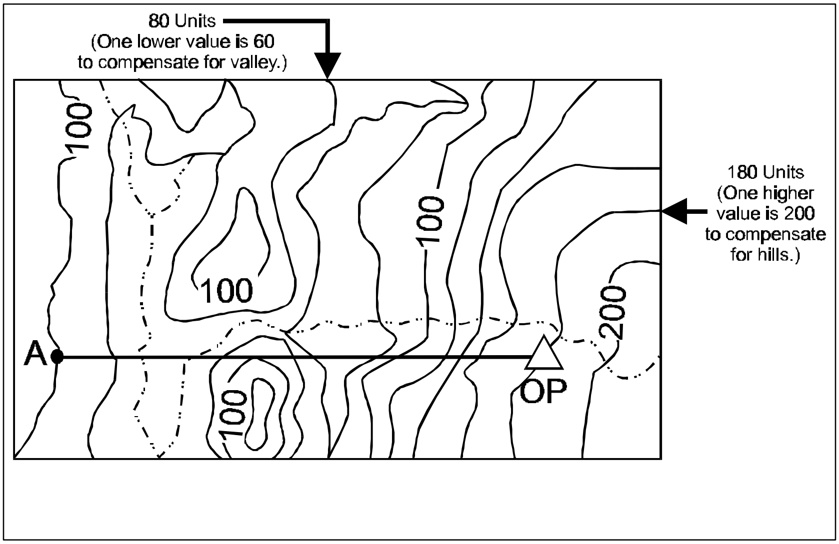


Figure E-3. Contour Interval.

Draw a vertical line from each contour line intersecting the radial line (profile line). Extend the vertical line to the (horizontal) line corresponding to the elevation of a contour line. Continue this procedure until all contour lines have been connected with their corresponding elevations. The result will appear as a series of perpendicular lines connecting points of a contour line with a horizontal line of a specified elevation. After all vertical lines have been dropped for contour lines, drop the vertical lines from hilltops, ridgetops, stream lines, and valleys. (See broken lines in figure E-4 on page E-6.) Then determine the end points of these perpendicular lines by interpolation. If the diagram is being drawn at the OP, make allowances for buildings, new construction, newly grown vegetation, and other changes to the map.

The next step is to connect the end points of all perpendicular lines with a smooth, curved line. When the points are connected, the relief of the terrain along the profile line becomes apparent.

To determine visibility from the terrain profile, draw straight lines from the OP to the lowest points of visibility along the entire length of the terrain profile. Those areas that are not visible from the OP are below the straight lines and may be shaded. (See figure E-5 on page E-7.)

After the areas that are not visible from the OP have been identified as in figure E-5, show them on the profile line. Do this by extending perpendicular lines from the left and right limits of the defilade areas as shown in figure E-5. The defilade is shown as a heavy shaded portion of the profile line.

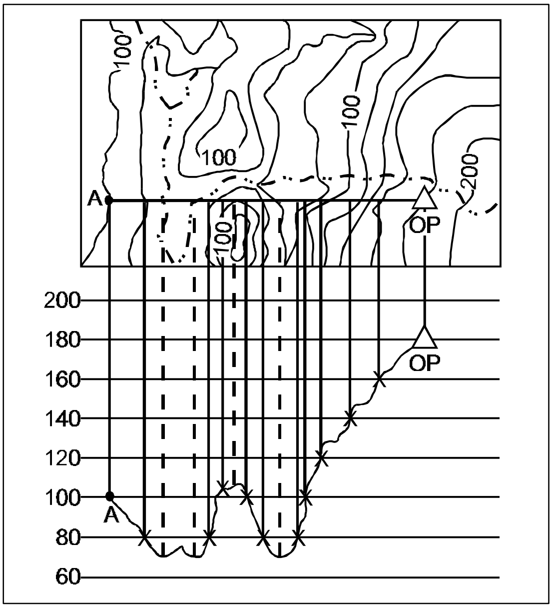


Figure E-4. Transferring Points from Profile to Profile Line.

3. Step Three—The Completed Visibility Diagram. After the nonvisible areas have been transferred to the first profile line, repeat the procedures described in step two for each profile line in the zone of observation. (See figure E-6 on page E-7.)

As defilade areas along each line of vision are identified and shaded, connect the nonvisible portions. (See figure E-7 on page E-8.)

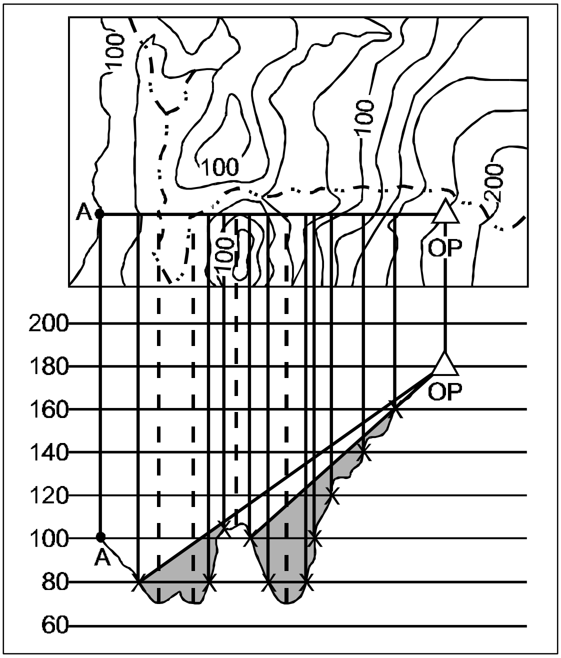


Figure E-5. Nonvisible Areas (Defilade).

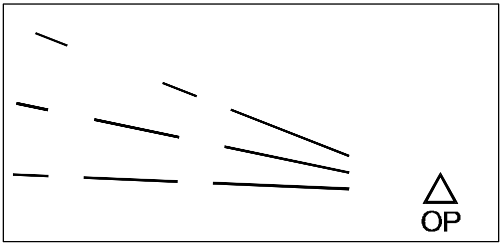


Figure E-6. Nonvisible Areas on Profile Lines.

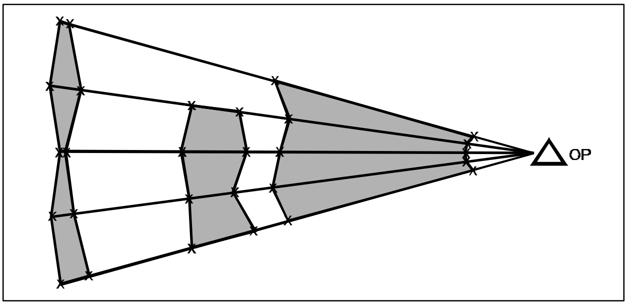


Figure E-7. Areas of Visibility and Nonvisibility.

After adjacent profile lines have been analyzed and the areas that are not visible have been revealed, the finished product appears as shown in figure E-8 on page E-9. The observer highlights nonvisible areas by shading or crosshatching the defilade areas.

The visibility diagram normally is completed in overlay form. As a minimum, the marginal data listed in table E-1 should be placed on the overlay. (See figure E-8 on page E-9.)

Table E-1. Marginal Data.

Item	Example
OP grid	5138 2925
Primary azimuth of observation	0700 mils
Grid register marks	Register marks
Map sheet/scale	Podunk, 1:50,000
Map series/date	V793, sheet 2345 III, 1975
Name of observer	2dLt Cannon
Unit	3/10
Date-time group	251300 Feb
Left and right limits	200 mils, 1,200 mils

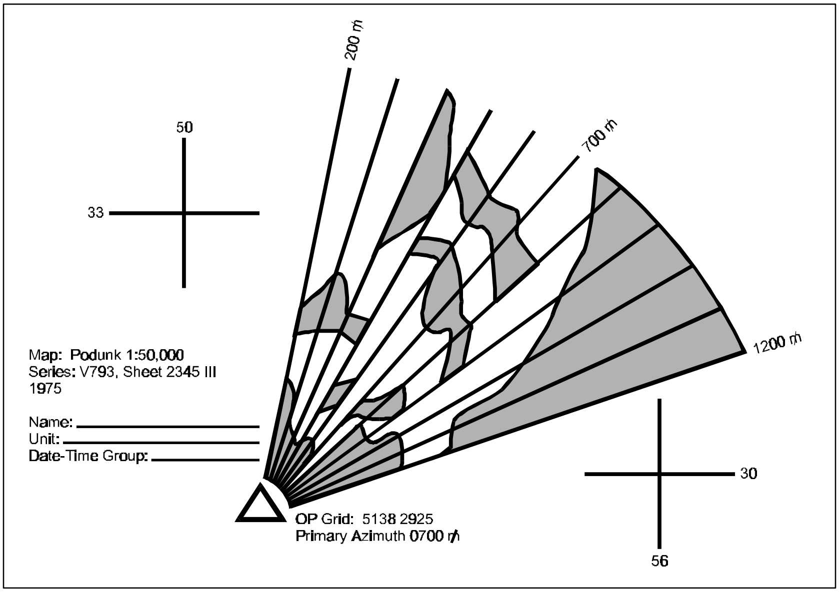


Figure E-8. Completed Visibility Diagram Overlay With Marginal Data.

(reverse blank)

Appendix F

Weapons Reference Data

Table F-1. Naval Gunfire Platforms.

Hull Number	Name	Armament	GFCS	Hull Number	Name	Armament	GFCS
California Class (CGN), 2 Ships							
CGN 36	California	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	CGN 37	South Carolina	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
Ticonderoga Class (CG), 27 Ships							
CG 47	Ticonderoga	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	CG 61	Monterey	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
CG 48	Yorktown	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	CG 62	Chancellorsville	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
CG 49	Vincennes	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	CG 63	Cowpens	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
CG 50	Valley Forge	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	CG 64	Gettysburg	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
CG 51	Thomas S. Gates	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	CG 65	Chosin	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
CG 52	Bunker Hill	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	CG 66	Hue City	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
CG 53	Mobile Bay	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	CG 67	Shiloh	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
CG 54	Antietam	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	CG 68	Anzio	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
CG 55	Leyte Gulf	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	CG 69	Vicksburg	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
CG 56	San Jacinto	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	CG 70	Lake Erie	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
CG 57	Lake Champlain	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	CG 71	Cape St. George	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
CG 58	Philippine Sea	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	CG 72	Vella Gulf	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
CG 59	Princeton	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	CG 73	Port Royal	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
CG 60	Normandy	2 - 5”/54	MK-86				
Arleigh Burke Class (DDG), 23 Ships Active, 8 Under Construction							
DDG 51	Arleigh Burke	1 - 5”/54	MK-34	DDG 63	Stethem	1 - 5”/54	MK-34
DDG 52	Barry	1 - 5“/54	MK-34	DDG 64	Carney	1 - 5“/54	MK-34
DDG 53	John Paul Jones	1 - 5”/54	MK-34	DDG 65	Benfold	1 - 5”/54	MK-34
DDG 54	Curtis Wilbur	1 - 5“/54	MK-34	DDG 66	Gonzalez	1 - 5“/54	MK-34
DDG 55	Stout	1 - 5”/54	MK-34	DDG 67	Cole	1 - 5”/54	MK-34
DDG 56	John S. McCain	1 - 5“/54	MK-34	DDG 68	The Sullivans	1 - 5“/54	MK-34
DDG 57	Mitscher	1 - 5”/54	MK-34	DDG 69	Milius	1 - 5”/54	MK-34
DDG 58	Laboon	1 - 5“/54	MK-34	DDG 70	Hopper	1 - 5“/54	MK-34
DDG 59	Russell	1 - 5”/54	MK-34	DDG 71	Ross	1 - 5”/54	MK-34
DDG 60	Paul Hamilton	1 - 5“/54	MK-34	DDG 72	Mahan	1 - 5“/54	MK-34
DDG 61	Ramage	1 - 5”/54	MK-34	DDG 74	McFaul	1 - 5”/54	MK-34
DDG 62	Fitzgerald	1 - 5“/54	MK-34				
Kidd Class (DDG), 2 Ships							
DDG 995	Scott	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	DDG 996	Chandler	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
Spruance Class (DD), 27 Ships							

F-2

DD 963	Spruance	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	DD 978	Stump	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
DD 964	Paul F. Foster	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	DD 979	Conolly	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
DD 965	Kinkaid	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	DD 980	Moosbrugger	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
DD 966	Hewitt	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	DD 981	John Hancock	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
DD 967	Elliot	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	DD 982	Nicholson	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
DD 968	Arthur W. Radford	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	DD 983	John Rogers	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
	Peterson			DD 985	Cushing	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
DD 969	Caron	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	DD 987	O’Bannon	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
DD 970	David R. Ray	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	DD 988	Thorn	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
DD 971	Oldendorf	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	DD 989	Deyo	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
DD 972	John Young	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	DD 990	Ingersoll	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
DD 973	O’Brien	2 - 5“/54	MK-86	DD 991	Fife	2 - 5“/54	MK-86
DD 975	Briscoe	2 - 5”/54	MK-86	DD 992	Fletcher	2 - 5”/54	MK-86
DD 977		2 - 5“/54	MK-86	DD 997	Hayler	2 - 5“/54	MK-86

Note: Active ships as of June 1998.

Legend:
CG = guided missile cruiser
CGN = guided missile cruiser (nuclear)
DD = destroyer
DDG = guided missile destroyer
GFCS = gunfire control system

Table F-2. Characteristics of U.S. Mortars, Artillery, and Rockets.

Caliber	60 mm	81 mm	105 mm[1]	105 mm[1]	155 mm	155 mm[1]	227 mm[1]	607 mm[1]
Model	M224	M252	M102	M119A1	M198	M109A5/ A6	MLRS	ATACMS
Maximum Range (m)	3,500[2]	5,600[3]	11,400	11,500	18,300 22,000[4]	18,200 21,700[4]	32,000 45,000[5]	165,000 300,000[6]
Ammuni- tion	HE, WP, ILLUM	HE, WP, RP, ILLUM	HE, HC, WP, ILLUM, APICM	HE, HC, WP, ILLUM, APICM	HE, HC, WP, ILLUM, APICM, DPICM, M825 smoke, FASCAM, Copperhead	HE, HC, WP, ILLUM, APICM, DPICM, M825 smoke, FASCAM, Copperhead	DPICM	APAM
Maximum Rate of Fire (Rounds/ min)	30	35	10	10	4	4	12/40 sec	2/20 sec
Sustained Rate of Fire (Rounds/ min)	20	15	3	3	2	1	N/A	N/A
Range of RAP (m)	N/A	N/A	15,300	19,500	30,100	30,000	N/A	N/A
Range of DPICM (m)	N/A	N/A	10,500	14,100	18,000 28,200[7]	17,900 28,100[7]	N/A	N/A
Minimum Range (m)	75	70	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	10,000 13,000	25,000 70,000
Fuzes	MO	MO	PD, VT, MT, MTSQ, CP, delay	PD, VT, MT, MTSQ, CP, delay	PD, VT, MT, MTSQ, delay	PD, VT, MT, MTSQ, delay	ET	ET

Illumination Time (sec)	25	60	75	75	120	120	N/A	N/A
HE Burst Width (1 Round)	28	35	35	35	50	50	100	N/A
FPF	90 3 tubes	35 1 tube	210 6 guns	210 6 guns	300 6 guns	300 6 guns 150 3 guns	N/A	N/A
Notes:	1. U.S. Marine Corps units do not possess these weapons systems. However, Marine Corps units may operate with Army units equipped with these weapons. 2. With M720 ammunition. 3. With M821 ammunition. 4. With M795 HE, M825 smoke ammunition. 5. Extended-range MLRS to be fielded in Fiscal Year 99. 6. Block 1A ATACMS to be fielded in Fiscal Year 98. 7. BBDPICM M864.							
Legend:	ATACMS = Army Tactical Missile System ET = electronic time HC = high capacity ILLUM = illumination MO = multioption fuze, VT, PD, delay					MT = mechanical time MTSQ = mechanical time superquick RAP = rocket-assisted projectile		

Table F-3. U.S. Aircraft Capabilities Guide.

Type of Aircraft	Communications Package	Navigation	Guns	Conventional Ordnance		Laser Equipment	
				External	Maximum Load	Tracker	Designator
AV-8B	2 UHF	TACAN INS Radar[2]	25 mm 300 rounds	All	8,000 lb	No	No
AH-1W[4]	2 UHF[1] 2 VHF-AM[1] 2 VHF-FM[1]	TACAN ADF FM homer Radar beacon	20 mm 750 rounds or 20-mm pod	2.75-in rockets 5-in rockets TOW missile HELLFIRE Sidearm	2,500 lb	No	Yes
F/A-18A/C[5]	2 UHF[1] 2 VHF-AM[1] 2 VHF-FM[1]	TACAN ADF INS Radar FLIR	20 mm 580 rounds	All	13,700 lb	Yes (pod)	Yes
F/A-18D[5]	2 UHF[1] 2 VHF-AM[1] 2 VHF-FM[1]	TACAN ADF INS Radar FLIR	20 mm 515 rounds	All	13,500 lb	Yes (pod)	Yes
A-10	UHF VHF-AM VHF-FM	TACAN INS	30 mm 1,100 rounds	All	16,000 lb	Yes (pod)	No
AH-64	UHF VHF-AM VHF-FM	TACAN ADF Doppler	30 mm 1,200 rounds	70-mm rocket HELLFIRE	3,000 lb	Yes	Yes
F-16[5]	UHF[1] VHF-AM[1] VHF-FM[1]	TACAN ADF INS Radar ILS	20 mm 515 rounds	All	12,000 lb	No	Yes[3]
F-15E[5]	UHF	TACAN ADF INS Radar ILS	20 mm 512 rounds	All	13,220 lb	No	Yes[3]

Notes:
[1] Can only monitor two frequencies at a time.
[2] AV-8B "Plus" is equipped with radar but has no laser spot tracker.
[3] F-16C/D and F-15E can designate if equipped with a LANTIRN pod.
[4] The AH-1W Night Tactics System aircraft is GPS capable, and its FLIR is grid/range-designation capable.
[5] Some aircraft are GPS capable.

Legend: ADF = automatic direction finder; ILS = instrument landing system; INS = inertial navigation system; TACAN = tactical air navigation system

Table F-4. Naval Gunfire Weapons Systems.

Weapon	Maximum Range (m) Full Charge	RAP	Maximum Range (m) Reduced Charge	Rate of Fire per Tube (Maximum/ Sustained)	Ammunition	Fuzes
5"/38	15,900	25,265	8,100	20/15	HE, HC, ILLUM, WP, RAP	Quick, MT, CVT, VT
5""/54	23,100	29,181	12,200	20/20	HE, HC, ILLUM, WP, RAP	Quick, MT, CVT, VT, delay

Table F-5. World Artillery, Mortars, and Rocket Launchers.

			Rate of Fire			
Manufacturer/ Weapon	Basic Range (m)	Base Burn/ RAP Range (m)	Maximum	Sustained	Countries/ Organizations Possessing	Remarks
Austria						
GHN-45, 155-mm towed	30,300	39,600	7/min	2/min	Iran, Iraq, Thailand	None
Brazil						
ASTROS II, MRL	—	30,000 60,000	32/min 4/min	Reload Reload	Saudi Arabia, Iran, Qatar	None
China						
WS-1, 320-mm MRL	—	80,000	4/min	Reload	None	None
Type 83, 273-mm MRL	—	40,000	4/min	Reload	None	None
Type 71, 180-mm MRL	—	20,000	10/min	Reload	None	None
WA 021, 155-mm towed	30,000	39,000	5/min	2/min	None	None
Type 83, 152-mm towed	30,400	38,000	4/min	2/min	Iraq	None
Type 82/85, 130-mm MRL	—	15,000	60/5 min	Reload	Thailand	None
Type 59-1, 130-mm towed	27,500	38,000	10/min	10/min	Iran, Iraq, Oman, North Korea, Egypt, Lebanon	None
France						
GCT, 155-mm SP	23,000	29,000	6/min	2/min	Iraq, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia	None
GCT, 155-mm towed	24,000	32,000	3/18 sec	6/min	Cyprus	None
MkF3, 155-mm SP	20,000	25,000	3/min	1/min	Iraq, Kuwait, UAE	None
Germany						
PzH 2000, 155-mm SP	30,000	40,000	3/10 sec	9/min	None	None
Iran						
N10, 450-mm MRL	—	150,000	1/min	2/hr	None	None
Iraq						

ARABEL 100, 400-mm MRL	—	100,000	4/min	Reload	None	None
ARABEL 50, 262-mm MRL	—	50,000	12/min	Reload	Former Yugoslavia, Bosnian Serb Army, Croatia	None
Israel						
845, 155-mm towed	24,000	39,000	5/min	2/min	None	None
M71, 155-mm towed	23,500	30,000	5/min	2/min	Singapore, Thailand, South Africa	None
Italy						
Palmaria, 155-mm SP	24,700	30,000	3/20 sec	4/min	Libya, Nigeria	None
North Korea						
M1985, 240-mm MRL	—	43,000	12/min	Reload	Iran	CHEM
M1978, 170-mm SP	40,000	—	INA	INA	Iran, Iraq	None
M46, 130-mm SP	27,500	—	6/min	1.1/min	None	None
BM 11, 122-mm MRL	—	20,500	30/min	Reload	PLO, Syria, Iran, Iraq, Uganda	None
M1981, 122-mm SP	23,900	—	INA	INA	None	None
M1992, 120-mm SP mortar	8,700	—	INA	INA	None	None
Russia/CIS						
FROG-7, MRL	—	70,000	1/min	1/hr	Former Warsaw Pact, Afghanistan, Algeria, Cuba, Egypt, Iraq, North Korea, Libya, Syria, Yemen	NUKE, CHEM
SMERCH, 300-mm MRL	—	70,000	12/min	Reload	Kuwait, UAE	None
2S4, 240-mm SP mortar	9,600	18,000	1/min	40/hr	Iraq, Czech Republic	NUKE, LGM
M240, 240-mm towed mortar	9,700	18,000	1/min	38/hr	IRA, Iraq, North Korea, Egypt, Oman, Lebanon	NUKE, LGM

BM 27, 220-mm MRL	—	35,000	16/min	Reload	Afghanistan, Syria	CHEM, mines
2S7, 203-mm SP	37,500	47,000	2/min	2/min	Czech Republic, Poland, Slovakia	None
2S3, 180-mm towed	30,400	43,800	1/min	1/2 min	India, Iraq, Egypt, Syria	None
2S3, 152-mm SP	20,600	24,000	4/min	1/min	Hungary, Iraq, Libya, Syria	None
2S19, 152-mm SP	24,700	30,000	8/min	8/min	None	LGM
2S5, 152-mm SP	28,400	37,000	5/min	5/min	None	None
2A36, 152-mm towed	28,400	37,000	5/min	1/min	Finland	None
D-20, 152-mm towed	17,230	30,000	5/min	1/min	Algeria, China, Cuba, Egypt, Vietnam, Former Yugoslavia	None
BM 14, 122-mm MRL	—	9,800	16/min	Reload	Algeria, Afghanistan, Cambodia, China, Egypt, Syria, North Korea, Vietnam	CHEM
BM 21, 140-mm MRL	—	20,400	40/min	Reload	China, Egypt, India, Iran, Iraq, North Korea, others	CHEM, mines
2S1, 122-mm SP	15,300	22,000	8/min	1.1/min	None	None
D-30, 122-mm towed	15,300	22,000	8/min	1.1/min	China	None
2S9, 120-mm SP mortar	8,900	13,000	6/min	6/min	Afghanistan	LGM
2S23, 120-mm SP mortar	8,900	12,900	10/min	10/min	None	LGM
2B9, 82-mm SP towed mortar	4,300	—	120/min		Hungary	None
South Africa						
G-6, 155-mm SP	30,800	39,600	3/21 sec	4/min	UAE, Oman	None
G-5, 155-mm towed	30,200	39,000	3/min	3/min	None	None
United Kingdom						

FH 70, 155-mm towed	24,700	31,500	3/13 sec	2/min	Germany, Italy, Japan, Saudi Arabia	None

Former Yugoslavia						
M-77, 128-mm MRL	—	20,600	32/min	Reload	Bosnia, Bosnian Serb Army, Croatia, Iraq, Serbia, Montenegro	None

Note: A complete listing of all world artillery systems and their characteristics is available in the classified National Government Intelligence Center (NGIC) series *Field Artillery Worldwide*. Reference Defense Science and Technology (DST) 1130S-115-94, *Cannon and Mortars*; DST 1130S-94 Vol. 2, Sup. 1; and NGIC 1143-200D-95, *Multiple Rocket Launcher Systems*.

Legend:

CHEM = chemical munitions capable
CIS = Commonwealth of Independent States
INA = information not available
IRA = Irish Republican Army
LGM = laser-guided munitions capable
MRL = multiple rocket launcher
NUKE = nuclear munitions capable
PLO = Palestine Liberation Organization
SP = self- propelled
UAE = United Arab Emirates

Appendix G

Glossary

Section I. Acronyms and Abbreviations

AAA .... antiaircraft artillery
AAV(P) .... assault amphibious vehicle (personnel variant)
ACA .... airspace coordination area
ACE .... aviation combat element
ACIF .... *Artillery Counterfire Information Form*
ADA .... air defense artillery
ADAM .... area denial artillery munitions
ADF .... automatic direction finder
ALP .... Air Liaison Party
AM .... amplitude modulation
AOA .... amphibious objective area
APAM .... antipersonnel/antimaterial
APICM .... antipersonnel ICM
ARBS .... angle rate bombing system
ASAP .... as soon as possible
ASC(A) .... assault support coordinator (airborne)
ATACMS .... Army Tactical Missile System

BBDPICM .... base burn DPICM
BC .... battery commander
BCS .... battery computer system
BDHI .... bearing-distance heading indicator
BLT .... battalion landing team
BMNT .... beginning of morning nautical twilight

BUCS .... backup computer system

CAS .... close air support
CBU .... cluster bomb unit
CEOI .... communications-electronics operating instructions
CG .... guided missile cruiser
CGN .... guided missile cruiser (nuclear)
CHEM .... chemical munitions capable
CIS .... Commonwealth of Independent States
COF .... conduct of fire
CP .... concrete piercing
CVT .... fuze controlled variable time

DA .... Department of the Army
DACT .... data automated communications terminal
DASC .... direct air support center
DD .... destroyer
DDG .... guided missile destroyer
DPICM .... dual-purpose ICM
DST .... Defense Science and Technology

EENT .... end of evening nautical twilight
ET .... electronic time
ETA .... estimated time of arrival

FAC .... forward air controller
FAC(A) .... forward air controller (airborne)
FACP .... forward air control party
FASCAM .... family of scatterable mines
FDC .... fire direction center
FDO .... fire direction officer

FFAR .... folding-fin aircraft rocket
FFCC ....force fires coordination center
FLIR .... forward looking infrared
FM .... frequency modulation
FM .... U.S. Army field manual
FMFM .... Fleet Marine Force manual
FMFRP ....Fleet Marine Force reference publication
FO .... forward observer
FOM .... figure of merit
FPF .... final protective fire
FPL .... final protective line
FSA .... fire support area
FSCC .... fire support coordination center
FSCL .... fire support coordination line
FSS ....fire support station

GCE .... ground combat element
GFCS .... gunfire control system
GPS .... Global Positioning System
GTA .... Graphic Training Aid
GTL .... gun-target line
GURF .... guns up ready to fire

HB ....high burst
HC .... hexachloroethane
HC .... high capacity
HDC ....helicopter direction center
HE .... high explosives
HELLFIRE .... helicopterborne fire and forget missile
HE/Q .... HE/fuze quick
HF .... high frequency

HMMWV ...... high mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle
HOB ...... height of burst

IADS ...... Integrated Air Defense System
ICM ...... improved conventional munitions
IFSAS ...... Initial Fire Support Automation System
ILLUM ...... illumination
ILS ...... instrument landing system
INA ...... information not available
INS ...... inertial navigation system
IP ...... initial point
IRA ...... Irish Republican Army

JMEM ...... *Joint Munitions Effectiveness Manual*
JTAR ...... joint tactical airstrike request

KIA ...... killed in action

LANTIRN ...... low-altitude navigation and targeting infrared for night
LAR ...... light armored reconnaissance
LARS ...... left add, right subtract
LGM ...... laser-guided munitions capable
LGW ...... laser-guided weapon
LNO ...... liaison officer
LTD/R ...... laser target designator/ranger

MACCS ...... Marine air command and control system
MAGTF ...... Marine air-ground task force
MBC ...... mortar ballistic computer
MCLOS ...... manual command to line of sight
MCWP ...... Marine Corps warfighting publication

MLRS .... Multiple Launch Rocket System
MO .... multioption fuze, VT, PD, delay
MOS .... military occupational specialty
MPI .... mean point of impact
MRL .... multiple rocket launcher
MT .... mechanical time
MTL .... maneuver-target line
MTO .... message to observer
MTSQ .... mechanical time superquick
MULE .... modular universal laser equipment

NGF .... naval gunfire
NGIC .... National Government Intelligence Center
NGLO .... naval gunfire liaison officer
NLT .... no later than
NSFS .... naval surface fire support
NTS .... Night Targeting System
NUKE .... nuclear munitions capable
NVG .... night vision goggles
OAS .... offensive air support
OB .... operator-burst
OF .... observed fire
OP .... observation post
OPGEN MIKE .... operational message, general (maritime tactical message), amphibious
OPORD .... operation order
OPTASK AMPHIB .... operational tasking (maritime tactical message), amphibious
OT .... observer-target
OTL .... observer-target line

PD .... point detonating
PDF .... principal direction of fire
PE_R .... probable error in range
PGM .... precision-guided munitions
PLGR .... precise lightweight GPS receiver
PLO .... Palestine Liberation Organization
PLRS .... Position Location Reporting System
POL .... petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POSREP .... position report
PPS .... precise positioning system
PRF .... pulse repetition frequency

QE .... quadrant elevation

RAAMS .... remote antiarmor mine system
RALS .... right add, left subtract
RAP .... rocket-assisted projectile
ROE .... rules of engagement
RP .... red phosphorus
RREMS ... refinement, record as target, end of mission, and surveillance
RTO .... radio/telephone operator

SACC .... supporting arms coordination center
SACLOS .... semiautomatic command to line of sight
SALUTE .... size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment
SAM .... surface-to-air missile
SEAD .... suppression of enemy air defenses
SFCP .... shore fire control party
SHELREP .... shelling report
SINCGARS .... Single-channel Ground and Airborne Radio System
SITREP .... situation report

SLoCTOP . . . . security, location, communications, targeting, observation, and position improvement
SOP . . . . standing operating procedure
SP . . . . self-propelled

TAC(A) . . . . tactical air coordinator (airborne)
TACAN . . . . tactical air navigation system
TACC . . . . tactical air control center
TACP . . . . tactical air control party
TAD . . . . tactical air direction
TADC . . . . tactical air direction center
TAOC . . . . tactical air operations center
TAR . . . . tactical air request
TATC . . . . tactical air traffic control
TM . . . . technical manual
TNT . . . . trinitrotoluene
TOF . . . . time of flight
TOT . . . . time on target
TOW . . . . tube launched, optically tracked, wire command link guided missile
TRAP . . . . tactical recovery of aircraft and personnel
TRP . . . . target reference point
TTT . . . . time to target

UAE . . . . United Arab Emirates
UAV . . . . unmanned aerial vehicle
UHF . . . . ultrahigh frequency
UT1 . . . . universal time
UTC . . . . coordinated universal time
UTM . . . . universal transverse mercator
UTO . . . . universal time observed

VHF .... very high frequency
VT .... fuze variable time
VT-IR .... variable time-infrared frequency
VT-RF .... variable time-radio frequency

WP .... white phosphorus

Section II. Definitions

A

add—In artillery and NGF support, a correction used by an observer/spotter to indicate that an increase in range along a spotting line is desired.

adjust fire—An order or request to initiate an adjustment of fire. In artillery, a method of control transmitted in the warning order of the call for fire to indicate that the observer will control the adjustment. In NGF, the spotter uses the term "spotter adjust" as a method of control to indicate his desire to control the adjustment.

adjusting point—The target itself or a point near the center of an area target. Spottings are made *from* this point, and corrections are made *to* this point.

adjustment—A process used in artillery and NGF to obtain deviation (left/right), range (add/drop), and HOB (up/down) corrections when engaging a target by observed fire.

air—In artillery and NGF, a spotting to indicate that a burst or group of bursts occurred above the surface (i.e., in the air).

air burst—An explosion of a projectile above the surface as distinguished from an explosion on contact with the surface or after penetration of the surface.

altitude—The vertical distance of a level, a point or an object considered as a point, measured from mean sea level. (Joint Pub 1-02)

B

battery commander scope—A telescope used by the observer to enable him to remain in defilade while determining directions and vertical angles in the target area.

battle damage assessment—The timely and accurate estimate of damage resulting from the application of military force, either lethal or non-lethal, against a predetermined objective. Battle damage assessment can be applied to the employment of all types of weapon systems (air, ground, naval, and special forces weapon systems) throughout the range of military operations. Battle damage assessment is primarily an intelligence responsibility with required inputs and coordination from the operators. Battle damage assessment is composed of physical damage assessment, functional damage assessment, and target system assessment. (Joint Pub 1-02)

bracketing—A method of adjusting fire in which a bracket is established by obtaining an over and a short along the spotting line, and then successively splitting the bracket in half until a target hit or desired bracket is obtained. (Joint Pub 1-02)

C

close air support—Air action by fixed- and rotary-wing aircraft against hostile targets which are in close proximity to friendly forces and which require detailed integration of each air mission with the fire and movement of those forces. (Joint Pub 1-02)

continuous fire—1. Fire conducted at a normal rate without interruption for application of adjustment corrections or for other causes. 2. In field artillery and naval gunfire support, loading and firing at a specified rate or as rapidly as possible consistent with accuracy within the prescribed rate of fire for the weapon. Firing will continue until terminated by the command end of mission or temporarily suspended by the command cease loading or check firing. (Joint Pub 1-02)

continuous illumination fire—A type of fire in which illuminating projectiles are fired at specified time intervals to provide uninterrupted lighting on the target or specified area. (Joint Pub 1-02)

coordinated illumination fire—A type of fire in which the firing of illuminating and HE projectiles is coordinated to provide illumination of the target and surrounding area only at the time required for spotting and adjusting the HE fire.

correction—Any change in firing data to bring the MPI or burst closer to the target. A communications procedure word to indicate that an error in data has been announced and the corrected data will follow.

D

danger close—Used by an observer/spotter in a call for fire to indicate that friendly forces are within a prescribed distance from a target or impact of rounds.

designate—A command given to lase a target for an LGW.

deviation—1. The distance by which a point of impact or burst misses the target. 2. The angular difference between magnetic and compass headings. (Joint Pub 1-02)

digital communications terminal—A handheld device that enables users to rapidly prepare, transmit, and receive both text and graphical messages (clear and encrypted) over standard military radios or field wire.

direct air support center—The principal air control agency of the U.S. Marine air command and control system responsible for the direction and control of air operations directly supporting the ground combat element. It processes and coordinates requests for immediate air support and coordinates air missions requiring integration with ground forces and other supporting arms. It normally collocates with the senior fire support coordination center within the ground combat element and is subordinate to the tactical air command center. Also called **DASC.** (Joint Pub 1-02)

direct fire—Gunfire delivered on a target, using the target itself as a point of aim for either the gun or the director. (Joint Pub 1-02)

direction—In artillery and naval gunfire support, a term used by a spotter/observer in a call for fire to indicate the bearing of the spotting line. (Joint Pub 1-02)

dispersion pattern—The distribution of a series of rounds fired from one weapon or a group of weapons under conditions as nearly identical as possible the points of bursts or impact being dispersed about a point called the mean point of impact. (Joint Pub 1-02)

doubtful—In artillery and naval gunfire support, a term used by an observer or spotter to indicate that he was unable to determine the difference in range between the target and a round or rounds. (Joint Pub 1-02)

down—In artillery and NGF, a term used in a call for fire to indicate that the target is at a lower altitude than the reference point used in identifying the target. A correction used by the observer/spotter to indicate that a decrease in HOB is desired.

drop—In artillery and naval gunfire support, a correction used by an observer/spotter to indicate that a decrease in range along a spotting line is desired. (Joint Pub 1-02)

F

final protective fire—An immediately available prearranged barrier of fire designed to impede enemy movement across defensive lines or areas. (Joint Pub 1-02)

fire direction center—That element of a command post, consisting of gunnery and communication personnel and equipment, by means of which the commander exercises fire direction and/or fire control. The fire direction center receives target intelligence and requests for fire, and translates them into appropriate fire direction. (Joint Pub 1-02)

fire for effect—The command to fire the ammunition in type and quantity to achieve the amount of casualties desired for the mission.

fire support area—An appropriate maneuver area assigned to fire support ships from which to deliver gunfire support of an amphibious operation. (Joint Pub 1-02)

fire support station—An exact location at sea within a fire support area from which a fire support ship delivers fire. (Joint Pub 1-02)
full charge—The larger of the two propelling charges available for naval guns. (Joint Pub 1-02)

fuze—A device which initiates an explosive train. (Joint Pub 1-02)

fuze (specify)—In artillery and naval gunfire support, a command or request to indicate the type of fuze action desired; i.e., delay, quick, time, proximity. (Joint Pub 1-02)

G

graze—In artillery and naval gunfire support, a spotting, or an observation, by a spotter or an observer to indicate that all bursts occurred on impact. (Joint Pub 1-02)

gun-target line—An imaginary straight line from gun to target. (Joint Pub 1-02)

H

high-angle fire—Fire delivered at angles of elevation greater than the elevation that corresponds to the maximum range of the gun and ammunition concerned; fire, the range of which decreases as the angle of elevation is increased. (Joint Pub 1-02)

I

immediate smoke—A mission fired, normally by a platoon, to immediately screen or obscure the enemy and/or friendly positions or movement.

immediate suppression—A fire-for-effect-type mission, fired normally by battery SOP, in which a platoon fires to force the enemy to take cover.

indirect fire—Fire delivered on a target that is not itself used as a point of aim for the weapons or the director. (Joint Pub 1-02)

L

lateral spread—A technique used to place the mean point of impact of two or more units 100 meters apart on a line perpendicular to the gun-target line. (Joint Pub 1-02)

left—Denotes a shift perpendicular to the OTL.

line—In artillery and naval gunfire support, a spotting, or an observation, used by a spotter or an observer to indicate that a burst(s) occurred on the spotting line. (Joint Pub 1-02)

list of targets—A tabulation of confirmed or suspect targets maintained by any echelon for informational and fire support planning purposes. (Joint Pub 1-02)

low-angle fire—Fire delivered at angles of elevation below the elevation that corresponds to the maximum range of the gun and ammunition concerned. (Joint Pub 1-02)

M

maximum ordinate—The highest point along the trajectory of a projectile. The difference in altitude (vertical interval) between the origin and the summit.

mean point of impact—The point whose coordinates are the arithmetic means of the coordinates of the separate points of impact/burst of a finite number of projectiles fired or released at the same aiming point under a given set of conditions. (Joint Pub 1-02)

O

observation post—A position from which military observations are made, or fire directed and adjusted, and which possesses appropriate communications; may be airborne. (Joint Pub 1-02)

observed fire fan—A device used to refine an observer's estimate of distance in the target area.

observer-target factor—The distance from the observer to the target expressed in thousands to the nearest thousand (for example, the OT factor for 6,300 meters is 6).

observer-target line—An imaginary straight line from the observer/spotter to and through the target.

P

point target—A target of such small dimension that it requires the accurate placement of ordnance in order to neutralize or destroy it. (Joint Pub 1-02) It is generally a target that is less than 200 meters in length and width.

probable error—The measurement of the impact distribution in the dispersion pattern around the MPI.

projectile—An object projected by an applied exterior force and continuing in motion by virtue of its own inertia, as a bullet, shell, or grenade. Also applied to rockets and to guided missiles. (Joint Pub 1-02)

R

range spread—The technique used to place the mean point of impact of two or more units 100 meters apart on the gun-target line. (Joint Pub 1-02)

reduced charge—1. The smaller of the two propelling charges available for naval guns. 2. Charge employing a reduced amount of propellant to fire a gun at short ranges as compared to a normal charge. (Joint Pub 1-02)

reference line—A convenient and readily identifiable line used by the observer or spotter as the line to which spots will be related.

reference point—A prominent, easily located point in the terrain. (Joint Pub 1-02)

refinement—A final correction sent to the FDC to move the center of impact to the adjusted point. Refinement is always given for any mission.

registration—The adjustment of fire to determine firing data corrections. (Joint Pub 1-02)

right—Denotes a shift perpendicular to the OTL.

round—One shot fired by a weapon.

rounds complete—In artillery and naval gunfire support, the term used to report that the number of rounds specified in fire for effect have been fired. (Joint Pub 1-02)

S

salvo—1. In naval gunfire support, a method of fire in which a number of weapons are fired at the same target simultaneously. 2. In close air support/air interdiction operations, a method of delivery in which the release mechanisms are operated to release or fire all ordnance of a specific type simultaneously. (Joint Pub 1-02)

sheaf—In artillery and naval gunfire support, planned planes (lines) of fire that produce a desired pattern of bursts with rounds fired by two or more weapons. (Joint Pub 1-02)

shell (specify)—A command or request indicating the type of projectile to be used.

shelling report—Any report of enemy shelling containing information on caliber, direction, time, density and area shelled. (Joint Pub 1-02)

ship adjust—In NGF, a method of control in which the ship can see the target and adjust the fire.

shot—A report that indicates that a gun or guns have been fired.

splash—In artillery and naval gunfire support, word transmitted to an observer or spotter five seconds before the estimated time of the impact of a salvo or round. (Joint Pub 1-02)

spotting—A process of determining by visual or electronic observation, deviations of artillery or naval gunfire from the target in relation to a spotting line for the purpose of supplying necessary information for the adjustment or analysis of fire. (Joint Pub 1-02)

spotting line—Any straight line to which the fall of shot of projectiles is related or fire is adjusted by an observer or a spotter. (Joint Pub 1-02)

spreading fire—A notification by the spotter or the naval gunfire ship, depending on who is controlling the fire, to indicate that fire is about to be distributed over an area. (Joint Pub 1-02)

summit—The highest altitude above mean sea level that a projectile reaches in its flight from the gun to the target; the algebraic sum of the maximum ordinate and the altitude of the gun. (Joint Pub 1-02)

supporting arms—Air, sea, and land weapons of all types employed to support ground units. (Joint Pub 1-02)

suppression of enemy air defenses—That activity which neutralizes, destroys, or temporarily degrades surface-based enemy air defenses by destructive and/or disruptive means. Also called **SEAD.** (Joint Pub 1-02)

sustained rate of fire—Actual rate of fire that a weapon can continue to deliver for an indefinite length of time without seriously overheating. (Joint Pub 1-02)

T

target number—The reference number given to a target.

time of flight—In artillery and naval gunfire support, the time in seconds from the instant a weapon is fired, launched, or released from the delivery vehicle or weapons system to the instant it strikes or detonates. (Joint Pub 1-02)

time on target—1. Time at which aircraft are scheduled to attack/photograph the target. 2. The actual time at which aircraft attack/photograph the target. (Joint Pub 1-02)

trajectory—The path of a projectile, missile, or bomb in flight.

U

Universal time—A measure of time that conforms, within a close approximation, to the mean diurnal rotation of the Earth and serves as the basis of civil timekeeping. Universal Time (UT1) is determined from observations of the stars, radio sources, and also from ranging observations of the Moon and artificial Earth satellites. The scale determined directly from such observations is designated Universal Time Observed (UTO); it is slightly dependent on the place of observation. When UTO is corrected for the shift in longitude of the observing station caused by polar motion, the time scale UT1 is obtained. When an accuracy better than one second is not required, Universal Time can be used to mean Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). Also called **ZULU time.** (Joint Pub 1-02)

up—A term transmitted in a call for fire to indicate that the target is higher in altitude than the point that has been used as a reference point for the target location. A correction used by an observer or a spotter to indicate that an increase in HOB is desired.

Section III. Air-Brevity Codes

Code	Definition
Abort	Directive to cease action/attack/event/mission.
Angels	Height of friendly aircraft in thousands of feet.
Bent	System indicated is inoperative.
Bingo	Fuel state needed for recovery.
Cleared hot	Ordnance release is authorized.
Continue	Continue present maneuver; does not imply clearance to engage or expend ordnance.
Cyclops	Any UAV.
Dash (#)	Aircraft position within a flight. Use if specific call sign is unknown.
Laser on	Directive to start laser designation.
No joy	Aircrew does not have visual contact with target.
Offset (direction)	Informative call indicating maneuver in a specified direction with reference to the target.
Pushing	Departing designated point.
Rope	Illumination of an aircraft with an infrared pointer.
Shift	Directive to shift laser illumination.
Smoke	Smoke marker used to mark a position.
Snake	Directive to oscillate an infrared pointer about a target.
Sparkle	Target marking by infrared pointer.
Stop	Stop infrared illumination of a target.
Talley	Sighting of a target.
Terminate	Stop laser illumination of a target.

Winchester No ordnance remaining.

(reverse blank)

Appendix H

Notes

1. Allan R. Millett, *Semper Fidelis: The History of the United States Marine Corps* (New York: Macmillan Publishing Company, 1980), p. 133.

2. This was due to logistical problems (the Marines had three-inch guns whose caliber was not in use in France) and the decision by Gen Pershing that there was no need for a Marine division in the American Expeditionary Force. Millet, pp. 295 - 296. David N. Buckner, *A Brief History of the 10th Marines* (Washington D.C.: History and Museums Division, Headquarters, U.S. Marine Corps, 1981), pp. 18 - 20.

3. Peter B. Mersky, *U.S. Marine Corps Aviation: 1912 to the Present* (Baltimore, MD: Nautical & Aviation Publishing Co. of America, 1987), p. 11. On October 14, 1918, Marines of Squadron 9, 1st Marine Aviation Force, flew a mission against the German-held railyards in Belgium. The flight of five DH-4 and three DH-9A bombers conducted the first mission to be flown by Marines on their own in World War I.

4. Richard P. Hallion, *Strike from the Sky: The History of Battlefield Air Attack 1911-1945* (Washington: Smithsonian Institution Press, 1989), p. 74.

5. Fleet Marine Force Reference Publication (FMFRP

) 12-15, *Small Wars Manual* (April 1987), p. 9-1. FMFRP 12-15 is a reprint of the 1940 edition of the *Small Wars Manual*.

6. Millett, p. 407.

7. Ibid., p. 409.